wishyou.today learning

chinese hsk 5 in 80 days

The whole course on paper: all 1600 new words with their meanings and examples, every grammar pattern and every dialogue.

Free, with audio, games and progress tracking, at wishyou.today/learning

contents

1. day 1 · oh, no way!
2. day 2 · at the bank
3. day 3 · parcels & post
4. day 4 · call the police!
5. day 5 · right away!
6. day 6 · mission: a very busy monday
7. day 7 · a new flat
8. day 8 · housework
9. day 9 · all the family
10. day 10 · the neighbours
11. day 11 · since we moved here
12. day 12 · mission: the neighbourhood party
13. day 13 · at the market
14. day 14 · cooking at home
15. day 15 · eating out
16. day 16 · shopping for clothes
17. day 17 · a bunch, a pair, a batch
18. day 18 · mission: the night market
19. day 19 · which way?
20. day 20 · in the traffic
21. day 21 · trains & planes
22. day 22 · home town & far away
23. day 23 · weather on the way
24. day 24 · mission: lost in the old town
25. day 25 · I don't feel well
26. day 26 · at the hospital
27. day 27 · sleep & stress
28. day 28 · keeping fit
29. day 29 · feeling good
30. day 30 · mission: a week of good habits
31. day 31 · what's she like?
32. day 32 · good friends
33. day 33 · love & weddings
34. day 34 · let's talk it through
35. day 35 · who's right?
36. day 36 · mission: the surprise party
37. day 37 · back to school
38. day 38 · words, words, words
39. day 39 · how we think
40. day 40 · a research project
41. day 41 · exam day
42. day 42 · mission: the class presentation
43. day 43 · finding a job
44. day 44 · at the office
45. day 45 · team work
46. day 46 · deals & promotions
47. day 47 · moving on
48. day 48 · mission: the job interview
49. day 49 · starting a business
50. day 50 · made in china
51. day 51 · prices & money
52. day 52 · how big? how much?
53. day 53 · a changing economy
54. day 54 · mission: the little tea shop
55. day 55 · the big match
56. day 56 · free time
57. day 57 · on stage
58. day 58 · news & media
59. day 59 · how does it look?
60. day 60 · mission: the school art show
61. day 61 · animals
62. day 62 · plants & land
63. day 63 · the power of nature
64. day 64 · going green
65. day 65 · in the lab
66. day 66 · mission: the science fair
67. day 67 · my phone
68. day 68 · smart machines
69. day 69 · what is it for?
70. day 70 · shopping online
71. day 71 · life online
72. day 72 · mission: the app that went wrong
73. day 73 · city life
74. day 74 · people in society
75. day 75 · organisations
76. day 76 · festivals & customs
77. day 77 · history & heritage
78. day 78 · mission: a trip through time

The practice exams need sound, so they live online: wishyou.today/learning/language/chinese/hsk-5/exam.html

day 1 oh, no way!

Add your feelings to what you say: surprise, “as expected”, “not at all”, “after all” and “anyway”.

Native speakers colour almost every sentence with these little adverbs. Without them, your Chinese sounds like a textbook.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
哎	āi	hey; oh (surprise)	哎，你怎么也在这儿? Hey, what are you doing here?
哎呀	āiyā	oh no; oh my	哎呀，我的手机没电了！ Oh no, my phone’s dead!
唉	ài	sigh; oh well	唉，又下雨了，今天去不了{liao3-4}公园了。 Sigh, it’s raining again. No park today.
哈	hā	ha (laughter); aha	哈哈，你说得太有意思了！ Ha ha, that’s so funny!
哦	ò	oh, I see	哦，原来是这样，我明白了。 Oh, so that’s how it is. I get it now.
呀	yā	oh, ah (surprise)	呀，外面下雪了！ Oh, it’s snowing outside!
毕竟	bìjìng	after all	别生气了，他毕竟|还是{==still, after all}个孩子。 Don’t be cross. He’s only a child, after all.
居然	jūrán	to your surprise; actually	这么难的题，他居然一会儿就做完了。 Such a hard question, and he finished it in no time!
果然	guǒrán	sure enough, as expected	大家都说这家{=(measure word)}店好吃，果然不错。 Everyone said this place was good, and sure enough it is.
的确	díquè	indeed, really	这家{=(measure word)}店的菜的确不错，下{=next}次我还来。 The food here really is good. I’ll be back.
简直	jiǎnzhí	simply, practically	今天热得简直没法儿出门。 It’s so hot today you practically can’t go out.
根本	gēnběn	(not) at all; basic, root	这件事我根本不知道，你别问我。 I don’t know a thing about it. Don’t ask me.
绝对	juéduì	absolutely; absolute	放心吧，我绝对不会告诉别人。 Don’t worry, I absolutely won’t tell anyone.
反正	fǎnzhèng	anyway, in any case	你别着急，反正我们明天也没事。 No rush. We’re free tomorrow anyway.
反而	fǎnér	instead, on the contrary	吃了药，他的病不但没好，反而更重了。 He took the medicine, but instead of getting better he got worse.

白	bái	for nothing, in vain	银行今天不开门，我白跑了一趟。 The bank is closed today. I went all that way for nothing.
刚好	gānghǎo	just right; as it happens	我到车站的时候，车刚好来了。 The bus came just as I got to the stop.
不要紧	bùyàojǐn	it doesn't matter; not serious	不要紧，只是有点儿感冒。 It's nothing serious, just a bit of a cold.
没法儿	méifǎr	can't, there's no way to	雨这么大，我们没法儿出去了。 It's pouring. There's no way we can go out.
恭喜	gōngxǐ	congratulations	恭喜你找到了新工作！ Congratulations on your new job!
好运	hǎoyùn	good luck	明天就要考试了，祝你好运！ The exam's tomorrow. Good luck!
说不定	shuōbudìng	maybe, perhaps	你再找找，说不定在包里。 Have another look. It might be in your bag.
或许	huòxǔ	perhaps, maybe	他没回信息，或许只是太忙了。 He hasn't replied. Perhaps he's just very busy.
偶然	ǒurán	by chance; accidental	我在地铁上偶然遇到了一个老同学。 I ran into an old classmate on the underground by chance.
糟糕	zāogāo	terrible; oh no!	糟糕，我忘带钥匙了！ Oh no, I forgot my keys!

pattern how you feel about it: 居然, 果然, 根本, 毕竟, 反正...

who | 居然 · 果然 · 根本 · 毕竟 · 反正 | verb phrase

These adverbs go after the subject and before the verb, and show how you feel about the fact. 居然 is "to my surprise", 果然 is "just as expected", 根本 + 不/没 is "not at all", 毕竟 is "after all", 反正 is "anyway", and 反而 is "instead, the opposite".

我以为他不会来，他居然来了！ **wǒ yǐwéi tā bú huì lái tā jūrán lái le** I thought he wouldn't come, but he actually came!

吃了药，他的病不但没好，反而更重了。 **chī le yào tā de bìng búdàn méi hǎo fǎnér gèng zhòng le** He took the medicine, but instead of getting better he got worse.

雨这么大，简直没法儿出门。 **yǔ zhème dà jiǎnzhí méifǎr chūmén** It's pouring. You practically can't go out.

dialogue a monday like this

anna 哎呀，糟糕！我今天居然把手机忘在家里了。
āiyā zāogāo wǒ jīntiān jūrán bǎ shǒujī wàng zài jiā lǐ le · Oh no! I've actually left my phone at home today.

xiaoming 哈哈，不要紧，先用我的吧。你要给谁打电话？
hā hā búyàojǐn xiān yòng wǒ de ba nǐ yào gěi shéi dǎ diànhuà · Ha ha, it doesn't matter. Use mine for now. Who do you need to call?

anna 银行。我白跑了一趟，他们今天根本不开门。
yínháng wǒ bái pǎo le yí tàng tāmen jīntiān gēnběn bù kāi mén · The bank. I came all this way for nothing. They aren't even open today.

xiaoming 哦，我想起来了，银行昨天发过通知，今天下午才开门。
ò wǒ xiǎng qǐlai le yínháng zuótiān fā guo tōngzhī jīntiān xiàwǔ cái kāi mén · Oh, now I remember. The bank sent a notice yesterday: today they don't open until the afternoon.

anna 唉，我果然又没看清楚。这已经是这个月第二次了！
ài wǒ guǒrán yòu méi kàn qīngchu zhè yǐjīng shì zhège yuè dì èr cì le · Sigh. Just as I thought, I didn't read it properly again. That's the second time this month!

xiaoming 别生气，你最近毕竟太忙了，谁都会这样。
bié shēngqì nǐ zuìjìn bìjìng tài máng le shéi dōu huì zhèyàng · Don't be cross. You've been so busy lately, after all. It could happen to anyone.

anna 你的确说得对。哎，你今天怎么刚好也在这儿？
nǐ díquè shuō de duì āi nǐ jīntiān zěnme gānghǎo yě zài zhèr · You're right, really. Hey, how come you happen to be here today?

xiaoming 我偶然路过。反正我下午也没事，说不定还能陪你一起来。
wǒ ǒurán lùguò fǎnzhèng wǒ xiàwǔ yě méishì shuōbudìng hái néng péi nǐ yìqǐ lái · I was just passing by. I'm free this afternoon anyway, so I might even come with you.

anna 呀，那太好了！不过下午你绝对不能迟到。
yā nà tài hǎo le búguò xiàwǔ nǐ juéduì bù néng chídào · Oh, that's great! But you absolutely mustn't be late this afternoon.

xiaoming 放心吧，或许我比你还早到呢！
fàngxīn ba huòxǔ wǒ bǐ nǐ hái zǎo dào ne · Don't worry. I might even get there before you!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

哈
hā
ha (laughter); aha

哎
āi
hey; oh (surprise)

good to know · 居然 and 果然 are opposites: 居然 for "I never expected that", 果然 for "just as I thought". 空 (kōng) can work like 白 before a verb: 空跑一趟 is a wasted trip, the same as 白跑一趟. 可 isn't only "but": before a verb or adjective it adds force: 你可别忘了 "whatever you do, don't forget", 这可不容易 "this really isn't easy".

Your Chinese now has feelings: surprise, relief, “I knew it” and “oh well”. That’s how friends really talk.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 2 at the bank

Open an account, renew a card, top up your phone and get through the paperwork at a bank.

Banks, phone shops and offices run on forms and formal words: 本人, 填单, 手续. Know them and the queue gets shorter.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
存款	cúnkuǎn	savings; to deposit money	她工作了三年，已经有了一些存款。 She's worked for three years and already has some savings.
账户	zhànghù	(bank) account	我想在这家{=(measure word)}银行开一个账户。 I'd like to open an account at this bank.
账号	zhànghào	account number; user name	我忘了我的账号，没法儿上网买东西。 I've forgotten my user name, so I can't shop online.
押金	yājīn	deposit (money you get back)	租这个房子要先交一个月的押金。 To rent this flat you pay a month's deposit first.
充值	chōngzhí	to top up (a card, a phone)	我的交通卡没钱了，得{dei3}去充值。 My travel card is empty. I need to top it up.
话费	huàfèi	phone charges, phone credit	我每个月的话费大概一百块。 My phone bill is about 100 yuan a month.
到期	dàoqī	to expire, fall due	我的银行卡下{=next}个月就到期了。 My bank card expires next month.
手续	shǒuxù	procedures, formalities, paperwork	办这个手续需要带护照。 You need your passport for this paperwork.
登记	dēngjì	to register, sign in	请先在这儿登记一下您的名字。 Please sign in here with your name first.
注册	zhùcè	to register, sign up	上网买东西以前，你得{dei3}先注册一个账号。 Before you shop online, you need to sign up for an account.
填	tián	to fill in (a form)	请把这张表填一下，然后去三号窗口。 Please fill in this form, then go to window 3.
单	dān	form, list; single; only	我们想要一个单人间，住两个晚上。 We'd like a single room for two nights.
咨询	zīxún	to ask for information, consult	有问题可以打这个电话咨询。 If you have questions, you can call this number for information.
等候	děnghòu	to wait (formal)	请在这里等候，叫到您的号再过去。 Please wait here and go over when your number is called.
等待	děngdài	to wait (for)	等待了两个星期，我终于收到了好消息。 After waiting two weeks, I finally got good news.

领取	lǐngqǔ	to collect, receive	新的银行卡下{=next}周一就能领取了。 You can collect your new bank card next Monday.
信用	xìnyòng	credit; trustworthiness	他很讲信用，说到就会做到。 He keeps his word: if he says he'll do it, he does.
本	běn	this, our (formal); own	本{ben3-5}店今天休息，明天见。 We're closed today. See you tomorrow.
本人	běnrén	oneself, in person; I myself	这个手续需要本人来办。 You have to do this paperwork in person.
某	mǒu	a certain, some	听说某家{=(measure word)}公司正在找新同事。 I hear a certain company is looking for new staff.
其	qí	his, her, its, their (written)	每个城市都有其特点。 Every city has its own character.
各自	gèzì	each, respective(ly)	吃完饭，大家就各自回家了。 After dinner, everyone went their own way home.
彼此	bǐcǐ	each other	我们认识很多年了，彼此都很了解。 We've known each other for years and understand each other well.
如此	rúcǐ	so, such, like this	没想到这里的手续如此复杂。 I never expected the paperwork here to be so complicated.

pattern 本, 如此, 彼此: this / our own, so, each other

本 + noun **如此 + adjective** **彼此**

本 before a noun is formal "this, our own": 本店 this shop, 本公司 our company, 本人 the person themself. 如此 is the written cousin of 这么: 如此麻烦, so much trouble. 彼此 means "each other": 彼此帮助, 彼此了解.

本公司每周六休息。 **běn gōngsī měi zhōu liù xiūxi** Our company is closed on Saturdays.

我没想到北京的冬天如此冷。 **wǒ méi xiǎng dào Běijīng de dōngtiān rúcǐ lěng** I never expected Beijing winters to be so cold.

我们认识很多年了，彼此都很了解。 **wǒmen rènshi hěn duō nián le bǐcǐ dōu hěn liǎojiě** We've known each other for years and understand each other well.

听说某家银行周末也开门。 **tīngshuō mǒu jiā yínháng zhōumò yě kāi mén** I hear a certain bank opens at weekends too.

dialogue in the queue

xiaoming 你今天来银行办什么手续?
nǐ jīntiān lái yínháng bàn shénme shǒuxù · What paperwork are you doing at the bank today?

anna 我的银行卡下个月就到期了，我想换张新的，再开一个账户。
wǒ de yínhángkǎ xià gè yuè jiù dàoqī le wǒ xiǎng huàn zhāng xīn de zài kāi yí gè zhànghù · My bank card expires next month. I want a new one, and to open another account.

xiaoming 那得本人来，还要先填单。你带护照了吗?
nà děi běnrén lái hái yào xiān tián dān nǐ dài hùzhào le ma · You have to come in person for that, and fill in a form first. Did you bring your passport?

anna 带了。可是新卡要一个星期才能领取，我只能耐心等待。
dài le kěshì xīn kǎ yào yí gè xīngqī cái néng lǐngqǔ wǒ zhǐ néng nàixīn děngdài · I did. But the new card takes a week to collect, so I'll just have to wait patiently.

xiaoming 这很正常。对了，你不是要租新房子吗？押金准备好了吗?
zhè hěn zhèngcháng duì le nǐ bú shì yào zū xīn fángzi ma yājīn zhǔnbèi hǎo le ma · That's normal. By the way, aren't you renting a new flat? Have you got the deposit ready?

anna 准备好了，我有一些存款。哎，那个窗口能给手机充值吗？我的话费快用完了。
zhǔnbèi hǎo le wǒ yǒu yìxiē cúnkuǎn āi nàge chuāngkǒu néng gěi shǒujī chōngzhí ma wǒ de huàfèi kuài yòng wán le · Yes, I've got some savings. Hey, can I top up my phone at that window? My credit's nearly gone.

xiaoming 能。不过你在网上注册一个账号，自己充值更方便，不用在这儿等候。
néng búguò nǐ zài wǎngshang zhùcè yí gè zhànghào zìjǐ chōngzhí gèng fāngbiàn búyòng zài zhèr děnghòu · Yes. But if you sign up for an account online, it's easier to top up yourself, with no waiting here.

anna 没想到办个手续如此麻烦，我已经等了四十分钟了!
méi xiǎng dào bàn gè shǒuxù rúcǐ máfan wǒ yǐjīng děng le sìshí fēnzhōng le · I never thought the paperwork would be such a hassle. I've been waiting forty minutes already!

xiaoming 排队的人这么多，大家都有各自的事，谁也不想等。
páiduì de rén zhème duō dàjiā dōu yǒu gèzì de shì shéi yě bù xiǎng děng · Look at the queue. Everyone has their own things to do, and nobody wants to wait.

anna 也是。下次我先打电话咨询一下，问清楚了再来。
yě shì xià cì wǒ xiān dǎ diànhuà zīxún yíxià wèn qīngchu le zài lái · True. Next time I'll call first and ask, and only come once I know exactly what to bring.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

充
chōng
to fill

册
cè
volume; measure word for books



领
lǐng
collar; to lead; to receive



某
mǒu
a certain, some

good to know · Signs and notices love 本: 本店 this shop, 本站 this station, 本人 the person themself. In conversation you'd say 这家店 or 我们公司. 账户 is the account; 账号 is its number, and also your user name on a website or app.

Forms, queues and counters no longer scare you. You can sort out real life in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 3 parcels & post

Send and chase a parcel at the post office, and say “once this happens, then…”.

Online shopping and parcels from home are part of every expat’s life in China, and so is chasing the ones that go missing.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
包裹	bāoguǒ	parcel; to wrap	你有一个包裹，在楼下的门口。 There’s a parcel for you at the door downstairs.
邮寄	yóujì	to post, send by mail	这些书可以邮寄到英国吗? Can these books be posted to the UK?
邮局	yóujú	post office	邮局几点关门? What time does the post office close?
邮票	yóupiào	(postage) stamp	寄这封信要多少钱的邮票? How much postage does this letter need?
信封	xìnfēng	envelope	请把照片放在信封里。 Please put the photos in the envelope.
住址	zhùzhǐ	home address	请在这儿写上你的住址和电话。 Please write your address and phone number here.
配送	pèisòng	to deliver (goods)	这家{=(measure word)}超市可以送货上门，一般两个小时以内配送。 This supermarket delivers to your door, usually within two hours.
运费	yùnfèi	shipping cost, delivery fee	买一百块以上就不要运费。 Spend over 100 yuan and delivery is free.
丢失	diūshī	to lose, go missing (formal)	我的包裹在路上丢失了。 My parcel went missing on the way.
存放	cúnfàng	to leave (for safe keeping), store	你可以把行李存放在这里。 You can leave your luggage here.
物品	wùpǐn	articles, items	这些物品不能邮寄。 These items can’t be sent by post.
用品	yòngpǐn	articles, supplies (for a use)	超市二楼卖运动用品。 The supermarket sells sports goods on the first floor.
日用品	rìyòngpǐn	everyday necessities	我下班去超市买一些日用品。 After work I’m going to the supermarket for a few everyday things.
锁	suǒ	lock; to lock	出门的时候别忘了锁门。 Don’t forget to lock the door when you go out.
便	biàn	then, and so (written 就)	他吃完早饭便出门了。 He finished breakfast and then went out.
一旦	yīdàn	once, the moment (something happens)	一旦决定了，就别再改了。 Once you’ve decided, don’t change your mind again.

拆	chāi	to open up, take apart	他一收到包裹，就马上拆开了。 As soon as he got the parcel, he tore it open.
插	chā	to insert, plug in	把这个插在电脑上就能用了。 Plug this into the computer and it'll work.
递	dì	to hand, pass	你把那本书递给我，好吗? Could you pass me that book?
贴	tiē	to stick, paste	别忘了在信封上贴邮票。 Don't forget to put a stamp on the envelope.
捡	jiǎn	to pick up (from the ground)	我在路上捡到了一个钱包。 I found a wallet in the street.
盖	gài	lid; to cover, put on (a lid, a stamp)	下雨了，快把东西盖起来! It's raining! Quick, cover everything up!
处理	chǔlǐ	to deal with, handle	别担心，这件事我来处理。 Don't worry, I'll deal with it.
催	cuī	to hurry, chase (someone)	包裹三天还没到，我打电话催了一下。 The parcel still hadn't come after three days, so I called to chase it.
转告	zhuǎngào	to pass on (a message)	请你转告他，明天的会{hui4-3}改到下午了。 Please tell him tomorrow's meeting has moved to the afternoon.

pattern 一旦 (once, the moment) and 便 (then)

一旦 | something happens | 就 / 便 | result

一旦 means "once, the moment (something happens)", usually something that might happen, often something unwelcome. The result follows with 就, or with 便 in writing. 便 on its own is simply the written 就: 他吃完饭便出门了.

一旦东西丢失，就很难找回来了。 **yídàn dōngxi diūshī jiù hěn nán zhǎo huilai le** Once something's lost, it's hard to get it back.

他收到消息，便马上出发了。 **tā shōudào xiāoxi biàn mǎshàng chūfā le** He got the message and set off at once.

他在路上捡到一个钱包，便马上交给了警察。 **tā zài lùshang jiǎn dào yí gè qián bāo biàn mǎshàng jiāo gěi le jǐngchá** He found a wallet in the street and handed it straight to the police.

dialogue a parcel from home

ms zhang 安娜？这么巧，你也来邮局？
Ānnà zhème qiǎo nǐ yě lái yóujú · Anna? What a coincidence, you're at the post office too?

anna 张阿姨好！我妈妈从英国给我寄了一个包裹，一个星期了还没到。
zhāng āyí hǎo wǒ māma cóng Yīngguó gěi wǒ jì le yí gè bāoguǒ yí gè xīngqī le hái méi dào · Hello, Auntie Zhang! My mum sent me a parcel from the UK, and it still hasn't come after a week.

ms zhang 你催过吗？包裹一旦丢失，就得早一点儿处理。
nǐ cuī guo ma bāoguǒ yídàn diūshī jiù děi zǎo yìdiǎnr chǔlǐ · Have you chased it? If a parcel goes missing, you need to deal with it early.

anna 催了两次，他们说正在处理。我今天顺便也给我妈妈寄一些东西。
cuī le liǎng cì tāmen shuō zhèngzài chǔlǐ wǒ jīntiān shùnbiàn yě gěi wǒ māma jì yìxiē dōngxi · Twice. They say they're dealing with it. While I'm here, I'm sending my mum a few things too.

ms zhang 寄什么？有些物品是不能邮寄的。
jì shénme yǒuxiē wùpǐn shì bù néng yóujì de · What are you sending? Some items can't go by post.

anna 一些书和一些厨房用品，她最近很喜欢做中国菜。运费贵吗？
yìxiē shū hé yìxiē chúfáng yòngpǐn tā zuìjìn hěn xǐhuan zuò Zhōngguó cài yùnfèi guì ma · Some books and some kitchen things. She's really into Chinese cooking these days. Is the postage expensive?

ms zhang 不太贵。你把箱子递给我，我帮你把箱子盖好。住址写了吗？
bú tài guì nǐ bǎ xiāngzi dì gěi wǒ wǒ bāng nǐ bǎ xiāngzi gài hǎo zhùzhǐ xiě le ma · Not too bad. Pass me the box and I'll close it up for you. Have you written the address?

anna 写了。哎呀，我的手机没电了，这里能插电吗？
xiě le āiyā wǒ de shǒujī méi diàn le zhèlǐ néng chā diàn ma · Yes. Oh no, my phone's dead. Can I plug it in here?

ms zhang 那边可以。对了，请你转告小明，今天晚上回家吃饭。
nàbiān kěyǐ duì le qǐng nǐ zhuǎngào Xiǎomíng jīntiān wǎnshang huí jiā chī fàn · Over there. Oh, and please tell Xiaoming to come home for dinner tonight.

anna 好的，我一定转告他。阿姨，谢谢您！
hǎo de wǒ yídìng zhuǎngào tā āyí xièxie nín · Sure, I'll tell him. Thank you, Auntie!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

局
jú
office, bureau

配
pèi
to match, go with; to deserve

旦
dàn
dawn, day

good to know · Calling an older woman 阿姨 (auntie) and an older man 叔叔 (uncle) is warm and polite, even if you're not related. 一旦 is mostly for things that might go wrong: 一旦丢失, 一旦生病. For good news, 要是 or 等…以后 sounds more natural.

Lost parcels, forms and postage: you can now sort them out at the counter, in Chinese, and still have a chat.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 4 call the police!

Spot a scam call, say what to do “just in case”, and talk about rules, fines and the police.

Phone scams are common everywhere. Knowing 骗, 报警 and 万一 helps you protect yourself and help others.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
报警	bàojǐng	to call the police	有人拿走了我的包，我马上报警了。 Someone took my bag, so I called the police straight away.
派出所	pàichūsuǒ	local police station	我的钱包丢了，就去派出所问了问。 I lost my wallet, so I went to ask at the police station.
罚	fá	to punish; to fine	他开车太快，被罚了两百块。 He was driving too fast and got a 200-yuan fine.
罚款	fákuǎn	a fine; to fine	在这儿停车要罚款。 You’ll be fined for parking here.
法院	fǎyuàn	court (of law)	两家{=(measure word)}公司没谈好，最后去了法院。 The two companies couldn’t agree and ended up in court.
违法	wéifǎ	to break the law; illegal	开车的时候打电话是违法的。 Using your phone while driving is against the law.
违反	wéifǎn	to break, go against (rules)	他违反了公司的规定，被经理批评了。 He broke company rules and was told off by the manager.
骗	piàn	to cheat, trick, lie to	别相信那个电话，他是骗你的。 Don’t trust that call. He’s trying to trick you.
证据	zhèngjù	evidence, proof	你说他拿了你的钱，有证据吗? You say he took your money. Do you have any proof?
救	jiù	to save, rescue	是一个年轻人跳下水救了那个孩子。 It was a young man who jumped into the water and saved the child.
意外	yìwài	accident; unexpected	路上出了个意外，所以我来晚了。 There was an accident on the way, so I’m late.
在场	zàichǎng	to be present (at the scene)	事情发生的时候，你在场吗? Were you there when it happened?
赔	péi	to pay for (damage), compensate	你弄坏了我的杯子，得{dei3}赔我一个新的。 You broke my cup, so you owe me a new one.
保安	bǎoān	security guard; to keep safe	楼下的保安人很好，每天都跟我打招呼。 The security guard downstairs is lovely and says hello every day.
保险	bǎoxiǎn	insurance; safe	出国旅行以前，最好买一份保险。 It’s best to buy insurance before you travel abroad.

平安	píngān	safe and sound	听到你平安到家，我就放心了。 Now I know you got home safely, I can stop worrying.
安	ān	safe, calm; to install, fit	我们家新安了一个空调。 We've just had an air conditioner put in at home.
万一	wànyī	just in case; if by any chance	带上雨伞吧，万一下雨呢? Take an umbrella. What if it rains?
避免	bìmiǎn	to avoid	为了避免迟到，我早上六点就出门了。 To avoid being late, I left at six in the morning.
采取	cǎiqǔ	to take (steps, action), adopt	我们得{dei3}采取一些办法，避免这种问题。 We need to take some steps to avoid this kind of problem.
难以	nányǐ	hard to, difficult to	这件事真让人难以相信。 It's really hard to believe.
控制	kòngzhì	to control	他太生气了，控制不了{liao3-4}自己。 He was so angry he couldn't control himself.
遵守	zūnshǒu	to obey, keep to (rules)	大家都应该遵守公司的规定。 Everyone should follow the company's rules.
合法	héfǎ	legal, lawful	在中国工作，需要合法的签证。 To work in China you need a legal visa.
阻止	zǔzhǐ	to stop, prevent	我想阻止他，可是已经来不及了。 I wanted to stop him, but it was too late.

pattern 万一……，（就）……: just in case, what if

万一 | unlikely (bad) thing | （就） | what to do

万一 is "one chance in ten thousand": if, by any chance, something unwelcome happens. Put the plan after it with 就. Or say your plan first and add 万一……呢? to give the reason: 带上雨伞吧，万一下雨呢?

带上雨伞吧，万一下雨呢? **dài shàng yǔ sǎn ba wànyī xià yǔ ne** Take an umbrella. What if it rains?

万一出了意外，保险公司会赔。 **wànyī chū le yìwài bǎoxiǎn gōngsī huì péi** If there's an accident, the insurance company will pay.

万一签证到期了，你在这儿工作就不合法了。 **wànyī qiānzhèng dàoqī le nǐ zài zhèr gōngzuò jiù bù héfǎ le** If your visa runs out, working here won't be legal any more.

万一有人进来呢? 我们还是安一把新锁吧。 **wànyī yǒu rén jìnlái ne wǒmen háishi ān yì bǎ xīn suǒ ba** What if someone gets in? Let's fit a new lock.

dialogue a strange phone call

zhao yang 安娜，你怎么了？看起来很不高兴。
Ānnà nǐ zěnme le kàn qǐlai hěn bù gāoxìng · Anna, what's wrong? You look upset.

anna 刚才有人打电话，说是银行的，要我的账号和密码。
gāngcái yǒu rén dǎ diànhuà shuō shì yínháng de yào wǒ de zhànghào hé mìmǎ · Someone just called saying he was from the bank and asked for my account number and password.

zhao yang 你没告诉他吧？那绝对是骗人的！
nǐ méi gàosu tā ba nà juéduì shì piàn rén de · You didn't tell him, did you? That's definitely a scam!

anna 没有，我觉得很奇怪，就挂了。
méiyǒu wǒ juéde hěn qíguài jiù guà le · No. It felt strange, so I hung up.

zhao yang 做得对。我最近在做一个新闻，很多人都被这种电话骗过。
zuò de duì wǒ zuìjìn zài zuò yí gè xīnwén hěn duō rén dōu bèi zhè zhǒng diànhuà piàn guo · Good. I'm doing a news story at the moment, and lots of people have been tricked by calls like that.

anna 那万一下次他们再打来，我该怎么办？
nà wànyī xià cì tāmen zài dǎ lái wǒ gāi zěnme bàn · So what should I do if they call again?

zhao yang 别跟他们说话，马上报警。也可以去派出所，把电话号码给警察，这就是证据。
bié gēn tāmen shuōhuà mǎshàng bàojǐng yě kěyǐ qù pàichūsuǒ bǎ diànhuà hàomǎ gěi jǐngchá zhè jiùshì zhèngjù · Don't talk to them. Call the police at once. Or go to the police station and give them the number: that's evidence.

anna 骗人是违法的，警察能找到他们吗？
piàn rén shì wéifǎ de jǐngchá néng zhǎo dào tāmen ma · Scamming people is illegal. Can the police find them?

zhao yang 很多都找到了，有的还上了法院。我们得采取办法，阻止更多人被骗。
hěn duō dōu zhǎo dào le yǒude hái shàng le fǎyuàn wǒmen děi cǎiqǔ bànfǎ zǔzhǐ gèng duō rén bèi piàn · They've found a lot of them, and some have gone to court. We need to take steps to stop more people being tricked.

anna 所以你才做这个新闻。我一定告诉我的朋友们！
suǒyǐ nǐ cái zuò zhège xīnwén wǒ yídìng gàosu wǒ de péngyoumen · So that's why you're doing this story. I'll tell all my friends!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

派
pài
to send (someone); school, group

采
cǎi
to pick, gather

制
zhì
to restrict; system



守 shǒu to guard, stay by; to keep	守	守	守	守	守					

good to know · In China, 110 is the police, 120 an ambulance and 119 the fire service. Save them in your phone. A real bank never asks for your password on the phone. If someone does, hang up: 挂了.

You can now protect yourself and your friends: spot the scam, say “just in case”, and know who to call.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

Make calls, book, leave messages and say exactly when: at once, long ago, all along, soon, gradually.

Work in China moves fast and plans change at short notice. These time words keep you one step ahead.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
拨打	bōdǎ	to dial, call (a number)	有问题请拨打这个电话。 If you have a problem, please call this number.
占线	zhànxiàn	(the line is) busy	我给他打了三次电话，一直占线。 I called him three times, and the line was busy every time.
留言	liúyán	to leave a message; a message	他现在不在，你可以给他留言。 He's not here right now. You can leave him a message.
约定	yuēdìng	to agree on, arrange; an agreement	我们约定好了，明天早上八点见。 We've agreed to meet at eight tomorrow morning.
预约	yùyuē	to make an appointment, book	看这个医生要先在网上预约。 To see this doctor, you have to book online first.
预订	yùdìng	to book, reserve (a room, a table)	我已经在网上预订了酒店。 I've already booked the hotel online.
改天	gǎitiān	another day, some other time	今天太晚了，我们改天再聊吧。 It's too late today. Let's talk another time.
临时	línshí	at short notice; temporary	经理临时有事，会议改到明天了。 Something came up for the manager, so the meeting has moved to tomorrow.
事先	shìxiān	beforehand, in advance	你要来的话，最好事先打个电话。 If you're coming, it's best to call beforehand.
随时	suíshí	at any time	有问题随时给我打电话。 Call me any time if there's a problem.
闹钟	nàozhōng	alarm clock	我的闹钟没响，所以起晚了。 My alarm didn't go off, so I overslept.
铃	líng	bell	门铃响了，快去开门吧。 That's the doorbell. Go and open the door.
时刻	shíkè	moment; at every moment	开车的时候要时刻注意安全。 When you're driving, you must think about safety every moment.
曾经	céngjīng	once, at one time (in the past)	我曾经在|上海{==Shanghai}住过{guo}两年。 I once lived in Shanghai for two years.
立刻	lìkè	at once, immediately	听到这个消息，他立刻给妈妈打了电话。 When he heard the news, he called his mum at once.

立即	lìjí	immediately (formal)	发现问题，请立即和我们联系。 If you find a problem, please contact us immediately.
连忙	liánmáng	hastily, promptly	看到老人上车，他连忙站{zhan4-3}了起来。 Seeing an old man get on the bus, he quickly stood up.
始终	shǐzhōng	from start to finish, all along	他始终没告诉我真正的原因。 He never did tell me the real reason.
早已	zǎoyǐ	long since, long ago	我到的时候，他们早已走了。 By the time I arrived, they had long gone.
即将	jíjiāng	about to, soon	飞机即将起飞，请关上手机。 The plane is about to take off. Please switch off your phone.
急忙	jímáng	in a hurry, hastily	下雨了，她急忙把衣服拿进来。 It started raining, and she rushed to bring the washing in.
渐渐	jiànjiàn	gradually, little by little	天气渐渐冷了，你多穿一点儿衣服。 It's slowly getting colder. Wear something warmer.
尽快	jǐnkuài	as soon as possible	收到信息以后，请尽快给我回电话。 When you get this message, please call me back as soon as you can.
早晚	zǎowǎn	sooner or later; morning and evening	这件事他早晚|会知道的。 He'll find out sooner or later.
抓紧	zhuājǐn	to hurry, make the most of	时间不多了，我们得{dei3}抓紧。 We haven't got much time. We need to get a move on.

pattern when: 立刻, 连忙, 曾经, 早已, 始终, 即将...

who | **立刻 · 连忙 · 曾经 · 早已 · 始终 · 即将** | **verb phrase**

These go after the subject, before the verb. 立刻 and 立即 mean "at once" and work in orders too; 连忙 and 急忙 describe someone's hurried reaction in a story, never an order. 曾经 is "once, in the past", 早已 "long since", 始终 "all along", 即将 "about to", 渐渐 "little by little".

他曾经来过这儿两次。 **tā céngjīng lái guo zhèr liǎng cì** He's been here twice before.

看到老人上车，他连忙站了起来。 **kàn dào lǎorén shàng chē tā liánmáng zhàn le qǐlai** Seeing an old man get on the bus, he quickly stood up.

飞机即将起飞，请关上手机。 **fēijī jíjiāng qǐfēi qǐng guān shàng shǒujī** The plane is about to take off. Please switch off your phone.

别着急，这件事他早晚会知道的。 **bié zháojí zhè jiàn shì tā zǎowǎn huì zhīdào de** Don't worry. He'll find out sooner or later.

dialogue the meeting moves

manager lin 安娜，那家公司临时改了时间，会议提前到明天上午九点。
Ānnà nà jiā gōngsī línshí gǎi le shíjiān huìyì tíqián dào míngtiān shàngwǔ jiǔ diǎn · Anna, that company has changed the time at short notice. The meeting is now tomorrow at nine.

anna 明天上午？那我们得抓紧了。我立刻给他们打电话问清楚。
míngtiān shàngwǔ nà wǒmen děi zhuājǐn le wǒ lìkè gěi tāmen dǎ diànhuà wèn qīngchu · Tomorrow morning? Then we need to get a move on. I'll call them right away and check the details.

manager lin 我刚才拨打了两次，一直占线。
wǒ gāngcái bōdǎ le liǎng cì yìzhí zhànxiàn · I just tried twice. The line's been busy.

anna 那我先给他们留言，再发一封邮件。
nà wǒ xiān gěi tāmen liúyán zài fā yì fēng yóujiàn · Then I'll leave them a message first and send an email.

manager lin 好。另外，事先预订一个会议室，再预订一家饭店，明天中午请他们吃饭。
hǎo lìngwài shìxiān yùdìng yí gè huìyì shì zài yùdìng yì jiā fàndiàn míngtiān zhōngwǔ qǐng tāmen chī fàn · Good. Also, book a meeting room in advance, and a restaurant: we're taking them to lunch tomorrow.

anna 没问题。有一家饭店我曾经去过，菜很好，环境也安静。
méi wèntí yǒu yì jiā fàndiàn wǒ céngjīng qù guo cài hěn hǎo huánjìng yě ānjìng · No problem. There's a restaurant I've been to: great food, and quiet too.

manager lin 有问题随时找我。这家公司很重要，一旦这次谈好了，以后的机会就多了。
yǒu wèntí suíshí zhǎo wǒ zhè jiā gōngsī hěn zhòngyào yídàn zhè cì tán hǎo le yǐhòu de jīhuì jiù duō le · Come to me any time if there's a problem. This company matters: once this deal is done, there'll be plenty more chances.

anna 明白。我今天晚上定好闹钟，明天早一点儿来。
míngbai wǒ jīntiān wǎnshang dìng hǎo nàozhōng míngtiān zǎo yìdiǎnr lái · Understood. I'll set my alarm tonight and come in early tomorrow.

manager lin 你上次也这么说，结果铃一响你便关了，又睡着了！
nǐ shàng cì yě zhème shuō jiéguǒ líng yì xiǎng nǐ biàn guān le yòu shuì zháo le · You said that last time, and the moment it rang you switched it off and went back to sleep!

anna 哈哈，那是很早以前的事了！我们约定好：明天我绝对不迟到。
hā hā nà shì hěn zǎo yǐqián de shì le wǒmen yuēdìng hǎo míngtiān wǒ juéduì bù chídào · Ha ha, that was ages ago! It's a deal: I absolutely won't be late tomorrow.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

占
zhàn
to take up, account for

立
lì
to stand

抓
zhuā
to grab, catch; to scratch

good to know · 立刻 can give an order (请立刻回来); 连忙 and 急忙 can't. They only describe what someone hurried to do. On the phone, 占线 means the line is busy. If nobody answers, say 没人接.

Plans change, phones ring, meetings move. Now you can keep up, and say exactly when.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 6 mission: a very busy monday

Follow a whole busy day in Chinese: a late start, the bank, the post office, a lost wallet and a call from the boss.

Real days mix everything: feelings, paperwork, a problem to solve and a plan that changes. This is your whole unit at work.

chapter 1 the alarm that didn't ring

xiaoming 喂，安娜？你怎么还没到？我们约定八点在银行门口见。
wèi Ānnà nǐ zěnme hái méi dào wǒmen yuēdìng bā diǎn zài yínháng ménkǒu jiàn · Hello, Anna? Where are you? We agreed to meet outside the bank at eight.

anna 哎呀，糟糕！我的闹钟居然没响，我刚起床！
āiyā zāogāo wǒ de nàozhōng jūrán méi xiǎng wǒ gāng qǐchuáng · Oh no! My alarm didn't go off. I've only just got up!

xiaoming 果然！我就知道你会迟到。别急，银行九点才开门。
guǒrán wǒ jiù zhīdào nǐ huì chídào bié jí yínháng jiǔ diǎn cái kāi mén · I knew it! I just knew you'd be late. Don't panic, the bank doesn't open until nine.

anna 唉，我昨天晚上定了闹钟，可是铃根本没响。说不定是手机没电了。
ài wǒ zuótiān wǎnshang dìng le nàozhōng kěshì líng gēnběn méi xiǎng shuōbudìng shì shǒujī méi diàn le · Sigh. I did set my alarm last night, but it didn't ring at all. Maybe my phone ran out of battery.

xiaoming 你的手机毕竟太旧了，早晚得换一个。我事先在网上预约了九点的号，你别担心。
nǐ de shǒujī bìjìng tài jiù le zǎowǎn děi huàn yí gè wǒ shìxiān zài wǎngshang yùyuē le jiǔ diǎn de hào nǐ bié dānxīn · Your phone is old, after all: sooner or later you'll need a new one. I booked a nine o'clock slot online in advance, so don't worry.

anna 哦，原来你预约了！你可帮了我大忙。要是我一个人去，说不定又空跑一趟。
ò yuánlái nǐ yùyuē le nǐ kě bāng le wǒ dà máng yàoshi wǒ yí gè rén qù shuōbudìng yòu kōng pǎo yí tàng · Oh, you booked a slot! You've really saved me. On my own I might have made a wasted trip again.

anna 那太好了，我立刻出门，二十分钟就到。
nà tài hǎo le wǒ lìkè chūmén èrshí fēnzhōng jiù dào · Oh good. I'll leave right now and be there in twenty minutes.

xiaoming 你别跑，路上注意安全。反正时间还早。
nǐ bié pǎo lùshang zhùyì ānquán fǎnzhèng shíjiān hái zǎo · Don't run. Be careful on the way. It's still early anyway.

anna 好。对了，今天可以领取我的新银行卡了，我得带上护照。
hǎo duì le jīntiān kěyǐ lǐngqǔ wǒ de xīn yínhángkǎ le wǒ děi dài shàng hùzhào · OK. Oh, and I can collect my new bank card today, so I need my passport.

xiaoming 到了给我打电话，万一我在里面排队呢？
dào le gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà wànyī wǒ zài lǐmiàn páiduì ne · Call me when you get here, in case I'm inside in the queue.

chapter 2 the card and the parcel

anna 新卡拿到了！手续比上次简单多了。
xīn kǎ ná dào le shǒuxù bǐ shàng cì jiǎndān duō le · I've got the new card! The paperwork was much simpler than last time.

xiaoming 那当然，上次你是开账户，这次只是领取。等候的人如此多，你居然半个小时就办完了！
nà dāngrán shàng cì nǐ shì kāi zhànghù zhè cì zhǐshì lǐngqǔ děnghòu de rén rúcǐ duō nǐ jūrán bàn gè xiǎoshí jiù bàn wán le · Of course: last time you were opening an account, this time you're just collecting. With so many people waiting, you were done in half an hour!

anna 我先填了单，又咨询了一下怎么在网上注册账号。以后查存款、交话费，在手机上就行了。
wǒ xiān tián le dān yòu zīxún le yíxià zěnme zài wǎngshang zhùcè zhànghào yǐhòu chá cúnkuǎn jiāo huàfèi zài shǒujī shàng jiù xíng le · I filled in the form first, then asked how to register an account online. From now on I can check my savings and pay my phone bill on my phone.

xiaoming 对了，你房子的押金交了吗？你的旧银行卡是不是下个月到期？
duì le nǐ fángzi de yājīn jiāo le ma nǐ de jiù yínhángkǎ shì bu shì xià gè yuè dàoqī · By the way, have you paid the deposit on your flat? And doesn't your old bank card expire next month?

anna 交了。房东说我信用好，我们彼此都很放心。接下来去邮局吧，我妈妈的包裹终于到了，他们让我本人去拿。
jiāo le fángdōng shuō wǒ xìnyòng hǎo wǒmen bǐcǐ dōu hěn fàngxīn jiēxialai qù yóujú ba wǒ māma de bāoguǒ zhōngyú dào le tāmen ràng wǒ běnrén qù ná · I have. The landlord says my record is good, so we both feel safe. Next, the post office: my mum's parcel has finally arrived, and they want me to collect it in person.

xiaoming 你催了那么多次，他们果然处理了。
nǐ cuī le nàme duō cì tāmen guǒrán chǔlǐ le · You chased it so many times, and sure enough they sorted it out.

anna 是啊。我妈妈把住址写错了一个字，所以包裹一直没配送，差点儿就丢失了。
shì a wǒ māma bǎ zhùzhǐ xiě cuò le yí gè zì suǒyǐ bāoguǒ yìzhí méi pèisòng chàdiǎnr jiù diūshī le · Yes. My mum got one character of the address wrong, so it was never delivered and nearly went missing.

xiaoming 包裹一旦丢失就麻烦了。里面是什么物品？
bāoguǒ yídàn diūshī jiù máfan le lǐmiàn shì shénme wùpǐn · Once a parcel is lost, it's a real headache. What's inside?

anna 我拆开看看……都是日用品，还有一把锁。东西都在！妈妈说运费比东西还贵，的确如此。
wǒ chāi kāi kàn kan dōu shì rìyòngpǐn hái yǒu yì bǎ suǒ dōngxi dōu zài māma shuō yùnfèi bǐ dōngxi hái guì díquè rúcǐ · Let me open it… it's all everyday things, and a lock. Everything's there! Mum said the postage cost more than what's inside, and she was right.

xiaoming 这个箱子太满了，盖不上了。这些东西你先存放在我的车里吧。
zhège xiāngzi tài mǎn le gài bú shàng le zhèxiē dōngxi nǐ xiān cúnfàng zài wǒ de chē lǐ ba · This box is too full to close. Leave these things in my car for now.

anna 好。我还想顺便给手机充值，再买几张邮票和一个信封。
hǎo wǒ hái xiǎng shùnbiàn gěi shǒujī chōngzhí zài mǎi jǐ zhāng yóupiào hé yí gè xìnfēng · OK. While I'm here I also want to top up my phone and buy a few stamps and an envelope.

xiaoming 邮票？现在居然还有人寄信！
yóupiào xiànzài jūrán hái yǒu rén jì xìn · Stamps? People still post letters these days?

anna 我奶奶喜欢收信，她说信比手机里的信息有意思多了。你把信封递给我，我贴上邮票，便可以寄了。
wǒ nǎinai xǐhuan shōu xìn tā shuō xìn bǐ shǒujī lǐ de xìnxī yǒu yìsi duō le nǐ bǎ xìnfēng dì gěi wǒ wǒ tiē shàng yóupiào biàn kěyǐ jì le · My grandma loves getting letters. She says they're much nicer than messages on a phone. Pass me the envelope: once I've stuck the stamp on, it can go.

xiaoming 好吧，你奶奶的确说得对。哦，我妈妈让我转告你，周末来家里吃饭。
hǎo ba nǐ nǎinai díquè shuō de duì ò wǒ māma ràng wǒ zhuǎngào nǐ zhōumò lái jiā lǐ chī fàn · Fair enough. Your grandma has a point. Oh, my mum asked me to tell you: come over for dinner at the weekend.

chapter 3 the wallet in the street

anna 小明，你看，地上有一个钱包！
Xiǎomíng nǐ kàn dì shàng yǒu yí gè qián bāo · Xiaoming, look, there's a wallet on the ground!

xiaoming 里面有钱，还有一张银行卡。丢钱包的人一定很着急。
lǐmiàn yǒu qián hái yǒu yì zhāng yínhángkǎ diū qián bāo de rén yídìng hěn zháojí · There's money in it, and a bank card. Whoever lost it must be worried sick.

anna 我们把它交给派出所吧，就在前面。
wǒmen bǎ tā jiāo gěi pàichūsuǒ ba jiù zài qiánmiàn · Let's take it to the police station. It's just up ahead.

xiaoming 好。哎，赵阳刚好在附近，他是记者，我叫他过来。
hǎo āi ZhàoYáng gānghǎo zài fùjìn tā shì jìzhě wǒ jiào tā guòlái · OK. Hey, Zhao Yang happens to be nearby. He's a journalist. I'll ask him to come over.

zhao yang 你们好！听说你们捡到了一个钱包？你们做得对。
nǐmen hǎo tīngshuō nǐmen jiǎn dào le yí gè qián bāo nǐmen zuò de duì · Hi, you two! I hear you found a wallet? You did the right thing.

anna 我们在路上捡到的，里面的东西都没动。你怎么也在这儿？
wǒmen zài lùshang jiǎn dào de lǐmiàn de dōngxi dōu méi dòng nǐ zěnme yě zài zhèr · We found it in the street. We haven't touched anything inside. Why are you here too?

zhao yang 刚才前面路口出了个意外：一辆车开得太快，没控制好，开到了路边。
gāngcái qiánmiàn lùkǒu chū le gè yìwài yí liàng chē kāi de tài kuài méi kòngzhì hǎo kāi dào le lùbiān · There was an accident at the crossing just now: a car was going too fast, lost control and went off the road.

anna 天啊！有人受伤吗？
tiān a yǒu rén shòushāng ma · Goodness! Was anyone hurt?

zhao yang 大家都平安。一个保安刚好在场，立刻报警了，还把司机救了出来。
dàjiā dōu píngān yí gè bǎoān gānghǎo zàichǎng lìkè bàojǐng le hái bǎ sījī jiù le chulai · Everyone's safe. A security guard happened to be there: he called the police at once and got the driver out.

xiaoming 他违反了交通规定，一定会被罚款吧？
tā wéifǎn le jiāotōng guīdìng yídìng huì bèi fákuǎn ba · He broke the traffic rules. He'll get a fine, won't he?

zhao yang 会的，他被罚了两千块，还得赔路边的东西。好在他有保险。
huì de tā bèi fá le liǎngqiān kuài hái děi péi lùbiān de dōngxi hǎozài tā yǒu bǎoxiǎn · Yes: a two-thousand-yuan fine, and he has to pay for the damage at the roadside. Luckily he's insured.

anna 所以开车一定要遵守规定，才能避免意外。
suǒyǐ kāichē yídìng yào zūnshǒu guīdìng cái néng bìmiǎn yìwài · So when you drive, you really have to keep to the rules to avoid accidents.

zhao yang 对。到了派出所，要登记一下你们的名字和电话，警察找你们也方便。
duì dào le pàichūsuǒ yào dēngjì yíxià nǐmen de míngzi hé diànhuà jǐngchá zhǎo nǐmen yě fāngbiàn · Right. At the police station they'll take your names and numbers, so the police can reach you.

xiaoming 没问题。希望丢钱包的人尽快拿回去。
méi wèntí xīwàng diū qián bāo de rén jǐnkuài ná huiqu · No problem. I hope the owner gets it back soon.

chapter 4 a call from the boss

manager lin 安娜，今天下午的会议怎么样？那家公司满意吗？

Ānnà jīntiān xiàwǔ de huìyì zěnmeyàng nà jiā gōngsī mǎnyì ma · Anna, how was this afternoon's meeting? Were they happy?

anna 很满意！一开始他们好像没什么兴趣，后来渐渐愿意听我说了。他们说下个月就可以开始一起工作。

hěn mǎnyì yì kāishǐ tāmen hǎoxiàng méi shénme xìngqù hòulái jiànjiàn yuànyì tīng wǒ shuō le tāmen shuō xià gè yuè jiù kěyǐ kāishǐ yìqǐ gōngzuò · Very! At first they didn't seem interested, but little by little they were willing to listen. They say we can start working together next month.

manager lin 太好了，恭喜你！我早已知道你能做好。今天辛苦你了。

tài hǎo le gōngxǐ nǐ wǒ zǎoyǐ zhīdào nǐ néng zuò hǎo jīntiān xīnkǔ nǐ le · Wonderful, congratulations! I knew all along you'd do well. You've worked hard today.

anna 不辛苦。我本来担心自己白准备了，没想到他们反而问了很多问题。

bù xīnkǔ wǒ běnlái dānxīn zìjǐ bái zhǔnbèi le méi xiǎng dào tāmen fǎnér wèn le hěn duō wèntí · Not at all. I was worried I'd prepared for nothing, but instead they asked lots of questions.

manager lin 他们的人即将来北京，到时候你来负责。临时有事的话，随时给我留言。

tāmen de rén jíjiāng lái Běijīng dàoshíhou nǐ lái fùzé línshí yǒu shì dehuà suíshí gěi wǒ liúyán · Someone from their side is about to come to Beijing, and you'll be in charge. If anything comes up at short notice, leave me a message any time.

anna 好的，我会抓紧准备。今天我还捡到了一个钱包，交给派出所了。

hǎo de wǒ huì zhuājǐn zhǔnbèi jīntiān wǒ hái jiǎn dào le yí gè qián bāo jiāo gěi pàichūsuǒ le · Sure, I'll get preparing. I also found a wallet today and handed it in at the police station.

manager lin 你今天简直太忙了！

nǐ jīntiān jiǎnzhí tài máng le · You've had a crazy day!

anna 是啊，从早上到现在，我始终没停过。早上起晚了，我连忙拨打小明的电话，可是一直占线。

shì a cóng zǎoshang dào xiànzài wǒ shǐzhōng méi tíng guo zǎoshang qǐ wǎn le wǒ liánmáng bōdǎ Xiǎomíng de diànhuà kěshì yìzhí zhànxiàn · I know. From this morning until now, I haven't stopped once. I got up late, rushed to call Xiaoming, and his line was busy the whole time.

manager lin 那明天你就晚一点儿来吧。不过你可别忘了定闹钟！

nà míngtiān nǐ jiù wǎn yìdiǎnr lái ba búguò nǐ kě bié wàng le dìng nàozhōng · Then come in a bit later tomorrow. But whatever you do, don't forget to set your alarm!

anna 哈哈，这次绝对不会忘了！

hā hā zhè cì juéduì bú huì wàng le · Ha ha, this time I absolutely won't forget!

chapter 5 the evening news

xiaoming 安娜，快来看！赵阳做的新闻上电视了。
Ānnà kuài lái kàn ZhàoYáng zuò de xīnwén shàng diànshì le · Anna, come and look! Zhao Yang's news story is on TV.

zhao yang 最近很多人接到骗人的电话。下面是派出所给大家的提醒：
zuìjìn hěn duō rén jiē dào piàn rén de diànhuà xiàmiàn shì pàichūsuǒ gěi dàjiā de tíxǐng · Lately many people have had scam calls. Here is a reminder from the police station for everyone:

zhao yang “最近有人打电话说自己是银行或法院的，要大家的账号和密码。这是违法的！一旦接到这种电话，请立即挂掉，不要说出任何信息。请记好电话号码，这就是证据，并随时拨打110报警。万一被骗了，也别着急，请尽快到派出所登记。大家彼此提醒，平安每一天！”
zuìjìn yǒu rén dǎ diànhuà shuō zìjǐ shì yínháng huò fǎyuàn de yào dàjiā de zhànghào hé mìmǎ zhè shì wéifǎ de yídàn jiē dào zhè zhǒng diànhuà qǐng lìjí guà diào búyào shuō chū rènhé xìnxī qǐng jì hǎo diànhuà hàomǎ zhè jiùshì zhèngjù bìng suíshí bōdǎ bàojǐng wànyī bèi piàn le yě bié zháojí qǐng jǐnkuài dào pàichūsuǒ dēngjì dàjiā bǐcǐ tíxǐng píngān měi yì tiān · “Lately people have been calling and saying they're from a bank or a court, asking for account numbers and passwords. This is illegal! The moment you get a call like this, hang up at once and give no information. Write down the phone number: it is evidence. Call 110 at any time. If you have been tricked, don't panic: come to the police station as soon as you can. Remind each other, and stay safe every day!”

anna 这就是我上次接到的电话！好在我根本没说账号。
zhè jiùshì wǒ shàng cì jiē dào de diànhuà hǎozài wǒ gēnběn méi shuō zhànghào · That's exactly the call I got last time! Luckily I didn't say my account number at all.

dr li 我们医院有个老人被骗了一万块，钱难以找回来了。
wǒmen yīyuàn yǒu gè lǎorén bèi piàn le yí wàn kuài qián nányǐ zhǎo huilai le · An old man at our hospital was tricked out of ten thousand yuan, and it's hard to get the money back.

ms zhang 所以我们必须采取办法，阻止这种事。我给奶奶的手机安了一个新东西，骗人的电话打不进来。
suǒyǐ wǒmen bìxū cǎiqǔ bànfǎ zǔzhǐ zhè zhǒng shì wǒ gěi nǎinai de shǒujī ān le yí gè xīn dōngxi piàn rén de diànhuà dǎ bu jinlai · So we have to take steps to stop this. I've installed something new on Grandma's phone: scam calls can't get through.

xiaoming 放心，这是合法的，银行也让大家用。
fàngxīn zhè shì héfǎ de yínháng yě ràng dàjiā yòng · Don't worry, it's perfectly legal: the banks tell everyone to use it too.

anna 那我也安一个。对了，或许警察已经找到那些人了？
nà wǒ yě ān yí gè duì le huòxǔ jǐngchá yǐjīng zhǎo dào nàxiē rén le · Then I'll install one too. By the way, maybe the police have found those people already?

ms zhang 听说找到了，下个月就要上法院。
tīngshuō zhǎo dào le xià gè yuè jiù yào shàng fǎyuàn · I hear they have: they're going to court next month.

anna 呀，太好了！今天偶然捡到钱包，晚上又看到这个新闻，真是忙了一整天。
yā tài hǎo le jīntiān ǒurán jiǎn dào qián bāo wǎnshang yòu kàn dào zhège xīnwén zhēn shì máng le yì zhěng tiān · Oh, great! A wallet found by chance today, and this story tonight: what a full day.

dr li 不要紧，没法儿休息的日子毕竟不多。祝你明天好运！
búyàojǐn méifǎr xiūxi de rìzi bìjìng bù duō zhù nǐ míngtiān hǎoyùn · Never mind: days with no rest are rare, after all. Good luck tomorrow!

A late alarm, a bank, a parcel, a lost wallet and a happy boss: you followed a whole day in Chinese. Well done!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 7 a new flat

Talk about a flat: rooms, rent, repairs, the agent and the property office, and say what is written or hung on something.

Finding and settling into a flat is one of the biggest jobs in a new city, and every notice on the door matters.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
房屋	fángwū	houses, buildings (formal)	这|一带{==this area, around here}的房屋都是二十年前盖的。 The buildings round here all went up twenty years ago.
公寓	gōngyù	flat, apartment (building)	我住的公寓离地铁站很近。 My apartment is very close to the underground station.
住房	zhùfáng	housing	大城市的住房问题越来越受到关注。 Housing in big cities is getting more and more attention.
住宿	zhùsù	to stay (overnight); accommodation	这次旅行的住宿我已经安排好了。 I've already sorted out where we're staying on this trip.
租金	zūjīn	rent	这个房子的租金每个月五千块。 The rent for this flat is 5,000 yuan a month.
物业	wùyè	property management (company)	电梯坏了，我已经给物业打了电话。 The lift's broken. I've already called the property office.
单元	dānyuán	unit; entrance (of a building)	我家在三号楼二单元十二层。 We live in Building 3, Entrance 2, on the 12th floor.
社区	shèqū	community, neighbourhood	我们社区周末有很多活动。 Our neighbourhood has lots of activities at the weekend.
居住	jūzhù	to live, reside (formal)	这个小区居住着两千多人。 More than two thousand people live on this estate.
居民	jūmín	residents	很多居民都参加了社区的会{hui4-3}。 Lots of residents came to the community meeting.
卧室	wòshì	bedroom	这个房子有两个卧室和一个厨房。 This flat has two bedrooms and a kitchen.
书房	shūfáng	study (room)	我想把小房间改为{wei2}书房。 I want to turn the small room into a study.
阳台	yángtái	balcony	我喜欢在阳台上喝茶看书。 I like drinking tea and reading on the balcony.
窗台	chuāngtái	windowsill	窗台上放着几个花瓶。 There are a few vases on the windowsill.

台阶	táijiē	steps (outside a building)	下雨了，台阶上都是水，小心一点儿。 It's raining and the steps are all wet. Be careful.
墙	qiáng	wall	我想给这面墙换个颜色。 I'd like to paint this wall a different colour.
装修	zhuāngxiū	to renovate, do up (a home)	楼上正在装修，每天都不安静。 The flat upstairs is being done up, and it's never quiet.
装饰	zhuāngshì	to decorate; decoration	她用很多照片装饰了自己的房间。 She decorated her room with lots of photos.
中介	zhōngjiè	agent, agency (estate agent)	我是通过中介找到这个房子的。 I found this flat through an agent.
舒适	shūshì	comfortable, cosy	房间不大，但是很舒适。 The room isn't big, but it's very comfortable.
安装	ānzhuāng	to install, fit	师傅明天上午来安装空调。 The fitter is coming tomorrow morning to install the air conditioner.
设备	shèbèi	equipment, facilities	这个健身房的设备都是新的。 All the equipment in this gym is new.
电器	diànqì	electrical appliance	出门以前，记得关好所有|的电器。 Before you go out, remember to switch off all the appliances.
家电	jiādiàn	household appliances	新房子里的家电都是房东买的。 The landlord bought all the appliances in the new flat.
维修	wéixiū	to repair, maintain	洗衣机坏了，得{dei3}找人来维修。 The washing machine's broken. We need someone to repair it.

pattern verb + 有: written on, stuck on, hung on

place + 上 | 写 · 贴 · 挂 | 有 | thing

To say what is written, stuck or hung on something, put 有 after the verb: 信封上写有地址. It means the same as 写着, but sounds more written, so you'll meet it on notices, in descriptions and in stories.

信封上写有我的住址和电话。 **xìnfēng shàng xiě yǒu wǒ de zhùzhǐ hé diànhuà** My address and phone number are written on the envelope.

这面墙上挂有很多老照片。 **zhè miàn qiáng shàng guà yǒu hěn duō lǎo zhàopiàn** There are lots of old photos hanging on this wall.

每个单元门口都贴有社区的通知。 **měi gè dānyuán ménkǒu dōu tiē yǒu shèqū de tōngzhī** There's a community notice at the door of every entrance.

dialogue anna's new flat

xiaoming 这个公寓真不错！卧室、书房都有，还有一个大阳台。
zhège gōngyù zhēn búcuò wòshì shūfáng dōu yǒu hái yǒu yí gè dà yángtái · This flat is great! A bedroom, a study and a big balcony too.

anna 是啊，我在网上看了一个月，最后是通过中介找到的。
shì a wǒ zài wǎngshang kàn le yí gè yuè zuìhòu shì tōngguò zhōngjiè zhǎo dào de · I know. I looked online for a month and found it through an agent in the end.

xiaoming 租金贵不贵?
zūjīn guì bu guì · Is the rent expensive?

anna 一个月五千，押金也交了。房子刚装修过，家电也都是新的。
yí gè yuè wǔqiān yājīn yě jiāo le fángzi gāng zhuāngxiū guo jiādiàn yě dōu shì xīn de · Five thousand a month, and I've paid the deposit. It's just been done up, and the appliances are all new.

xiaoming 那你简直太幸福了！这个社区住的大部分是年轻人吧?
nà nǐ jiǎnzhí tài xìngfú le zhège shèqū zhù de dà bùfen shì niánqīng rén ba · You're so lucky! Most people on this estate are young, right?

anna 对。你看，门上贴有物业的电话，万一设备坏了，随时可以找他们维修。
duì nǐ kàn mén shàng tiē yǒu wùyè de diànhuà wànyī shèbèi huài le suíshí kěyǐ zhǎo tāmen wéixiū · Yes. Look, the property office's number is on the door. If anything breaks, I can call them any time to fix it.

xiaoming 窗台上还放着几个花瓶，是你自己装饰的吗?
chuāngtái shàng hái fàng zhe jǐ gè huā píng shì nǐ zìjǐ zhuāngshì de ma · There are some vases on the windowsill too. Did you decorate it yourself?

anna 不是，是房东留下的。不过墙上什么都没有，我想挂几张照片。
bú shì shì fángdōng liúxia de búguò qiáng shàng shénme dōu méiyǒu wǒ xiǎng guà jǐ zhāng zhàopiàn · No, the landlord left them. But the walls are bare, so I want to hang a few photos.

xiaoming 好主意。我再帮你安装一个灯吧，书房不太亮。
hǎo zhǔyi wǒ zài bāng nǐ ānzhuāng yí gè dēng ba shūfáng bú tài liàng · Good idea. And I'll put in another light for you. The study is a bit dark.

anna 谢谢！住在这儿一定很舒适。
xièxie zhù zài zhèr yídìng hěn shūshì · Thanks! It's going to be so comfortable living here.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

宿
sù
to stay overnight

设
shè
to set up

good to know · Chinese addresses go from big to small: city, district, estate, building 楼, entrance 单元, then flat number. Many new flats are sold as bare concrete, so 装修 (doing up a flat) is a huge topic of conversation in China.

Agent, rent, deposit, repairs: you can now find a home in Chinese and make it yours.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 8 housework

Talk about housework and things around the home, and describe one quick action and what happens next.

Sharing a home, helping friends move, staying with a host family: housework words come up every single day.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
家务	jiāwù	housework	我们家的家务是大家一起做的。 In our family, we all do the housework together.
被子	bèizi	quilt, duvet	天冷了，晚上睡觉要盖厚被子。 It's got cold. You need a thick duvet at night.
床单	chuángdān	(bed) sheet	我每个星期洗一次床单。 I wash the sheets once a week.
柜子	guìzi	cupboard, cabinet	冬天的衣服都放在柜子里了。 All the winter clothes are in the cupboard.
书架	shūjià	bookshelf	书架上的书太多了，都放不下了。 There are so many books on the shelf that there's no room left.
台灯	táidēng	desk lamp	晚上看书最好开着台灯。 When you read at night, it's best to have the desk lamp on.
拖鞋	tuōxié	slippers	进门请换拖鞋。 Please change into slippers when you come in.
玩具	wánjù	toy	孩子的玩具放得到处都是。 The kids' toys are all over the place.
盆	pén	basin, bowl; pot (for plants)	我在阳台上种{zhong4}了几盆花。 I've planted a few pots of flowers on the balcony.
剪刀	jiǎndāo	scissors	你有剪刀吗？我想打开这个包裹。 Have you got some scissors? I want to open this parcel.
扇子	shànzi	(hand) fan	夏天太热了，奶奶总是拿着一把{=(measure word: things with a handle)}扇子。 Summer's so hot that Grandma always carries a fan.
洒	sǎ	to spill; to sprinkle	小心，别把水洒在电脑上！ Careful, don't spill water on the computer!
晒	shài	to dry in the sun; to sunbathe	今天太阳很好，我们把被子拿出去晒晒吧。 It's sunny today. Let's put the duvets out to air.
浇	jiāo	to water (plants); to pour on	我出差的时候，请你帮我浇浇花。 While I'm away on business, could you water my plants?
堆	duī	to pile up; a pile, a heap	桌子上堆着很多没看完的书。 There's a pile of half-read books on the desk.
翻	fān	to turn over; to search through	我把包翻了一遍，也没找到钥匙。 I turned my bag inside out and still couldn't

			find my keys.
藏	cáng	to hide	孩子们把礼物藏在了床下面。 The children hid the present under the bed.
摔	shuāi	to fall; to drop and break	他不小心把手机摔坏了。 He accidentally dropped his phone and broke it.
碎	suì	to break into pieces; broken	杯子掉在地{di4-3}上，碎了。 The cup fell on the floor and smashed.
扇	shān	to fan	她一边走一边用手扇风。 She fanned herself with her hand as she walked.
关闭	guānbì	to close, shut down	离开以前，请关闭所有|的电器。 Please switch off all appliances before you leave.
工具	gōngjù	tool	手机已经变成了我们生活中最重要的工具。 The phone has become the most important tool in our lives.
一次性	yīcìxìng	disposable; one-off	为了保护环境，我很少用一次性的筷子。 To protect the environment, I rarely use disposable chopsticks.
整齐	zhěngqí	neat, tidy, in order	他的房间总是很整齐。 His room is always very tidy.
保存	bǎocún	to keep, preserve; to save (a file)	这些老照片我一直保存得很好。 I've always kept these old photos very carefully.

pattern 把 + thing + 一 + verb: one quick action

who | 把 + thing | 一 + verb | (就) what happens next

把 + thing + 一 + verb tells one quick, simple action, and then what happens straight after, usually with 就: 他把门一关，就走了. The 一 makes it sudden, like "one push of the door, and...". It's great for telling stories.

她把被子一盖，很快就睡着了。 **tā bǎ bèizi yí gài hěn kuài jiù shuì zháo le** She pulled the duvet over herself and was asleep in no time.

我把包一翻，就找到了钥匙。 **wǒ bǎ bāo yì fān jiù zhǎo dào le yàoshi** One look through my bag and I found the keys.

他把台灯一关，立刻睡着了。 **tā bǎ táidēng yì guān lìkè shuì zháo le** He switched off the lamp and fell asleep at once.

dialogue unpacking

little sister 安娜，你的东西怎么堆得到处都是？
Ānnà nǐ de dōngxi zěnme duī de dàochù dōu shì · Anna, why is your stuff piled up everywhere?

anna 我刚搬家，还没收拾好。你来得刚好，帮我一下吧！
wǒ gāng bānjiā hái méi shōushi hǎo nǐ lái de gānghǎo bāng wǒ yíxià ba · I've only just moved in and haven't sorted it out yet. You've come at just the right time. Give me a hand!

little sister 没问题。这些书放在书架上吗？
méi wèntí zhèxiē shū fàng zài shūjià shàng ma · Sure. Do these books go on the bookshelf?

anna 对。剪刀和工具都在那个盆里，你先把箱子拆开。
duì jiǎndāo hé gōngjù dōu zài nàge pén lǐ nǐ xiān bǎ xiāngzi chāi kāi · Yes. The scissors and tools are in that basin. Open up the boxes first.

little sister 哈，箱子里居然藏着一个旧玩具！
hā xiāngzi lǐ jūrán cáng zhe yí gè jiù wánjù · Ha, there's an old toy hiding in this box!

anna 那是我小时候的，我一直保存着。它已经陪了我二十年了。
nà shì wǒ xiǎoshíhou de wǒ yìzhí bǎocún zhe tā yǐjīng péi le wǒ èrshí nián le · That's from when I was little. I've always kept it. It's been with me for twenty years.

little sister 好可爱！哎呀，我不小心把水洒了。
hǎo kěài āiyā wǒ bù xiǎoxīn bǎ shuǐ sǎ le · So cute! Oops, I've spilt the water.

anna 不要紧，我把地一擦就好了。你穿上拖鞋，小心别摔了。
búyàojǐn wǒ bǎ dì yì cā jiù hǎo le nǐ chuān shàng tuōxié xiǎoxīn bié shuāi le · Never mind, one wipe and it's done. Put some slippers on so you don't slip.

little sister 好。窗台上的花要浇水吗？
hǎo chuāngtái shàng de huā yào jiāo shuǐ ma · OK. Do the flowers on the windowsill need watering?

anna 要。浇完我们把被子拿到阳台上晒晒。
yào jiāo wán wǒmen bǎ bèizi ná dào yángtái shàng shài shai · Yes. After that, let's put the duvet out on the balcony to air.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

柜
guì
cupboard

架
jià
frame, rack; measure word for planes, pianos

拖
tuō
to drag



盆 pén basin, bowl; pot (for plants)										
	盆									

good to know · 扇 has two readings: shàn is the fan itself (扇子), shān is the action, to fan (扇一扇). Hosts in China usually offer guests 拖鞋 at the door. Taking your shoes off is the polite thing to do.

Duvets, cupboards, spills and slippers: you can now run a home in Chinese, and tell the story of a busy Saturday.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 9 all the family

Talk about the whole family, from grandparents to grown-up children, and sort a group with 老的老，小的小.

Family is at the heart of Chinese life. Knowing who is 姥姥 and who is 奶奶 shows real respect.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
姥姥	lǎolao	grandma (mum's mum, northern)	我姥姥今年八十岁了，身体还很好。 My grandma is eighty this year and still very healthy.
姥爷	lǎoye	grandpa (mum's dad, northern)	姥爷每天早上都去公园锻炼。 Grandpa goes to the park to exercise every morning.
外公	wàigōng	grandpa (mum's dad)	我外公以前是一名老师。 My grandpa used to be a teacher.
外婆	wàipó	grandma (mum's mum)	小时候，外婆常常给我讲故事。 When I was little, Grandma often told me stories.
老公	lǎogōng	husband (casual)	我老公做饭比我做得好吃。 My husband cooks better than I do.
老婆	lǎopo	wife (casual)	我老婆今天加班，我去接孩子。 My wife is working late today, so I'm picking up the kids.
太太	tàitai	wife; Mrs	王先生和他太太都是医生。 Mr Wang and his wife are both doctors.
夫妇	fūfù	married couple, husband and wife	楼下住着一对老夫妇，人很好。 A lovely elderly couple lives downstairs.
儿女	érnǚ	sons and daughters, children	他们的儿女都在外地工作。 Their children all work in other cities.
子女	zǐnǚ	children (formal)	父母都希望子女过得好。 All parents want their children to do well.
亲人	qīnrén	family members, loved ones	过年的时候，大家都想跟亲人在一起。 At Spring Festival, everyone wants to be with their family.
亲	qīn	related by blood; close, dear; to kiss	她不是我的亲妹妹，可是我们比亲姐妹还亲。 She's not my real sister, but we're closer than real sisters.
亲情	qīnqíng	family love, family ties	这部电影讲的是一个关于亲情的故事。 This film tells a story about family love.
亲朋好友	qīnpénghǎoyǒu	family and friends	过生日那天，亲朋好友都来了。 On my birthday, all my family and friends came.
亲爱	qīnài	dear, beloved	亲爱的妈妈，祝您生日快乐！ Dear Mum, happy birthday!
宝贝	bǎobèi	treasure; darling, baby	宝贝，该睡觉了。 Time for bed, sweetheart.

宝	bǎo	treasure; precious	对姥姥来说，这些老照片就是宝。 To Grandma, these old photos are treasure.
年纪	niánjì	age (of a person)	我姥爷年纪大了，耳朵不太好。 My grandpa is getting on, and his hearing isn't good.
成年	chéngnián	to come of age, be adult	孩子成年以后，就要自己做决定了。 Once children are grown up, they make their own decisions.
成人	chéngrén	adult; to grow up	这个游戏孩子和成人都喜欢玩。 Children and adults both love this game.
去世	qùshì	to pass away	我外公三年前去世了，我们都很想他。 My grandpa passed away three years ago. We all miss him.
一代	yīdài	a generation	我们这一代人从小就用手机。 Our generation has used phones since childhood.
看望	kànwàng	to visit, call on	周末我们去医院看望了姥姥。 At the weekend we went to visit Grandma in hospital.
陪伴	péibàn	to keep (someone) company	老人最需要的是儿女的陪伴。 What older people need most is their children's company.
看	kān	to look after, mind	我今天要在家看{kan1}孩子，不能出去。 I'm minding the kids at home today, so I can't go out.

pattern a的a，b的b: some are a, some are b

A的A , B的B

Say a word twice around 的 to sort a group into kinds: 老的老，小的小, "some are old, the rest are little". It works with verbs too: 坐的坐，站的站, some sitting, some standing. Often it hints that nobody is free to help.

我老婆说，家里老的老，小的小，只有我们能帮忙。 **wǒ lǎopo shuō jiā lǐ lǎo de lǎo xiǎo de xiǎo zhǐyǒu wǒmen néng bāngmáng** My wife says that at home they're either old or little, so we're the only ones who can help.

过年的时候，亲朋好友来的来，走的走，家里热闹极了。 **guònián de shíhou qīnpéng hǎoyǒu lái de lái zǒu de zǒu jiā lǐ rènao jí le** At New Year, family and friends come and go, and the house is so lively.

客人们坐的坐，站的站，房间里都是人。 **kèrénmen zuò de zuò zhàn de zhàn fángjiān lǐ dōu shì rén** Some guests were sitting, some standing, and the room was packed.

dialogue grandma's birthday

xiaoming 安娜，这是我姥姥。姥姥，这是我的好朋友安娜。
Ānnà zhè shì wǒ lǎolao lǎolao zhè shì wǒ de hǎo péngyou Ānnà · Anna, this is my grandma. Grandma, this is my good friend Anna.

anna 姥姥好！祝您生日快乐！您多大年纪了？
lǎolao hǎo zhù nín shēngrì kuàilè nín duō dà niánjì le · Hello, Grandma! Happy birthday! May I ask how old you are?

ms zhang 我妈妈今年八十五了。她一听说你要来，便准备了很多好吃的。
wǒ māma jīnnián bāshíwǔ le tā yì tīngshuō nǐ yào lái biàn zhǔnbèi le hěn duō hǎochī de · My mum is eighty-five this year. The moment she heard you were coming, she made lots of food.

anna 姥姥身体真好！我外婆也八十多了，她是我最亲的人。
lǎolao shēntǐ zhēn hǎo wǒ wàipó yě bāshí duō le tā shì wǒ zuì qīn de rén · Grandma looks so well! My grandma is in her eighties too. She's the person I'm closest to.

xiaoming 我姥爷三年前去世了，姥姥一个人住。我们一有空，就来看望她。
wǒ lǎoye sān nián qián qùshì le lǎolao yí gè rén zhù wǒmen yì yǒu kòng jiù lái kànwàng tā · My grandpa passed away three years ago, and Grandma lives alone. Whenever we have time, we come to see her.

ms zhang 我老公今天在医院上班，来不了。我们这一代人工作忙，可是老人最需要的是亲人的陪伴。
wǒ lǎogōng jīntiān zài yīyuàn shàngbān lái bu liǎo wǒmen zhè yídài rén gōngzuò máng kěshì lǎorén zuì xūyào de shì qīnrén de péibàn · My husband is working at the hospital today, so he couldn't come. Our generation is so busy, but what older people need most is their family around them.

anna 过年的时候，我外婆家也是来的来，走的走，可热闹了。
guònián de shíhou wǒ wàipó jiā yě shì lái de lái zǒu de zǒu kě rènao le · At New Year my grandma's house is the same: people coming and going, so lively.

anna 您说得对。对我来说，亲人就是宝，亲情比什么都重要。
nín shuō de duì duì wǒ lái shuō qīnrén jiùshì bǎo qīnqíng bǐ shénme dōu zhòngyào · You're right. To me, family is treasure. Nothing matters more than family love.

xiaoming 你看，墙上挂有我们全家的照片，中间那个小宝贝就是我！
nǐ kàn qiáng shàng guà yǒu wǒmen quán jiā de zhàopiàn zhōngjiān nàge xiǎo bǎobèi jiùshì wǒ · Look, there are photos of the whole family on the wall. That little darling in the middle is me!

anna 哈哈，太可爱了！对了，你妹妹呢？
hā hā tài kěài le duì le nǐ mèimei ne · Ha ha, so cute! By the way, where's your sister?

xiaoming 她在楼下看邻居家的孩子。她说自己快成人了，要多帮大人做事。
tā zài lóu xià kān línjū jiā de háizi tā shuō zìjǐ kuài chéngrén le yào duō bāng dàren zuò shì · She's downstairs minding the neighbours' child. She says she's nearly an adult, so she should help the grown-ups more.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

晒
shài
to dry in the sun; to sunbathe

闭
bì
to shut



齐
qí
neat, even; all present



妇
fù
woman; wife

good to know · Your dad's parents are 爷爷 and 奶奶; your mum's are 姥姥 and 姥爷 in the north, 外婆 and 外公 in much of the south. To ask an older person's age, say 您多大年纪了？ 你几岁？ is only for children.

From 姥姥 to 小宝贝, you can now talk about three generations, and wish a grandma happy birthday the right way.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 10 the neighbours

Talk about neighbours, noise and getting along, and say how often: 通常, 时常, and the grumbling 老是.

Good neighbours make a city feel like home. In China, the older neighbours often know everything and everyone.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
大妈	dàmā	auntie (an older woman)	楼下的王大妈每天晚上都去公园跳舞。 Auntie Wang downstairs goes dancing in the park every evening.
大爷	dàye	uncle (an older man)	大爷，请问地铁站怎么走? Excuse me, sir, how do I get to the underground station?
熟人	shúrén	acquaintance, someone you know	在这个小区，我到处都能遇到熟人。 On this estate I run into people I know everywhere.
陌生	mòshēng	unfamiliar, strange	别给陌生人开门。 Don't open the door to strangers.
他人	tārén	other people, others	在图书馆里，要注意不影响他人。 In the library, be careful not to disturb others.
主人	zhǔrén	host; owner	这只小狗的主人是谁? Who does this little dog belong to?
热心	rèxīn	warm-hearted, eager to help	邻居们都很热心，常常帮我拿包裹。 The neighbours are all so kind. They often take in my parcels.
亲切	qīnqiè	kind, warm, friendly	王老师说话总是很亲切。 Teacher Wang always speaks so warmly.
吵	chǎo	noisy; to quarrel, make a noise	外面太吵了，我睡不着{zhao2}。 It's too noisy outside. I can't sleep.
闹	nào	noisy; to make a fuss	孩子们在楼下闹了一个下午。 The kids were making a racket downstairs all afternoon.
骂	mà	to scold, tell off; to swear at	他回家太晚，被妈妈骂了一顿。 He got home too late and got a telling-off from his mum.
劝	quàn	to persuade, advise	我劝了他很久，他终于同意去看医生了。 I spent ages persuading him, and he finally agreed to see a doctor.
矛盾	máodùn	conflict; contradiction	邻居之间有点儿小矛盾很正常。 It's normal for neighbours to have the odd disagreement.
相处	xiāngchǔ	to get along (with)	她性格很好，跟谁都相处得很好。 She has a lovely nature and gets on with everyone.

交往	jiāowǎng	to associate with, have contact	他很少跟邻居交往。 He rarely has anything to do with the neighbours.
打听	dǎting	to ask around, find out	我跟邻居打听了一下，附近有一家{=(measure word)}好医院。 I asked a neighbour, and there's a good hospital nearby.
迎	yíng	to welcome, greet; to face	我们笑着迎了上去。 We went up to meet them with smiles.
迎接	yíngjiē	to welcome, meet (a guest)	我们去火车站迎接新同事。 We went to the station to meet our new colleague.
通常	tōngcháng	usually, normally; usual	我通常七点起床，周末起得晚一些。 I usually get up at seven, a bit later at weekends.
时常	shícháng	often, frequently	我时常想起小时候住过{guo}的地方。 I often think of the place I lived as a child.
尊敬	zūnjìng	to respect; respected	我们都很尊敬这位老教授。 We all respect this old professor very much.
忍	rěn	to bear, put up with	楼上太吵了，我真的忍不了{liao3-4}了。 It's so noisy upstairs. I really can't stand it any more.
抱怨	bàoyuàn	to complain, grumble	他老是抱怨工作太多。 He's always complaining about having too much work.
安慰	ānwèi	to comfort; comforted	她心情不好，我们去安慰安慰她吧。 She's feeling down. Let's go and cheer her up.
同情	tóngqíng	to sympathise with; sympathy	听了他的故事，大家都很同情他。 When they heard his story, everyone felt for him.

pattern how often: 通常, 时常, 老是

who | 通常 · 时常 · 老是 | verb phrase

通常 is "usually, as a rule": a neutral habit. 时常 is "often", a little more written. 老是 is "always, keeps on", and it nearly always sounds like a complaint: 他老是迟到.

我们通常七点吃晚饭，周末晚一些。 **wǒmen tōngcháng qī diǎn chī wǎnfàn zhōumò wǎn yìxiē** We usually have dinner at seven, a bit later at weekends.

他老是迟到，被经理骂了好几次。 **tā lǎoshì chídào bèi jīnglǐ mà le hǎo jǐ cì** He's always late and has been told off by the manager several times.

我时常想起小时候的邻居。 **wǒ shícháng xiǎng qǐ xiǎoshíhou de línjū** I often think of the neighbours I had as a child.

dialogue noise upstairs

teacher wang 安娜，你今天看起来很累，昨天没睡好吗？
Ānnà nǐ jīntiān kàn qǐlai hěn lèi zuótiān méi shuì hǎo ma · Anna, you look tired today. Didn't you sleep well last night?

anna 楼上的孩子老是闹，晚上11点还很吵。
lóu shàng de háizi lǎoshì nào wǎnshang diǎn hái hěn chǎo · The kids upstairs never stop. It was still noisy at 11 last night.

teacher wang 你跟他们说过吗？
nǐ gēn tāmen shuō guo ma · Have you spoken to them?

anna 还没有。我刚搬来，我们彼此还很陌生，不好意思说。我只是跟朋友抱怨了几句。
hái méiyǒu wǒ gāng bān lái wǒmen bǐcǐ hái hěn mòshēng bù hǎoyìsi shuō wǒ zhǐshì gēn péngyou bàoyuàn le jǐ jù · Not yet. I've only just moved in and don't know them, so I feel awkward. I've only grumbled to friends.

teacher wang 我理解，也很同情你。不过邻居之间有矛盾，忍着不说也不是办法。
wǒ lǐjiě yě hěn tóngqíng nǐ búguò línjū zhījiān yǒu máodùn rěn zhe bù shuō yě bú shì bànfǎ · I understand, and I feel for you. But when neighbours have a problem, putting up with it in silence isn't the answer.

anna 那我该怎么办？
nà wǒ gāi zěnme bàn · So what should I do?

teacher wang 你可以先跟楼下的大妈打听一下，请她帮忙劝一劝。大妈们通常认识每家的主人。
nǐ kěyǐ xiān gēn lóu xià de dàmā dǎting yíxià qǐng tā bāngmáng quàn yi quan dàmāmen tōngcháng rènshi měi jiā de zhǔrén · You could start by asking the older lady downstairs, and get her to have a gentle word. Those aunties usually know every family in the building.

anna 对，楼下的王大妈很热心，说话也很亲切。我明天就带一些水果去找她。
duì lóu xià de Wáng dàmā hěn rèxīn shuōhuà yě hěn qīnqiè wǒ míngtiān jiù dài yìxiē shuǐguǒ qù zhǎo tā · Yes, Auntie Wang downstairs is so kind, and she's lovely to talk to. I'll take her some fruit tomorrow.

teacher wang 好主意。她看到你，一定会笑着迎上来。邻居就像亲人，好好相处最重要。
hǎo zhǔyi tā kàn dào nǐ yídìng huì xiào zhe yíng shanglai línjū jiù xiàng qīnrén hǎohǎo xiāngchǔ zuì zhòngyào · Good idea. She'll greet you with a big smile. Neighbours are like family: getting along well is what matters.

anna 谢谢您安慰我，我现在心情好多了。
xièxie nín ānwèi wǒ wǒ xiànzài xīnqíng hǎo duō le · Thank you for cheering me up. I feel much better now.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

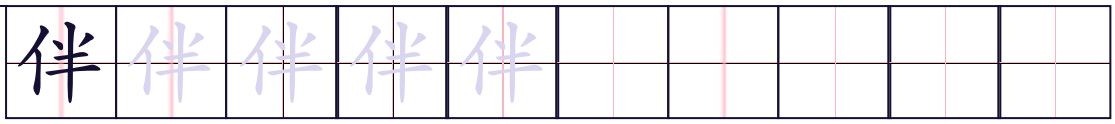
宝
bǎo
treasure; precious

贝
bèi
shell (once money)

代
dài
to stand in for; generation



伴
bàn
companion



good to know · 大妈 (auntie) and 大爷 (uncle, said dàye) are warm, northern ways to address older neighbours or strangers. A Chinese saying: 远亲不如近邻, “a relative far away is not as good as a neighbour nearby”.

You can now talk about the neighbours, kindly or not, and solve a problem the friendly way.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 11 since we moved here

Tell how things have changed over time, with 自从 (ever since) and ……以来 (since … up to now).

Talking about change is a big part of real conversation in China: cities, neighbourhoods and lives have changed so fast.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
从前	cóngqián	in the past; once upon a time	从前这里只有几家{=(measure word)}小商店。 There used to be just a few little shops here.
当年	dāngnián	in those days, back then	当年我来北京的时候，一句汉语都不会说。 When I first came to Beijing back then, I couldn't say a word of Chinese.
如今	rújīn	nowadays, now	如今，人们出门都不用带钱包了。 Nowadays people don't need to take a wallet when they go out.
至今	zhìjīn	up to now, to this day	那次旅行我至今还记得。 I still remember that trip to this day.
年代	niándài	a decade; an era	我父母是八十年代结婚的。 My parents got married in the eighties.
年初	niánchū	the beginning of the year	我们是今年年初搬到这儿的。 We moved here at the start of this year.
此后	cǐhòu	after this, from then on	他第一次来中国是2015年，此后每年都来。 He first came to China in 2015, and he's come every year since.
此前	cǐqián	before this, previously	此前，我从来没有一个|人住过{guo}。 Before that, I'd never lived on my own.
此时	cǐshí	at this moment, now	此时，外面下起了大雨。 Just then, it started pouring outside.
近年来	jìnniánlái	in recent years	近年来，学汉语的人越来越多。 In recent years, more and more people have been learning Chinese.
近期	jìnqī	in the near future; recently	这家{=(measure word)}店近期不开门，请大家注意。 Please note: this shop is closed for the time being.
近日	jìnrì	recently, in the last few days	近日，北京的天气一直很好。 The weather in Beijing has been lovely these last few days.
今日	jīnrì	today (written)	本{ben3-5}店今日休息。 This shop is closed today.
最初	zuìchū	at first, initially	最初我很不习惯，后来就好了。 At first I found it hard to get used to, but then it was fine.
早期	zǎoqī	early period, early stage	这是这位画家早期的作品。 This is one of the painter's early works.
曾	céng	once, formerly (written 曾经)	他曾在这家{=(measure word)}医院工作了十年。 He once worked at this hospital for ten years.

逐渐	zhújiàn	gradually	我逐渐习惯了这里的生活。 I gradually got used to life here.
逐步	zhúbù	step by step	我们的汉语水平在逐步提高。 Our Chinese is improving step by step.
先后	xiānhòu	one after another; order	他先后在三个城市工作过{guo}。 He has worked in three cities, one after another.
陆续	lùxù	one after another, in succession	八点以后，客人陆续到了。 After eight, the guests started arriving one after another.
依然	yīrán	still, as before	十年过去了，这条街依然很热闹。 Ten years on, this street is as lively as ever.
自从	zìcóng	ever since	自从搬到这儿，我每天都走路上班。 Ever since I moved here, I've walked to work every day.
以来	yǐlái	since (a time)	今年以来，我们社区多了很多新居民。 Since the start of this year, our neighbourhood has gained lots of new residents.
久远	jiǔyuǎn	ancient, long ago	这个故事有着久远的历史。 This story goes back a very long way.
长久	chángjiǔ	long-lasting, long-term	这不是长久的办法，我们得{dei3}再想想。 That's not a long-term solution. We need to think again.

pattern 自从 and （自）……以来: ever since

自从 + event **or** **（自）+ time + 以来** **, situation up to now**

自从 + an event or a time is "ever since": 自从搬到这儿，…. Its partner is （自）……以来, "since … up to now": 今年以来, 自2020年以来. Both look back from today, so what follows is a situation that has lasted until now. You can even use both: 自从来北京以来.

自从有了手机，人们很少写信了。 **zìcóng yǒu le shǒujī rénmen hěn shǎo xiě xìn le** Ever since we've had mobile phones, people hardly write letters.

自2020年以来，这个社区先后开了三家超市。 **zì nián yǐlái zhège shèqū xiānhòu kāi le sān jiā chāoshì** Since 2020, three supermarkets have opened in this neighbourhood, one after another.

自从认识了王老师，我对汉语越来越有兴趣。 **zìcóng rènshi le Wánglǎoshī wǒ duì Hànyǔ yuè lái yuè yǒu xìngqù** Ever since I met Teacher Wang, I've been more and more interested in Chinese.

此前我从来没有一个人住过，自从来北京以来，什么都得自己做。 **cǐqián wǒ cónglái méiyǒu yí gè rén zhù guo zìcóng lái Běijīng yǐlái shénme dōu děi zìjǐ zuò** I'd never lived alone before. Since coming to Beijing, I've had to do everything myself.

dialogue forty years on the estate

professor sun 你就是新搬来的安娜吧？我也住在这个楼，二单元，姓孙。
nǐ jiùshì xīn bān lái de Ānnà ba wǒ yě zhù zài zhège lóu èr dānyuán xìng Sūn · You must be Anna, who's just moved in? I live in this building too, Entrance 2. My name's Sun.

anna 孙教授好！听说您是教历史的？
Sūnjiàoshòu hǎo tīngshuō nín shì jiāo lìshǐ de · Hello, Professor Sun! I hear you teach history?

professor sun 我曾在大学教了三十年历史。现在不上课了，常常给大家讲北京早期的历史。
wǒ céng zài dàxué jiāo le sānshí nián lìshǐ xiànzài bú shàngkè le chángcháng gěi dàjiā jiǎng Běijīng zǎoqī de lìshǐ · I taught history at a university for thirty years. I don't teach classes now, but I often give talks on Beijing's early history.

anna 这个社区的历史一定很久远吧？
zhège shèqū de lìshǐ yídìng hěn jiǔyuǎn ba · This neighbourhood must go back a long way?

professor sun 也不算太久远。最初这里只有一些老房子，八十年代以后，逐步盖起了高楼，居民也逐渐多了。
yě bú suàn tài jiǔyuǎn zuìchū zhèlǐ zhǐyǒu yìxiē lǎo fángzi bāshí niándài yǐhòu zhúbù gài qǐ le gāo lóu jūmín yě zhújiàn duō le · Not that far, really. At first there were just some old houses. From the eighties, tower blocks went up bit by bit, and more and more people came to live here.

anna 您在这儿住了多久了？
nín zài zhèr zhù le duō jiǔ le · How long have you lived here?

professor sun 我当年在上海工作。自从1988年搬来，就一直住在这儿，至今快四十年了。
wǒ dāngnián zài Shànghǎi gōngzuò zìcóng nián bān lái jiù yìzhí zhù zài zhèr zhìjīn kuài sìshí nián le · Back then I was working in Shanghai. Ever since I moved here in 1988, I've lived here: nearly forty years now.

anna 我自从来北京以来，已经搬了三次家了。
wǒ zìcóng lái Běijīng yǐlái yǐjīng bān le sān cì jiā le · Since I came to Beijing, I've moved house three times already.

anna 那您一定看到了很多变化。
nà nín yídìng kàn dào le hěn duō biànhuà · Then you must have seen a lot of changes.

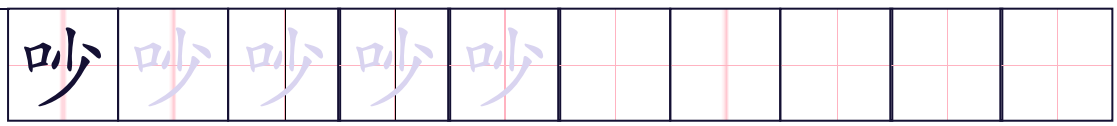
professor sun 当然。从前夏天的晚上，大家都在院子里，坐的坐，站的站，一聊就是几个小时。
dāngrán cóngqián xiàtiān de wǎnshang dàjiā dōu zài yuànzi lǐ zuò de zuò zhàn de zhàn yì liáo jiùshì jǐ gè xiǎoshí · Of course. On summer evenings, everyone used to be out in the yard, some sitting, some standing, chatting for hours.

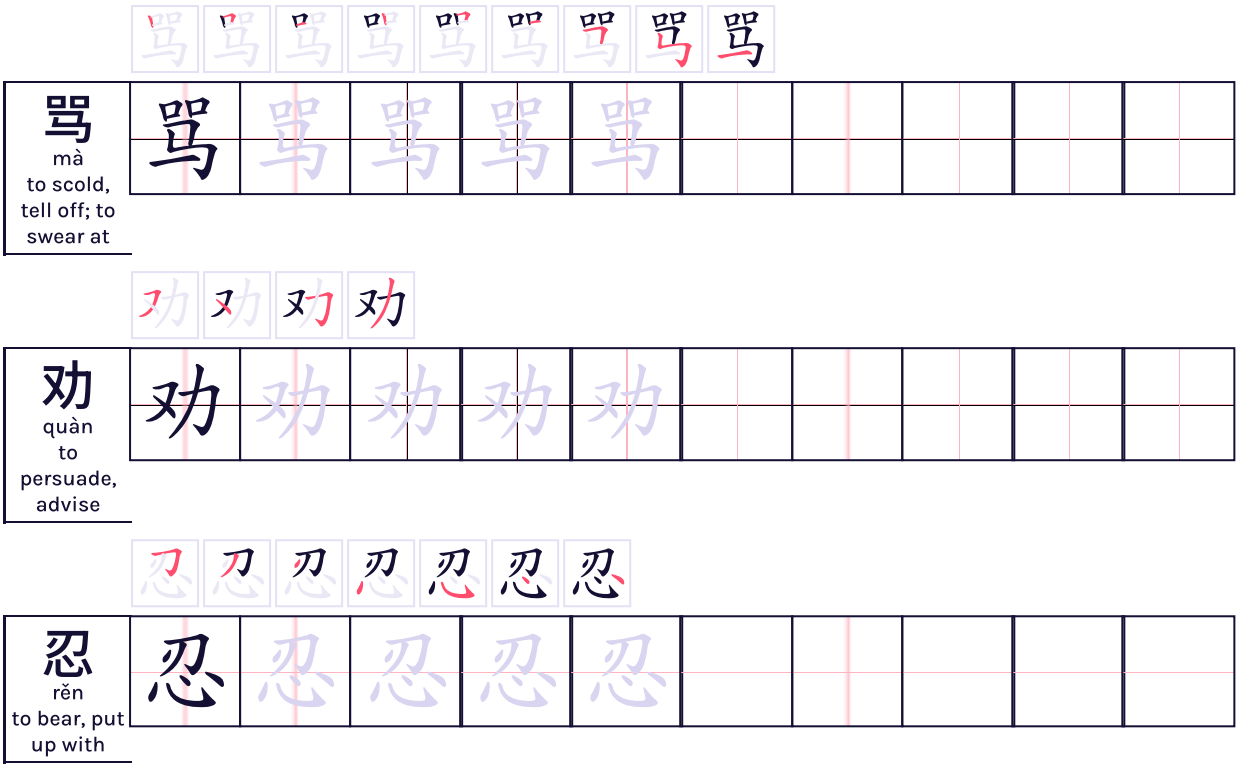
anna 如今大家工作忙，见面少了。不过社区的活动依然很多，下个周末就有一个邻居晚会。
rújīn dàjiā gōngzuò máng jiànmiàn shǎo le búguò shèqū de huódòng yīrán hěn duō xià gè zhōumò jiù yǒu yí gè línjū wǎnhuì · These days everyone's busy and people meet less. But there are still lots of community events: there's a neighbours' party next weekend.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



吵
chǎo
noisy; to quarrel, make a noise





good to know · Notices and news love 今日, 近日 and 近期. In conversation, say 今天, 最近 and 最近一段时间. 自从 always looks back from now. For the future, use 从……起 or 以后: 从明天起, 毕业以后.

You can now tell how a place and a life have changed, and listen to a good storyteller, in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 12 mission: the neighbourhood party

Chinese HSK 5 in 80 days
unit 2 · home & neighbours

Follow a neighbourhood party from the notice on the door to the last goodbye: homes, family, neighbours and how things have changed.

A community party is where a new flat becomes a home. Everything from this unit comes together here.

chapter 1 the notice on the door

anna 孙教授，您看，门上贴有一张通知。单元门口的墙上也贴有一张。

Sūnjiàoshòu nín kàn mén shàng tiē yǒu yì zhāng tōngzhī dānyuán ménkǒu de qiáng shàng yě tiē yǒu yì zhāng · Professor Sun, look, there's a notice on the door. There's one on the wall by the entrance too.

professor sun 是物业贴的。我给你读一读：

shì wùyè tiē de wǒ gěi nǐ dú yi du · The property office put them up. Let me read it to you:

professor sun “亲爱的居民：为了迎接新年，本社区将在本周六晚上六点在花园里举办邻居晚会。自从年初以来，社区里陆续搬来了很多新居民，希望大家借这个机会彼此认识。请每家带一个菜，不要用一次性的盘子和筷子。那天下午，花园的大门将关闭，请大家从二单元旁边的台阶进去。”

qīnài de jūmín wèile yíngjiē xīnnián běn shèqū jiāng zài běn zhōu liù wǎnshang liù diǎn zài huāyuán lǐ jǔbàn línjū wǎnhuì zìcóng niánchū yǐlái shèqū lǐ lùxù bān lái le hěn duō xīn jūmín xīwàng dàjiā jiè zhège jīhuì bǐcǐ rènshi qǐng měi jiā dài yí gè cài búyào yòng yícìxìng de pánzi hé kuàizi nà tiān xiàwǔ huāyuán de dà mén jiāng guānbì qǐng dàjiā cóng èr dānyuán pángbiān de táijiē jìnqù · “Dear residents: to welcome the New Year, the neighbourhood is holding a party in the garden at six this Saturday evening. Since the start of the year, many new residents have moved in, one after another, and we hope everyone takes the chance to get to know each other. Please bring one dish per family, and no disposable plates or chopsticks. That afternoon the main garden gate will be closed: please come in by the steps next to Entrance 2.”

anna 太好了！我刚搬来，正想多认识一些邻居。我住的单元离花园很近，从阳台上就能看到。

tài hǎo le wǒ gāng bān lái zhèng xiǎng duō rènshi yìxiē línjū wǒ zhù de dānyuán lí huāyuán hěn jìn cóng yángtái shàng jiù néng kàn dào · Great! I've only just moved in, and I really want to get to know more neighbours. My entrance is right by the garden: I can see it from my balcony.

professor sun 这一带的房屋很多是八十年代盖的。你住的那个楼，最初是一家工厂的住房。

zhè yídài de fángwū hěn duō shì bāshí niándài gài de nǐ zhù de nàge lóu zuìchū shì yì jiā gōngchǎng de zhùfáng · Many of the buildings round here went up in the eighties. Your block was first built as housing for a factory.

anna 所以租金不太贵。中介说房子刚装修过，卧室和书房都很大。

suǒyǐ zūjīn bú tài guì zhōngjiè shuō fángzi gāng zhuāngxiū guo wòshì hé shūfáng dōu hěn dà · So that's why the rent isn't too high. The agent said the flat had just been done up, and the bedroom and study are both big.

professor sun 物业对居民也很热心，设备坏了，随时可以找他们维修。上个月他们还帮我安装了新的家电。

wùyè duì jūmín yě hěn rèxīn shèbèi huài le suíshí kěyǐ zhǎo tāmen wéixiū shàng gè yuè tāmen hái bāng wǒ ānzhuāng le xīn de jiādiàn · The property office looks after residents well too: if anything breaks, you can call them any time. Last month they even fitted my new appliances.

anna 那我放心了。我英国的朋友下个月来北京，就住在我的书房里。这个晚会能请朋友一起来吗？

nà wǒ fàngxīn le wǒ Yīngguó de péngyou xià gè yuè lái Běijīng jiù zhù zài wǒ de shūfáng lǐ zhège wǎnhuì néng qǐng péngyou yìqǐ lái ma · That's a relief. A friend from the UK is coming to Beijing next month and will stay in my study. Can I bring friends to the party?

professor sun 当然可以，居住在这儿的人和亲朋好友都欢迎。居民通常每家带一个菜，人越多越热闹。

dāngrán kěyǐ jūzhù zài zhèr de rén hé qīnpéng hǎoyǒu dōu huānyíng jūmín tōngcháng měi jiā dài yí gè cài rén yuè duō yuè rènao · Of course. Everyone who lives here is welcome, and family and friends too. Residents usually bring a dish per family: the more, the merrier.

chapter 2 getting ready

little sister 安娜，我哥哥让我先来帮你。他和爸爸妈妈晚一点儿到。
Ānnà wǒ gēge ràng wǒ xiān lái bāng nǐ tā hé bàba māma wǎn yìdiǎnr dào · Anna, my brother sent me ahead to help. He and my parents will be a bit later.

anna 谢谢你！你来得刚好。我们用这些花装饰一下桌子吧。
xièxie nǐ nǐ lái de gānghǎo wǒmen yòng zhèxiē huā zhuāngshì yíxià zhuōzi ba · Thank you! Perfect timing. Let's decorate the table with these flowers.

little sister 剪刀在哪儿？我翻了半天也没找到，想用纸做几个小装饰。
jiǎndāo zài nǎr wǒ fān le bàntiān yě méi zhǎo dào xiǎng yòng zhǐ zuò jǐ gè xiǎo zhuāngshì · Where are the scissors? I've been searching for ages. I want to make some little paper decorations.

anna 在书架上，跟工具放在一起。哎呀，糟糕，我的菜还在火上！
zài shūjià shàng gēn gōngjù fàng zài yìqǐ āiyā zāogāo wǒ de cài hái zài huǒ shàng · On the bookshelf, with the tools. Oh no, my food is still on the stove!

little sister 别急，我帮你看着。你先把盘子拿出来，小心别摔了。
bié jí wǒ bāng nǐ kān zhe nǐ xiān bǎ pánzi ná chulai xiǎoxīn bié shuāi le · Don't panic, I'll keep an eye on it. Get the plates out first, and careful not to drop them.

anna 对，上次我就摔碎了一个。
duì shàng cì wǒ jiù shuāi suì le yí gè · Right: last time I smashed one.

little sister 你的东西又堆在窗台上了。我把柜子一打开，里面的玩具全掉出来了！
nǐ de dōngxi yòu duī zài chuāngtái shàng le wǒ bǎ guìzi yì dǎkāi lǐmiàn de wánjù quán diào chulai le · Your things are piled on the windowsill again. The moment I opened the cupboard, all the toys fell out!

anna 哈哈，那是我小时候的玩具，我一直保存着。你先把它们藏到床下吧。
hā hā nà shì wǒ xiǎoshíhou de wánjù wǒ yìzhí bǎocún zhe nǐ xiān bǎ tāmen cáng dào chuáng xià ba · Ha ha, those are my toys from when I was little: I've kept them all this time. Hide them under the bed for now.

little sister 阳台上还晒着被子和床单，要收进来吗？
yángtái shàng hái shài zhe bèizi hé chuángdān yào shōu jinlai ma · The duvet and sheets are still airing on the balcony. Shall I bring them in?

anna 要，太阳快下山了。顺便帮我给那盆花浇一点儿水。
yào tàiyáng kuài xià shān le shùnbiàn bāng wǒ gěi nà pén huā jiāo yìdiǎnr shuǐ · Yes, the sun's nearly down. And could you water that pot of flowers while you're at it?

little sister 哎呀，水洒了，洒在你的拖鞋上了！今天真热，我先用扇子扇一扇。
āiyā shuǐ sǎ le sǎ zài nǐ de tuōxié shàng le jīntiān zhēn rè wǒ xiān yòng shànzi shān yi shan · Oops, I've spilt the water all over your slippers! It's so hot today: let me fan myself first.

anna 不要紧。你把东西放得真整齐，比我强多了！
búyàojǐn nǐ bǎ dōngxi fàng de zhēn zhěngqí bǐ wǒ qiáng duō le · Never mind. You've put everything away so neatly. Much better than me!

little sister 我妈妈老是让我做家务，所以我早就习惯了。好了，你关闭所有的电器，我们就走吧。
wǒ māma lǎoshì ràng wǒ zuò jiāwù suǒyǐ wǒ zǎo jiù xíguàn le hǎo le nǐ guānbì suǒyǒu de diànqì wǒmen jiù zǒu ba · My mum always has me doing housework, so I'm used to it. Right: switch off all the appliances and let's go.

anna 好！我把台灯一关，我们就出发！
hǎo wǒ bǎ táidēng yì guān wǒmen jiù chūfā · OK! One flick of the desk lamp and we're off!

chapter 3 at the party

ms zhang 安娜，这个社区真热闹！老的老，小的小，大家都来了。
Ānnà zhège shèqū zhēn rènao lǎo de lǎo xiǎo de xiǎo dàjiā dōu lái le · Anna, this neighbourhood is so lively! Old and young, everyone's here.

anna 是啊。您看，王大爷一看到我们，就笑着迎了上来。
shì a nín kàn Wáng dàye yí kàn dào wǒmen jiù xiào zhe yíng le shanglai · It is. Look, Mr Wang came over to greet us the moment he saw us.

ms zhang 王大爷是这次晚会的主人，大家都很尊敬他。
Wáng dàye shì zhè cì wǎnhuì de zhǔrén dàjiā dōu hěn zūnjìng tā · Mr Wang is hosting the party, and everyone really respects him.

anna 张阿姨，这是孙教授，他在这儿住了快四十年了。
zhāng āyí zhè shì Sūnjiàoshòu tā zài zhèr zhù le kuài sìshí nián le · Auntie Zhang, this is Professor Sun. He's lived here for nearly forty years.

professor sun 您好！自从1988年搬来，这儿的变化真大。我们那一代人，从前住的都是老房子。
nín hǎo zìcóng nián bān lái zhèr de biànhuà zhēn dà wǒmen nà yídài rén cóngqián zhù de dōu shì lǎo fángzi · Hello! Ever since I moved here in 1988, the place has changed so much. People of my generation all used to live in old houses.

ms zhang 我当年也住过那样的房子。如今的公寓舒适多了。孙教授，您的子女也住在这儿吗？
wǒ dāngnián yě zhù guo nàyàng de fángzi rújīn de gōngyù shūshì duō le Sūnjiàoshòu nín de zǐnǚ yě zhù zài zhèr ma · I lived in a house like that back then too. Today's flats are much more comfortable. Professor Sun, do your children live here too?

professor sun 不，我的儿女都在外地工作。我太太去世以后，邻居们时常来看望我，陪伴我。
bù wǒ de érnǚ dōu zài wàidì gōngzuò wǒ tàitai qùshì yǐhòu línjūmen shícháng lái kànwàng wǒ péibàn wǒ · No, my sons and daughters all work in other cities. Since my wife passed away, the neighbours often come to visit and keep me company.

dr li 老婆，你看，那对年轻夫妇带着他们的小宝贝来了！
lǎopo nǐ kàn nà duì niánqīng fūfù dài zhe tāmen de xiǎo bǎobèi lái le · Look, love: that young couple has brought their little baby!

anna 孩子真可爱！我外婆常说，孩子是一家人的宝。我外婆和外公都在英国，我每年都回去看望他们。
háizi zhēn kěài wǒ wàipó cháng shuō háizi shì yì jiā rén de bǎo wǒ wàipó hé wàigōng dōu zài Yīngguó wǒ měi nián dōu huíqù kànwàng tāmen · What a sweet child! My grandma always says children are a family's treasure. My grandma and grandpa are both in the UK, and I go back to see them every year.

little sister 我姥姥是我最亲的人。她年纪大了，可是说下次也要来！我明年就成年了，以后也要帮社区做事。
wǒ lǎolao shì wǒ zuì qīn de rén tā niánjì dà le kěshì shuō xià cì yě yào lái wǒ míngnián jiù chéngnián le yǐhòu yě yào bāng shèqū zuò shì · My grandma is the person I'm closest to. She's getting on, but she says she'll come next time! I come of age next year, and then I want to help out in the neighbourhood too.

ms zhang 好啊。对老人来说，亲情和陪伴比什么都重要。
hǎo a duì lǎorén lái shuō qīnqíng hé péibàn bǐ shénme dōu zhòngyào · Good for you. For older people, family love and company matter more than anything.

anna 亲爱的邻居们，谢谢大家这么热情地迎接我！刚搬来的时候，这里的一切都很陌生，现在我已经有了很多熟人。
qīnài de línjūmen xièxie dàjiā zhème rèqíng de yíngjiē wǒ gāng bān lái de shíhou zhèlǐ de yíqiè dōu hěn mòshēng xiànzài wǒ yǐjīng yǒu le hěn duō shúrén · Dear neighbours, thank you for giving me such a warm welcome! When I first moved in, everything here was strange to me, and now I know lots of people.

professor sun 你看，唱的唱，跳的跳，大家都很开心。
nǐ kàn chàng de chàng tiào de tiào dàjiā dōu hěn kāixīn · Look: some singing, some dancing, and everyone happy.

chapter 4 the noise upstairs, solved

xiaoming 安娜，楼上那家人的问题解决了吗?
Ānnà lóu shàng nà jiā rén de wèntí jiějué le ma · Anna, did you sort things out with the family upstairs?

anna 解决了！我先向王大妈打听了一下，原来他们刚搬来，跟他人交往很少。
jiějué le wǒ xiān xiàng Wáng dàmā dǎting le yíxià yuánlái tāmen gāng bān lái gēn tārén jiāowǎng hěn shǎo · Yes! I asked Auntie Wang about them first: it turns out they've just moved in and hardly know anyone.

anna 王大妈帮我劝了劝，他们今天还向我道歉了。
Wáng dàmā bāng wǒ quàn le quan tāmen jīntiān hái xiàng wǒ dàoqiàn le · Auntie Wang had a word for me, and they even apologised to me today.

xiaoming 我还以为你会去跟他们大吵呢。
wǒ hái yǐwéi nǐ huì qù gēn tāmen dà chǎo ne · I thought you'd go and have a row with them.

anna 不会的。他们的妈妈说，她已经骂过孩子了。我反而有点儿同情她，就安慰了她几句。
bú huì de tāmen de māma shuō tā yǐjīng mà guo háizi le wǒ fǎnér yǒudiǎnr tóngqíng tā jiù ānwèi le tā jǐ jù · Of course not. Their mum said she'd already told the kids off. If anything I felt sorry for her, so I said a few kind words.

xiaoming 你一开始只会抱怨，现在居然去安慰别人了！有矛盾说出来，比一个人忍着好多了。
nǐ yì kāishǐ zhǐ huì bàoyuàn xiànzài jūrán qù ānwèi biérén le yǒu máodùn shuō chulai bǐ yí gè rén rěn zhe hǎo duō le · At first all you did was grumble, and now you're comforting other people! Talking about a problem is much better than putting up with it alone.

anna 对。他们的孩子还说，晚上九点以后不再闹了。
duì tāmen de háizi hái shuō wǎnshang jiǔ diǎn yǐhòu bú zài nào le · Yes. Their kids even said they won't make a racket after nine at night any more.

xiaoming 哈哈，说不定你们早晚会变成好朋友。
hā hā shuōbudìng nǐmen zǎowǎn huì biànchéng hǎo péngyou · Ha ha, you might even end up as good friends sooner or later.

anna 我希望是这样。自从搬到这儿，我越来越喜欢这个社区了。
wǒ xīwàng shì zhèyàng zìcóng bān dào zhèr wǒ yuè lái yuè xǐhuan zhège shèqū le · I hope so. Ever since I moved here, I've liked this neighbourhood more and more.

chapter 5 professor sun's little history talk

professor sun 今日我给大家简单讲讲我们社区的历史。
jīnrì wǒ gěi dàjiā jiǎndān jiǎng jiang wǒmen shèqū de lìshǐ · Today I'll tell you a little about the history of our neighbourhood.

professor sun 这一带的历史很久远。早期这里是农村，八十年代以来，这里逐步盖起了工厂和住房。
zhè yídài de lìshǐ hěn jiǔyuǎn zǎoqī zhèlǐ shì nóngcūn bāshí niándài yǐlái zhèlǐ zhúbù gài qǐ le gōngchǎng hé zhùfáng · This area goes back a long way. In the early days it was countryside; since the eighties, factories and housing have gone up step by step.

professor sun 此前大家住的都是老房子，此后才先后有了高楼。我曾在这儿拍了很多照片，至今都保存着。
cǐqián dàjiā zhù de dōu shì lǎo fángzi cǐhòu cái xiānhòu yǒu le gāo lóu wǒ céng zài zhèr pāi le hěn duō zhàopiàn zhìjīn dōu bǎocún zhe · Before that everyone lived in old houses; only afterwards did the tower blocks go up, one after another. I once took lots of photos here, and I still have them all.

little sister 近日我在网上看到一张老照片，最初这里还有一条小河呢！
jìnrì wǒ zài wǎngshang kàn dào yì zhāng lǎo zhàopiàn zuìchū zhèlǐ hái yǒu yì tiáo xiǎo hé ne · The other day I saw an old photo online: at first there was even a little river here!

professor sun 对，那条河后来逐渐没有了。近年来社区变化更大，近期还要开一个新公园。
duì nà tiáo hé hòulái zhújiàn méiyǒu le jìnnián lái shèqū biànhuà gèng dà jìnqī hái yào kāi yí gè xīn gōngyuán · Yes, the river slowly disappeared. In recent years the changes have been even bigger, and soon we're getting a new park.

anna 变化这么大，有什么是没变的吗？
biànhuà zhème dà yǒu shénme shì méi biàn de ma · With so many changes, is there anything that hasn't changed?

professor sun 有。邻居之间的感情依然没变，这是最长久的东西。
yǒu línjū zhījiān de gǎnqíng yīrán méi biàn zhè shì zuì chángjiǔ de dōngxi · Yes. The feeling between neighbours is still the same: that is what lasts longest.

xiaoming 说得太好了！此时花园里这么热闹，我真希望每年都有这样的晚会。
shuō de tài hǎo le cǐshí huāyuán lǐ zhème rènao wǒ zhēn xīwàng měi nián dōu yǒu zhèyàng de wǎnhuì · Well said! The garden is so lively right now: I wish we had a party like this every year.

A notice, a party, three generations and an old professor's stories: your new neighbourhood now speaks to you in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 13 at the market

Shop for fruit and vegetables at a market, ask for prices by the jin, and compare with 他大我三岁.

The morning market is where Chinese cooking starts: fresher, cheaper, and full of chat.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
蔬菜	shūcài	vegetables	多吃蔬菜对身体好。 Eating plenty of vegetables is good for you.
番茄	fānqié	tomato	番茄鸡蛋面{=noodles}又简单又好吃。 Tomato and egg noodles are simple and tasty.
黄瓜	huángguā	cucumber	天热的时候，我喜欢吃凉的黄瓜。 When it's hot, I like eating cold cucumber.
土豆	tǔdòu	potato	这家{=(measure word)}店的土豆做得特别好吃。 The potatoes at this place are especially good.
玉米	yùmǐ	maize, sweetcorn	路边有人在卖玉米，闻起来很香。 Someone is selling corn by the road, and it smells wonderful.
大米	dàmǐ	(uncooked) rice	家里的大米快吃完了，得{dei3}再买一些。 We're nearly out of rice. We need to buy some more.
粮食	liángshi	grain, food crops	我们应该节约粮食，不要浪费。 We should save food and not waste it.
橙子	chéngzi	orange (fruit)	这些橙子很甜，你尝一个。 These oranges are really sweet. Try one.
橘子	júzi	tangerine, mandarin	过年的时候，很多人家里都放着橘子。 At New Year, lots of homes have tangerines out.
梨	lí	pear	感冒的时候，妈妈常让我多吃梨。 When I had a cold, Mum often told me to eat lots of pears.
桃	táo	peach	这个季节的桃又大又甜。 Peaches are big and sweet at this time of year.
豆腐	dòufu	tofu	我不吃肉，但是很喜欢吃豆腐。 I don't eat meat, but I love tofu.
海鲜	hǎixiān	seafood	这个城市在海边，海鲜又新鲜又便宜。 This city is by the sea, so seafood is fresh and cheap.
称	chēng	to weigh	师傅，请帮我称{cheng1}一下这些苹果。 Excuse me, could you weigh these apples for me?
主食	zhǔshí	staple food	北方人的主食是面条和饺子，南方人多吃米饭。 In the north the staple foods are noodles and dumplings; in the south people eat more rice.
种类	zhǒnglèi	kind, type	这家{=(measure word)}超市水果的种类很多。 This supermarket has lots of kinds of fruit.
品种	pǐnzhǒng	variety, breed	这种苹果是新品种，特别甜。 This apple is a new variety, really sweet.

挑	tiāo	to choose, pick out	你帮我挑几个新鲜的番茄吧。 Could you pick out a few fresh tomatoes for me?
挑选	tiāoxuǎn	to choose, select	她在店里挑选了很久，才买了一件。 She spent ages choosing in the shop before she bought one.
买卖	mǎimai	business, trade	他在市场做水果买卖，已经十年了。 He's been in the fruit trade at the market for ten years.
售价	shòujià	selling price	这台电脑的售价是五千块。 This computer sells for 5,000 yuan.
便利店	biànlìdiàn	convenience store	楼下有一家{=(measure word)}便利店，二十四小时都开。 There's a convenience store downstairs that's open 24 hours.
节省	jiéshěng	to save, economise	自己做饭可以节省很多钱。 Cooking for yourself saves a lot of money.
省	shěng	to save, economise	坐地铁又快又省{sheng3-5}钱。 The underground is quick and saves money.
物价	wùjià	prices (of goods)	这几年大城市的物价越来越高。 Prices in big cities keep going up these days.

pattern a + adjective + b + amount: 他大我三岁

A | 大·小·早·重·贵 | B | amount

Chinese can compare without 比: A + a short adjective + B + the amount. 他大我三岁 means "he's three years older than me", just like 他比我大三岁. It works best with one-syllable adjectives (大, 小, 早, 晚, 重, 贵), and the amount must be there.

我早他一年来北京。 **wǒ zǎo tā yì nián lái Běijīng** I came to Beijing a year before him.

这个玉米重那个半斤。 **zhège yùmǐ zhòng nàge bàn jīn** This corn cob is 250 grams heavier than that one.

这家的海鲜贵那家二十块，可是更新鲜。 **zhè jiā de hǎixiān guì nà jiā èrshí kuài kěshì gèng xīnxiān**
Seafood at this stall costs twenty yuan more than that one, but it's fresher.

dialogue the morning market

ms zhang 安娜，早上的市场最热闹，东西也最新鲜。
Ānnà zǎoshang de shìchǎng zuì rènao dōngxi yě zuì xīnxiān · Anna, the market is at its liveliest in the morning, and everything is freshest.

anna 人已经这么多了！我们晚别人一步，好东西不会被买完吧?
rén yǐjīng zhème duō le wǒmen wǎn biérén yí bù hǎo dōngxi bú huì bèi mǎi wán ba · It's packed already! We're a step behind everyone: the good stuff won't all be gone, will it?

anna 是啊，蔬菜的种类比超市多多了！这些番茄和黄瓜看起来都很新鲜。
shì a shūcài de zhǒnglèi bǐ chāoshì duō duō le zhèxiē fānqié hé huángguā kàn qǐlai dōu hěn xīnxiān · It is! There are far more kinds of vegetables than at the supermarket. These tomatoes and cucumbers look so fresh.

ms zhang 我们挑几个番茄，晚上做番茄鸡蛋面。土豆家里还有。
wǒmen tiāo jǐ gè fānqié wǎnshang zuò fānqié jīdàn miàn tǔdòu jiā lǐ hái yǒu · Let's pick a few tomatoes for tomato and egg noodles tonight. We've still got potatoes at home.

anna 阿姨，您通常在哪儿买菜?
āyí nín tōngcháng zài nǎr mǎi cài · Auntie, where do you usually buy your vegetables?

ms zhang 通常来这儿。这家做了二十年买卖了，从来不骗人。师傅，请帮我称一下这些桃。
tōngcháng lái zhèr zhè jiā zuò le èrshí nián mǎimai le cónglái bú piàn rén shīfu qǐng bāng wǒ chēng yíxià zhèxiē táo · Usually here. This stall has been in business for twenty years and never cheats anyone. Excuse me, could you weigh these peaches for me?

anna 这些橘子和橙子哪个甜?
zhèxiē júzi hé chéngzi nǎge tián · Which are sweeter, the tangerines or the oranges?

ms zhang 橙子甜一些，不过橙子一斤贵橘子两块。
chéngzi tián yìxiē búguò chéngzi yì jīn guì júzi liǎng kuài · The oranges are a bit sweeter, but they're two yuan a jin more than the tangerines.

anna 那我们买橘子吧，省一点儿钱。听说最近物价又高了。
nà wǒmen mǎi júzi ba shěng yìdiǎnr qián tīngshuō zuìjìn wùjià yòu gāo le · Then let's get tangerines and save a bit. I hear prices have gone up again.

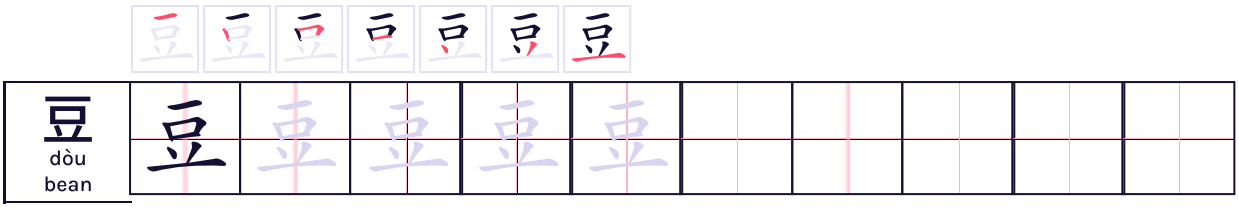
ms zhang 对，所以我很少去便利店买菜，那里的东西比较贵。
duì suǒyǐ wǒ hěn shǎo qù biànlìdiàn mǎi cài nàlǐ de dōngxi bǐjiào guì · Yes, so I hardly ever buy vegetables at convenience stores. Things there are pricier.

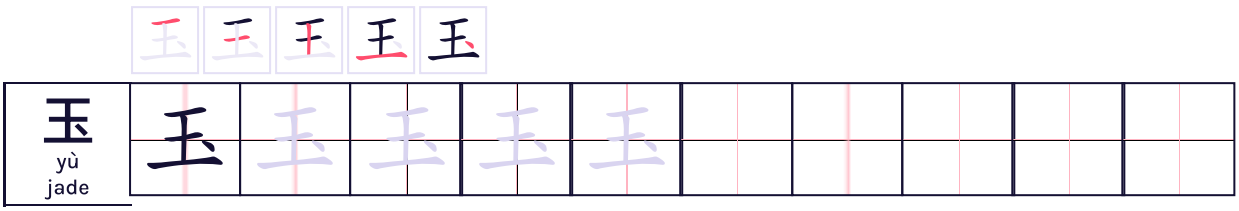
anna 我明白了。下次我也来这儿挑选。
wǒ míngbai le xià cì wǒ yě lái zhèr tiāoxuǎn · I see. Next time I'll come and choose here too.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

陆
lù
land (here: continuous)

依
yī
to depend on; as before





good to know · Markets sell by the 斤, half a kilo. 三块钱一斤 means 3 yuan per 500 grams. 师傅 is a friendly, respectful way to address a stallholder, a driver or a repair person.

You can now shop a Chinese market like a local: pick, weigh, compare and save.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 14 cooking at home

Cook and talk about food at home: chop, stir-fry, boil, taste, and say how strongly you feel it with 辣得一直喝水.

Being invited to cook in a Chinese kitchen is a real honour, and food talk is the easiest way into any conversation.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
炒	chǎo	to stir-fry	先把鸡蛋炒一下，再放番茄。 Stir-fry the eggs first, then add the tomatoes.
煮	zhǔ	to boil, cook in water	饺子煮好了，快来吃吧！ The dumplings are ready. Come and eat!
炸	zhá	to deep-fry	炸的东西太油了，别吃太多。 Fried food is very greasy. Don't eat too much.
烧	shāo	to cook, braise; to burn	我妈妈烧的鱼特别好吃。 The fish my mum cooks is especially good.
切	qiē	to cut, slice	你把黄瓜切一下，我来炒菜。 Slice the cucumber and I'll do the stir-fry.
加热	jiārè	to heat up	饭有点儿凉了，我帮你加热一下。 The food's gone a bit cold. Let me heat it up for you.
锅	guō	pot, pan, wok	锅里的水开了，可以放面条了。 The water in the pot is boiling. You can put the noodles in.
叉子	chāzi	fork	我还不太会用筷子，能给我一把{=(measure word: things with a handle)}叉子吗? I'm not great with chopsticks yet. Could I have a fork?
吸管	xīguǎn	(drinking) straw	为了保护环境，很多店不再给吸管了。 To protect the environment, lots of shops no longer give out straws.
开水	kāishuǐ	boiled water, boiling water	很多中国人喜欢喝热开水，不喝冰水。 Many Chinese people like drinking hot boiled water rather than ice water.
淡	dàn	bland, light; weak (tea)	这个汤有点儿淡，再放一点儿盐吧。 This soup is a bit bland. Add a little more salt.
浓	nóng	strong, thick (tea, coffee, smell)	晚上别喝太浓的茶，会睡不着{zhao2}。 Don't drink strong tea in the evening, or you won't sleep.
臭	chòu	smelly, stinking	臭豆腐闻起来很臭，吃起来很香。 Stinky tofu smells awful but tastes delicious.
口味	kǒuwèi	taste, flavour; personal taste	这家{=(measure word)}店的菜很适合我的口味。 The food here is just to my taste.
美味	měiwèi	delicious; delicious food	这道菜又简单又美味。 This dish is simple and delicious.

营养	yíngyǎng	nutrition	牛奶和鸡蛋都很有营养。 Milk and eggs are both very nutritious.
热量	rèliàng	calories; heat	这种点心很好吃，可是热量太高了。 These snacks are tasty, but they're far too high in calories.
饮食	yǐnshí	food and drink, diet	医生说他得{dei3}注意饮食，少吃油的。 The doctor says he must watch his diet and eat less greasy food.
食用	shíyòng	to eat, be edible (formal)	这种水果洗干净以后就可以食用。 This fruit can be eaten once it's been washed.
豆浆	dòujiāng	soy milk	早上我常喝一杯热豆浆。 In the morning I often have a cup of hot soy milk.
油条	yóutiáo	youtiao (fried dough stick)	豆浆和油条是很多人的早饭。 Soy milk and fried dough sticks are breakfast for lots of people.
饼	bǐng	flatbread, pancake, cake	街角{=corner}那家{=(measure word)}店的饼刚做好，还热着呢。 The flatbreads at the shop on the corner are fresh out of the pan, still hot.
点心	diǎnxin	snack, pastry; dim sum	下午三点，我们吃点心喝茶吧。 Let's have some snacks and tea at three this afternoon.
咬	yǎo	to bite	我咬了一口饼，太好吃了！ I took a bite of the flatbread. So good!
酸甜苦辣	suāntiánkǔlà	sour, sweet, bitter, spicy; ups and downs	生活就像做菜，酸甜苦辣都有。 Life is like cooking: there's sour, sweet, bitter and spicy.

pattern verb / adjective + 得 + what happens: so ... that ...

who | 辣 · 饿 · 高兴 · 笑 | 得 | verb phrase (the result)

After 得 you can put a whole action that shows how strong a feeling or state is: 辣得一直喝水, so spicy you keep drinking water; 高兴得跳了起来, so happy you jump up. It's more vivid than 很辣 or 非常高兴.

他听到这个消息，高兴得跳了起来。 **tā tīng dào zhège xiāoxi gāoxìng de tiào le qǐlai** When he heard the news, he jumped for joy.

孩子们笑得肚子都疼了。 **háizimen xiào de dùzi dōu téng le** The children laughed so hard their tummies hurt.

我饿得没等饭加热，就吃了起来。 **wǒ è de méi děng fàn jiārè jiù chī le qǐlai** I was so hungry I started eating before the food was even heated up.

dialogue in ms zhang's kitchen

ms zhang 安娜，你帮我切一下黄瓜吧，我来炒菜。
Ānnà nǐ bāng wǒ qiē yíxià huángguā ba wǒ lái chǎo cài · Anna, could you slice the cucumber for me? I'll do the stir-fry.

anna 好。阿姨，番茄鸡蛋面怎么做?
hǎo āyí fānqié jīdàn miàn zěnme zuò · Sure. Auntie, how do you make tomato and egg noodles?

ms zhang 先把番茄切好，鸡蛋在锅里炒一下，再加水煮面。很简单！
xiān bǎ fānqié qiē hǎo jīdàn zài guō lǐ chǎo yíxià zài jiā shuǐ zhǔ miàn hěn jiǎndān · Chop the tomatoes, stir-fry the eggs in the wok, then add water and boil the noodles. Easy!

anna 真香！我闻得都饿了。
zhēn xiāng wǒ wén de dōu è le · It smells wonderful! Just the smell is making me hungry.

dr li 这个汤是不是有点儿淡?
zhège tāng shì bu shì yǒudiǎnr dàn · Isn't this soup a bit bland?

ms zhang 你是医生，老是让我少放盐，现在又说淡了！
nǐ shì yīshēng lǎoshì ràng wǒ shǎo fàng yán xiànzài yòu shuō dàn le · You're the doctor who's always telling me to use less salt, and now you say it's bland!

dr li 哈哈，好吧。注意饮食对身体好，炸的东西也没什么营养。
hā hā hǎo ba zhùyì yǐnshí duì shēntǐ hǎo zhá de dōngxi yě méi shénme yíngyǎng · Ha ha, fair enough. Watching what you eat is good for you, and fried food has hardly any nutrition.

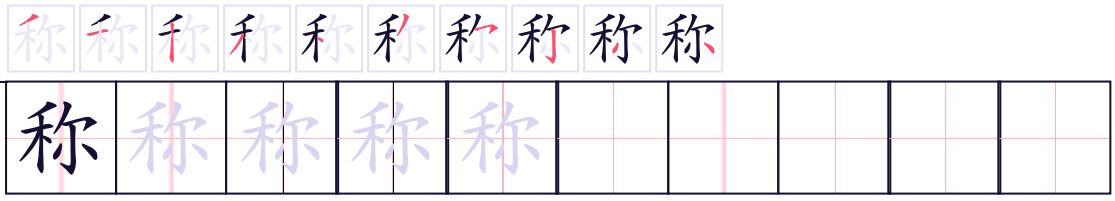
anna 我在英国常吃炸的东西。自从来了中国，酸甜苦辣都爱吃了。
wǒ zài Yīngguó cháng chī zhá de dōngxi zìcóng lái le Zhōngguó suān tián kǔ là dōu ài chī le · In the UK I ate a lot of fried food. Since coming to China, I love every flavour: sour, sweet, bitter and spicy.

ms zhang 那你尝尝这个鱼，是我烧的。饮料我也冰好了。
nà nǐ cháng chang zhège yú shì wǒ shāo de yǐnliào wǒ yě bīng hǎo le · Then try this fish. I cooked it myself. And I've chilled the drinks.

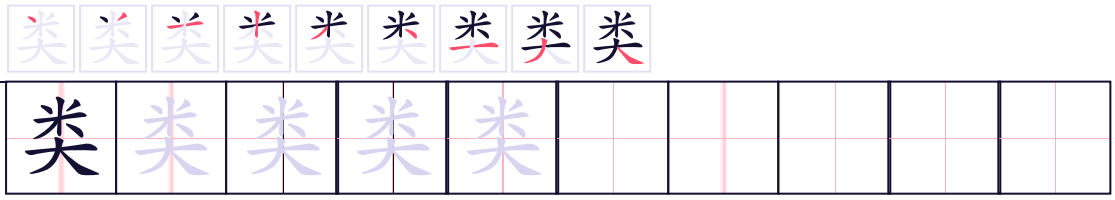
anna 太美味了，很适合我的口味！我吃得都停不下来了。
tài měiwèi le hěn shìhé wǒ de kǒuwèi wǒ chī de dōu tíng bu xialai le · Delicious, just my kind of taste! I can't stop eating.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

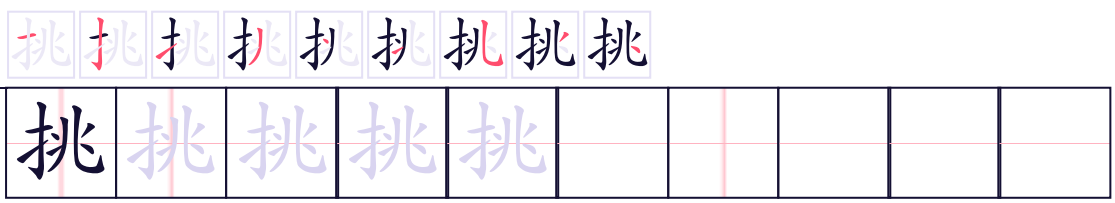
称
chēng
to weigh



类
lèi
kind, type; class



挑
tiāo
to choose, pick out





叉										
chā fork; to stab with a fork	叉	叉	叉	叉	叉					

good to know · 冰 (ice) is also a verb at this level: 冰一下, to chill something. 饮料冰好了: the drinks are chilled. Many Chinese people drink hot or warm water, 开水, even in summer, and see ice-cold drinks as bad for the stomach.

Chop, stir-fry, taste and praise the cook: you can now join a Chinese family in the kitchen.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 15 eating out

Eat out: get a recommendation, read the reviews, use a discount, take away the rest, and say "it'd be a waste not to".

Eating out is how friends meet in China. Hot pot, night markets and set lunches are all part of the fun.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
餐饮	cānyǐn	catering, food and drink (business)	我朋友在一家{=(measure word)}餐饮公司工作。 My friend works for a catering company.
西餐	xīcān	Western food	你想吃中餐还是西餐? Do you fancy Chinese or Western food?
火锅	huǒguō	hot pot	天冷了，我们去吃火锅吧! It's got cold. Let's go for hot pot!
烧烤	shāokǎo	barbecue (skewers)	夏天的晚上，很多人在路边吃烧烤。 On summer evenings, lots of people eat barbecue at roadside stalls.
盒饭	héfàn	boxed meal, lunch box	中午太忙了，我们就在办公室吃盒饭。 We were so busy at lunchtime that we ate boxed lunches in the office.
夜市	yèshì	night market	周末的夜市特别热闹。 The night market is really lively at the weekend.
甜品	tiánpǐn	dessert, sweets	吃完饭，我们再点{dian3-2}一个甜品吧。 After the meal, let's order a dessert.
雪糕	xuěgāo	ice lolly, ice cream bar	天这么热，来一个雪糕吧! It's so hot. Have an ice lolly!
打包	dǎbāo	to take away; to pack up	菜点{dian3-2}多了，剩下的我们打包带走吧。 We ordered too much. Let's take the rest away.
特色	tèsè	special feature, character	这家{=(measure word)}店的特色是北京菜。 This restaurant specialises in Beijing food.
特产	tèchǎn	local speciality (product)	我给你带了一些家乡的特产。 I've brought you some specialities from my home town.
推荐	tuījiàn	to recommend	服务员，你们有什么菜可以推荐吗? Excuse me, what would you recommend?
好评	hǎopíng	good review, praise	这家{=(measure word)}饭店在网上的好评很多。 This restaurant has lots of good reviews online.
酒吧	jiǔbā	bar	这条街上有饭店、咖啡店和酒吧。 This street has restaurants, cafés and bars.
醉	zuì	drunk; to get drunk	喝醉了就不能开车。 If you're drunk, you can't drive.
光临	guānglín	to visit (polite: your presence)	欢迎光临，请问几位? Welcome! How many of you are there?

贵姓	guìxìng	your (honourable) surname	您贵姓？我姓林。 May I ask your surname? Mine is Lin.
尝试	chángshì	to try, attempt	来中国以后，我尝试了很多新的菜。 Since coming to China, I've tried lots of new dishes.
满足	mǎnzú	to satisfy, meet (needs)	这家{=(measure word)}店的菜能满足不同客人的口味。 This restaurant's food caters to all kinds of tastes.
分享	fēnxiǎng	to share	她把旅行的照片分享给了朋友们。 She shared her travel photos with her friends.
难得	nándé	rare, hard to come by	这是一个难得的机会，你别错过。 This is a rare chance. Don't miss it.
独特	dútè	unique, distinctive	这家{=(measure word)}店的火锅味道很独特。 The hot pot here has a really distinctive flavour.
优惠	yōuhuì	discounted; preferential	周一到周五中午，这里的午饭很优惠。 Lunch here is good value from Monday to Friday.
折扣	zhékòu	discount	这家{=(measure word)}店今天有折扣，衣服便宜了很多。 This shop has a discount on today, and the clothes are much cheaper.
消费	xiāofèi	to consume, spend; spending	年轻人的消费习惯和老人很不一样。 Young people's spending habits are very different from older people's.

pattern 不x白不x: it'd be a waste not to

不 verb 白不 same verb

不X白不X says: if you don't do it, you simply lose out, so do it! 不吃白不吃: it's free or cheap, so it'd be a waste not to eat. The same short verb goes in both places. It's casual and a little cheeky.

免费的点心，不吃白不吃！ **miǎnfèi de diǎnxin bù chī bái bù chī** Free snacks? It'd be rude not to!

今天门票免费，不去白不去。 **jīntiān ménpiào miǎnfèi bú qù bái bú qù** Entry is free today. It'd be a waste not to go.

夏天的雪糕买一送一，不买白不买！ **xiàtiān de xuěgāo mǎi yī sòng yī bù mǎi bái bù mǎi** Summer ice lollies are buy one get one free. It'd be silly not to buy some!

dialogue hot pot on camera

zhao yang 欢迎大家来到我的美食节目！今天我们来吃火锅。
huānyíng dàjiā lái dào wǒ de měishí jiémù jīntiān wǒmen lái chī huǒguō · Welcome to my food show! Today we're having hot pot.

xiaoming 赵阳，你又在拍视频啊?
ZhàoYáng nǐ yòu zài pāi shìpín a · Zhao Yang, are you filming again?

zhao yang 当然。这家店在网上好评很多，我想推荐给大家。
dāngrán zhè jiā diàn zài wǎngshang hǎopíng hěn duō wǒ xiǎng tuījiàn gěi dàjiā · Of course. This place has loads of good reviews online, and I want to recommend it to everyone.

anna 我看了，今天晚上消费两百块以上，所有的菜都有折扣。
wǒ kàn le jīntiān wǎnshang xiāofèi liǎngbǎi kuài yǐshàng suǒyǒu de cài dōu yǒu zhékòu · I checked: tonight, if you spend over 200 yuan, every dish is discounted.

xiaoming 那不吃白不吃！我们多点几个菜。
nà bù chī bái bù chī wǒmen duō diǎn jǐ gè cài · Then it'd be a crime not to! Let's order a few more dishes.

zhao yang 别点太多，吃不完就浪费了。小明，你大我两岁，怎么还像个孩子?
bié diǎn tài duō chī bu wán jiù làngfèi le Xiǎomíng nǐ dà wǒ liǎng suì zěnme hái xiàng gè háizi · Don't order too much. We'll waste it. Xiaoming, you're two years older than me, so why do you act like a kid?

anna 吃不完可以打包。这家的特色是什么?
chī bu wán kěyǐ dǎbāo zhè jiā de tèsè shì shénme · We can take away what we don't finish. What's the speciality here?

zhao yang 他们的汤很独特，别的地方很难吃到。
tāmen de tāng hěn dútè biéde dìfang hěn nán chī dào · Their broth is really distinctive. You won't find it anywhere else.

xiaoming 吃完我们再去夜市吃甜品吧!
chī wán wǒmen zài qù yèshì chī tiánpǐn ba · After this, let's go to the night market for dessert!

anna 好啊！难得大家都有空，今天我们吃个够!
hǎo a nándé dàjiā dōu yǒu kòng jīntiān wǒmen chī gè gòu · Yes! It's rare that we're all free. Tonight we eat our fill!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

臭
chòu
smelly, stinking

咬
yǎo
to bite

独
dú
alone, only

good to know · Staff greet you with 欢迎光临 and may ask 您贵姓？ for a booking. Answer 我姓..., never 我贵姓. Asking to 打包 the leftovers is normal and polite in China. Wasting food is what's frowned upon.

Reviews, deals, specialities and doggy bags: you can now eat out in China like a regular.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 16 shopping for clothes

Shop for clothes: brands, quality, colours, trying on, returns and refunds; and use 把 with two objects.

Shopping centres, markets and second-hand apps are a big part of city life in China, and returns are easy if you know the words.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
品牌	pǐnpái	brand	这个品牌的衣服质量很好。 This brand's clothes are good quality.
名牌	míngpái	famous brand, designer label	她不喜欢买名牌，觉得太贵了。 She doesn't like buying designer labels. She thinks they're too expensive.
品质	pǐnzhì	quality	我们店的东西不便宜，但是品质有保证。 Our things aren't cheap, but the quality is guaranteed.
品	pǐn	article, product (suffix); to taste	孙教授喜欢慢慢地品茶。 Professor Sun likes to savour his tea slowly.
高档	gāodàng	high-end, top quality	这家{=(measure word)}商店卖的都是高档服装。 This shop only sells high-end clothes.
二手	èrshǒu	second-hand	我在网上买了一辆二手自行车。 I bought a second-hand bike online.
服装	fúzhuāng	clothing, garments	商场三楼是女士服装。 Women's clothing is on the second floor of the shopping centre.
牛仔裤	niúzǎikù	jeans	他平时最喜欢穿牛仔裤。 He usually loves wearing jeans.
西装	xīzhuāng	suit (Western-style)	明天去见那家{=(measure word)}公司，你最好穿西装。 You'd better wear a suit to see that company tomorrow.
围巾	wéijīn	scarf	外面很冷，戴上围巾吧。 It's cold out. Put a scarf on.
领带	lǐngdài	tie, necktie	这条领带很好看，跟你的西装一起穿正好。 This tie looks great. It goes perfectly with your suit.
手套	shǒutào	gloves	北京的冬天很冷，出门要戴手套。 Beijing winters are cold. Wear gloves when you go out.
口袋	kǒudai	pocket	我的手机在口袋里，你帮我拿一下。 My phone is in my pocket. Could you get it for me?
样式	yàngshì	style, design	这件衣服的样式有点儿老。 This top is a bit old-fashioned in style.
彩色	cǎisè	colour, multicoloured	我小时候家里的电视还不是彩色的。 When I was little, our TV wasn't even in colour.

紫	zǐ	purple	这些花有蓝的，也有紫的。 Some of these flowers are blue, and some are purple.
灰色	huīsè	grey	我想买一件灰色的大衣。 I want to buy a grey coat.
灰	huī	dust, ash; grey	书架上都是灰，好久没打扫了。 The bookshelf is covered in dust. It hasn't been cleaned for ages.
试用	shìyòng	to try out (a product)	这种新的牙膏可以免费试用。 You can try this new toothpaste for free.
退	tuì	to return (goods); to move back	这双鞋太小了，我想退了。 These shoes are too small. I want to return them.
退还	tuìhuán	to give back, refund	离开的时候，押金会全部退还给您。 When you leave, your deposit will be returned in full.
出售	chūshòu	to sell, offer for sale (formal)	这家{=(measure word)}店出售各种二手书。 This shop sells all kinds of second-hand books.
包装	bāozhuāng	packaging; to package	这个礼物的包装太漂亮了，我都不想打开。 The wrapping on this present is so pretty I don't want to open it.
保质期	bǎozhìqī	shelf life, best-before period	这种牛奶的保质期只有七天。 This milk only keeps for seven days.
过期	guòqī	to expire, be past its date	这瓶牛奶已经过期了，别喝了。 This milk is past its date. Don't drink it.

pattern 把 + thing + verb + second object

who | 把 + thing | verb + 了 | second object (part, amount, new version)

Sometimes 把 has two objects: the thing you handle, and what you do to it: 我把工资存了一半, I banked half my pay; 她把礼物包了一层纸, she wrapped the present in a layer of paper. The second object is often a part, an amount or a new version of the first.

我把工资存了一半。 **wǒ bǎ gōngzī cún le yíbàn** I put half my pay into savings.

她把礼物包了一层漂亮的纸。 **tā bǎ lǐwù bāo le yì céng piàoliang de zhǐ** She wrapped the present in pretty paper.

他把蛋糕吃了一半，剩下的留给妹妹。 **tā bǎ dàngāo chī le yíbàn shèng xià de liú gěi mèimei** He ate half the cake and saved the rest for his sister.

dialogue something smart

manager lin 安娜，下周的会议很重要，你得穿得正式一点儿。
Ānnà xià zhōu de huìyì hěn zhòngyào nǐ děi chuān de zhèngshì yìdiǎnr · Anna, next week's meeting is important. You need to dress a bit more formally.

anna 我知道，所以想买一件西装。
wǒ zhīdào suǒyǐ xiǎng mǎi yí jiàn xīzhuāng · I know. That's why I want to buy a suit jacket.

manager lin 这家店的服装样式不老，品质也好。你看这件灰色的怎么样？
zhè jiā diàn de fúzhuāng yàngshì bù lǎo pǐnzhì yě hǎo nǐ kàn zhè jiàn huīsè de zěnmeyàng · This shop's clothes aren't old-fashioned, and the quality is good. How about this grey one?

anna 不错，可是太贵了！我通常不买名牌，有时候还买二手的。
búcuò kěshì tài guì le wǒ tōngcháng bù mǎi míngpái yǒu shíhou hái mǎi èrshǒu de · Nice, but it's too expensive! I don't usually buy designer labels. Sometimes I even buy second-hand.

manager lin 哈哈，我老是跟我老公说，好衣服可以穿很多年。
hā hā wǒ lǎoshì gēn wǒ lǎogōng shuō hǎo yīfu kěyǐ chuān hěn duō nián · Ha ha, I'm always telling my husband: good clothes last for years.

anna 那我试试。哎，这个口袋上都是灰。
nà wǒ shì shi āi zhège kǒudai shàng dōu shì huī · Then I'll try it on. Oh, this pocket is all dusty.

manager lin 那就换一件。要是回家发现不合适，七天以内还可以退。
nà jiù huàn yí jiàn yàoshi huí jiā fāxiàn bù héshì qī tiān yǐnèi hái kěyǐ tuì · Then get another one. And if you find it doesn't suit you at home, you can return it within seven days.

anna 好，我把这件换一件新的。
hǎo wǒ bǎ zhè jiàn huàn yí jiàn xīn de · OK, I'll swap this one for a new one.

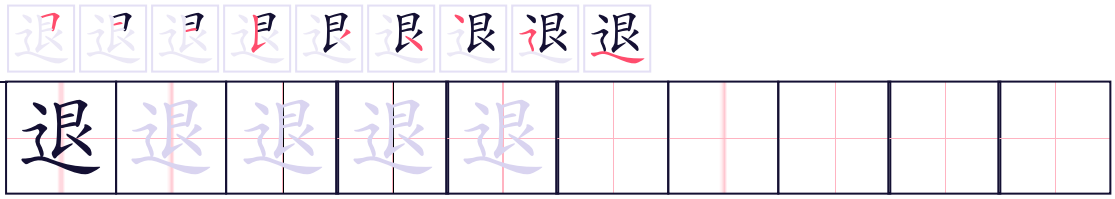
anna 太好了。钱会退还到我的卡上吗？
tài hǎo le qián huì tuìhuán dào wǒ de kǎ shàng ma · Great. Will the money go back on my card?

manager lin 会的。对了，你看那条紫的领带，包装也很漂亮，送给小明做生日礼物吧。
huì de duì le nǐ kàn nà tiáo zǐ de lǐngdài bāozhuāng yě hěn piàoliang sòng gěi Xiǎomíng zuò shēngrì lǐwù ba · Yes. Oh, look at that purple tie, beautifully wrapped too. Get it for Xiaoming's birthday.

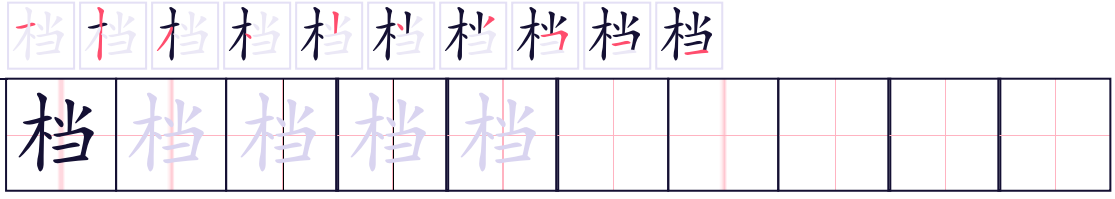
anna 好主意！不过他喜欢品茶，我再送他一些好茶。
hǎo zhǔyi búguò tā xǐhuan pǐn chá wǒ zài sòng tā yìxiē hǎo chá · Good idea! He loves a good cup of tea too, so I'll add some nice tea.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

退
tuì
to return (goods); to move back



档
dàng
grade, level



good to know · Online shops in China must let you 退 (return) within 7 days, and many shops let you 退 or 换 (exchange) too if you keep the receipt and tags. 品 alone means "to taste, savour": 品茶 is to sip and enjoy tea slowly, like a connoisseur.

Brands, fittings, returns and refunds: you can now shop for clothes in Chinese with confidence.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 17 a bunch, a pair, a batch

Count almost anything the Chinese way: a bunch of flowers, a pair of gloves, a batch of goods, a glance.

Measure words are where Chinese sounds natural or not. The right one makes you sound fluent; the wrong one makes people smile.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
册	cè	volume; measure word for books	这套书一共有十册。 This set of books has ten volumes.
朵	duǒ	measure word for flowers, clouds	她头上戴着一朵小花。 She's wearing a little flower in her hair.
届	jiè	measure word for events, graduating years	这是我们学校第十届运动会。 This is our school's tenth sports day.
颗	kē	measure word for small round things	今天晚上一颗星星也看不见。 You can't see a single star tonight.
匹	pǐ	measure word for horses	草地上有两匹白{=white}马。 There are two white horses in the meadow.
行	háng	row, line; line of business	你看，信上只{zhi3}写了一行{hang2}字。 Look, there's just one line written in the letter.
架	jià	frame, rack; measure word for planes, pianos	一架飞机从我们头上飞过。 A plane flew over our heads.
群	qún	group, crowd, flock	公园里有一群孩子在玩。 There's a group of children playing in the park.
支	zhī	measure word for pens, songs, teams	我借你一支笔，你写一下名字。 I'll lend you a pen. Write your name here.
根	gēn	root; measure word for long thin things	他一天只{zhi3}吃一根香蕉和一个面包。 All he eats in a day is a banana and a bread roll.
批	pī	a batch, a lot (measure word)	超市今天来了一批{pi1}新鲜水果。 A batch of fresh fruit came into the supermarket today.
束	shù	a bunch (of flowers); a beam (of light)	我买了一束花送给妈妈。 I bought a bunch of flowers for my mum.
副	fù	a pair, a set (glasses, gloves, cards)	我的眼镜坏了，得{dei3}再买一副新的。 My glasses are broken. I need a new pair.
集	jí	episode; collection; market	这个电视剧太好看了，我一晚上看了五集。 This TV series is so good I watched five episodes in one night.
套	tào	a set, a suite; cover; to put on	他们在城里买了一套房子。 They've bought a flat in town.

所	suǒ	measure word for schools, hospitals	这是一所{suo3-5b}有一百年历史的大学。 This is a university with a hundred years of history.
阵	zhèn	a spell, a burst (of rain, wind)	刚才下了一阵大雨，现在停了。 There was a burst of heavy rain just now, but it's stopped.
眼	yǎn	measure word for looks, glances	他看了我一眼，什么也没说。 He glanced at me without a word.
吨	dūn	ton, tonne	这辆车可以装五吨东西。 This lorry can carry five tonnes.
厘米	límǐ	centimetre	我弟弟一年长{zhang3}高了十厘米。 My little brother grew ten centimetres in a year.
伙	huǒ	a group, a gang (casual)	门口来了一伙年轻人，说是来找你的。 A bunch of young people turned up at the door, saying they're looking for you.
团	tuán	group, tour group; a ball, a lump	去年我们跟着旅游团去了很多城市。 Last year we visited lots of cities with a tour group.
重量	zhòngliàng	weight	坐飞机的时候，行李的重量不能超过二十公斤。 When you fly, your luggage can't weigh more than 20 kilos.
长度	chángdù	length	这条裤子的长度刚好。 These trousers are just the right length.
宽度	kuāndù	width	这张桌子的宽度是八十厘米。 This table is eighty centimetres wide.

pattern more measure words: 束, 颗, 根, 副, 群, 批... and 看一眼

number | 束 · 颗 · 根 · 副 · 群 · 批 | thing

Each measure word fits a kind of thing: 一束花 a bunch of flowers, 一颗星 a star (small and round), 一根香蕉 a banana (long and thin), 一副眼镜 a pair of glasses, 一群人 a crowd, 一批货 a batch. 眼 counts looks: 看了一眼, took a quick look.

晚上能看到几颗星星，还有一架飞机飞过。 **wǎnshang néng kàn dào jǐ kē xīngxing hái yǒu yí jià fēijī fēi guò** At night you can see a few stars, and a plane flying past.

草地上有两匹马，还有几朵小花。 **cǎodì shàng yǒu liǎng pǐ mǎ hái yǒu jǐ duǒ xiǎo huā** There are two horses on the grass, and a few little flowers.

这是我们学校第十届运动会。 **zhè shì wǒmen xuéxiào dì shí jiè yùndònghuì** This is our school's tenth sports day.

你借我一支笔，我写一行字。 **nǐ jiè wǒ yì zhī bǐ wǒ xiě yì háng zì** Lend me a pen and I'll write a line.

门口挂着一面大镜子。 **ménkǒu guà zhe yí miàn dà jìngzi** There's a big mirror hanging by the door.

我买了两管牙膏，买一送一。 **wǒ mǎi le liǎng guǎn yágāo mǎi yī sòng yī** I bought two tubes of toothpaste: buy one, get one free.

dialogue getting ready for the party

little sister 安娜，我哥哥的生日晚会准备得怎么样了？
Ānnà wǒ gēge de shēngrì wǎnhuì zhǔnbèi de zěnmeyàng le · Anna, how are the plans for my brother's birthday party going?

anna 差不多了。我买了一束花，还有一套他最喜欢的书，一共三册。
chàbuduō le wǒ mǎi le yí shù huā hái yǒu yí tào tā zuì xǐhuan de shū yígòng sān cè · Nearly done. I've bought a bunch of flowers and a set of his favourite books, three volumes.

little sister 他一定会很高兴！我买了一副手套，冬天就要到了。
tā yídìng huì hěn gāoxìng wǒ mǎi le yí fù shǒutào dōngtiān jiù yào dào le · He'll love that! I got him a pair of gloves. Winter's nearly here.

anna 晚会上会来一群朋友，还有他的几个大学同学。
wǎnhuì shàng huì lái yì qún péngyou hái yǒu tā de jǐ gè dàxué tóngxué · A whole crowd of friends is coming, plus a few of his university classmates.

little sister 我们订的蛋糕有多大？
wǒmen dìng de dàngāo yǒu duō dà · How big is the cake we ordered?

anna 长度和宽度都是三十厘米，够十几个人吃。
chángdù hé kuāndù dōu shì sānshí límǐ gòu shí jǐ gè rén chī · Thirty centimetres long and thirty wide: enough for a dozen or so people.

little sister 太好了！自从我哥哥工作以来，他好久没好好过生日了。
tài hǎo le zìcóng wǒ gēge gōngzuò yǐlái tā hǎojiǔ méi hǎohǎo guò shēngrì le · Great! Ever since my brother started working, he hasn't had a proper birthday.

anna 是啊，所以这次一定要热闹一点儿。我还请了一伙老同学。
shì a suǒyǐ zhè cì yídìng yào rènao yìdiǎnr wǒ hái qǐng le yì huǒ lǎo tóngxué · I know, so this time it has to be a real party. I've invited a bunch of his old schoolmates too.

little sister 晚会结束得晚的话，我们可以坐最后一班地铁回家。
wǎnhuì jiéshù de wǎn dehuà wǒmen kěyǐ zuò zuìhòu yì bān dìtiě huí jiā · If the party ends late, we can take the last train home.

anna 没问题。我刚才看了一眼时间，我们得快一点儿去拿蛋糕了！
méi wèntí wǒ gāngcái kàn le yì yǎn shíjiān wǒmen děi kuài yìdiǎnr qù ná dàngāo le · Sure. I just looked at the time: we need to hurry and pick up the cake!

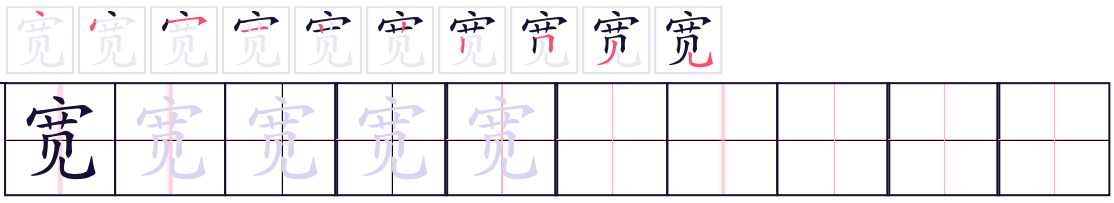
write it trace the grey, then write your own

匹
pǐ
measure word for horses

吨
dūn
ton, tonne



团
tuán
group, tour group; a ball, a lump



宽
kuān
wide, broad

good to know · Old words, new uses: 一班车 one (scheduled) bus or train, 一笔钱 a sum of money, 一面镜子 a mirror, 一管牙膏 a tube of toothpaste, 一等奖 first prize. 条 can also be a noun: a note or slip of paper, 纸条. 留个条 means “leave a note”.

Bunches, pairs, batches and glances: your Chinese now counts the world like a native.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 18 mission: the night market

Spend an evening at a night market in Chinese: compare prices, taste the snacks, bargain for a scarf and count what you bought.

Night markets are China at its liveliest: food, shopping and friends, all in one noisy, happy street.

chapter 1 a market by night

zhao yang 大家好，今天我们来逛北京的夜市！
dàjiā hǎo jīntiān wǒmen lái guàng Běijīng de yèshì · Hi everyone, today we're exploring a Beijing night market!

xiaoming 你又在拍视频！昨天是我的生日，今天你还不让我休息。
nǐ yòu zài pāi shìpín zuótiān shì wǒ de shēngrì jīntiān nǐ hái bú ràng wǒ xiūxi · You're filming again! It was my birthday yesterday, and you still won't let me rest.

zhao yang 你大我两岁，应该多运动，多走走。
nǐ dà wǒ liǎng suì yīnggāi duō yùndòng duō zǒu zou · You're two years older than me. You should get more exercise and walk more.

anna 门口的牌子上写有夜市的介绍，你读给大家听听吧。
ménkǒu de páizi shàng xiě yǒu yèshì de jièshào nǐ dú gěi dàjiā tīng ting ba · The sign at the entrance has a description of the market. Read it out for everyone.

zhao yang “欢迎光临！本夜市每天晚上六点到十二点开门，共有两百多家餐饮店：火锅、烧烤、西餐、甜品，还有各地的特产。所有的食品都写有售价和保质期，过期的东西绝对不出售，大家可以放心食用。请少用一次性吸管。喝醉了的客人，请不要开车。”
huānyíng guānglín běn yèshì měi tiān wǎnshang liù diǎn dào shíèr diǎn kāi mén gòng yǒu liǎngbǎi duō jiā cānyǐn diàn huǒguō shāokǎo xīcān tiánpǐn hái yǒu gèdì de tèchǎn suǒyǒu de shípǐn dōu xiě yǒu shòujià hé bǎozhìqī guòqī de dōngxi juéduì bù chūshòu dàjiā kěyǐ fàngxīn shíyòng qǐng shǎo yòng yícìxìng xīguǎn hē zuì le de kèrén qǐng búyào kāichē · “Welcome! The night market opens every evening from six to midnight, with over two hundred food stalls: hot pot, barbecue, Western food, desserts and specialities from all over the country. All food is labelled with its price and best-before date; nothing past its date is ever sold, so you can eat with confidence. Please use fewer disposable straws. Guests who have been drinking: please don't drive.”

anna 哈哈，你们看，这里的人真多，吃的吃，买的买。
hā hā nǐmen kàn zhèlǐ de rén zhēn duō chī de chī mǎi de mǎi · Ha ha, look how busy it is: some people eating, some shopping.

xiaoming 今天很多店都有优惠，不吃白不吃！
jīntiān hěn duō diàn dōu yǒu yōuhuì bù chī bái bù chī · Lots of stalls have deals on tonight. It'd be a crime not to eat!

zhao yang 先说好，每个人最多消费一百块。
xiān shuō hǎo měi gè rén zuì duō xiāofèi yìbǎi kuài · Let's agree first: a hundred yuan each, tops.

chapter 2 snacks and stalls

anna 这是什么味道？好臭啊！
zhè shì shénme wèidào hǎo chòu a · What's that smell? It stinks!

xiaoming 这是臭豆腐，闻起来很臭，吃起来很香。你尝试一下吧！
zhè shì chòu dòufu wén qǐlai hěn chòu chī qǐlai hěn xiāng nǐ chángshì yíxià ba · That's stinky tofu. It smells awful but tastes amazing. Give it a try!

anna 好吧……嗯，真的很美味！不过太辣了，我辣得一直喝水。
hǎo ba ǹg zhēn de hěn měiwèi búguò tài là le wǒ là de yìzhí hē shuǐ · OK... Mmm, it really is delicious! But so spicy I keep drinking water.

xiaoming 师傅，饮料帮我们冰一下，再给我们三根吸管。
shīfu yǐnliào bāng wǒmen bīng yíxià zài gěi wǒmen sān gēn xīguǎn · Could you chill the drinks for us, please, and give us three straws?

zhao yang 来，再尝尝烧烤。这家的特色是羊肉，好评很多。
lái zài cháng chang shāokǎo zhè jiā de tèsè shì yáng ròu hǎopíng hěn duō · Here, try the barbecue too. This stall is famous for its lamb, with loads of good reviews.

anna 我饿得一口就咬了半个！
wǒ è de yì kǒu jiù yǎo le bàn gè · I'm so hungry I ate half of it in one bite!

anna 那边有人在锅里炸油条，还有人在炒面。玉米是煮的还是烧的？
nàbiān yǒu rén zài guō lǐ zhá yóutiáo hái yǒu rén zài chǎo miàn yùmǐ shì zhǔ de háishi shāo de · Over there someone's deep-frying dough sticks in a wok, and someone's stir-frying noodles. Is the corn boiled or roasted?

xiaoming 是煮的。早上吃油条、喝豆浆，晚上吃烧烤，这就是北京人的饮食！
shì zhǔ de zǎoshang chī yóutiáo hē dòujiāng wǎnshang chī shāokǎo zhè jiùshì Běijīng rén de yǐnshí · Boiled. Dough sticks and soy milk in the morning, barbecue at night: that's the Beijing diet!

zhao yang 这家的饼也很有名。师傅把饼切了一半，再加热一下，特别香。
zhè jiā de bǐng yě hěn yǒumíng shīfu bǎ bǐng qiē le yíbàn zài jiārè yíxià tèbié xiāng · This stall's flatbread is famous too. The cook cuts it in half and heats it up again: so tasty.

anna 我还不太会用筷子，有叉子吗？这个汤也太浓了。
wǒ hái bú tài huì yòng kuàizi yǒu chāzi ma zhège tāng yě tài nóng le · I'm still not great with chopsticks. Is there a fork? And this soup is very strong.

xiaoming 有。汤里加一点儿开水就淡了。
yǒu tāng lǐ jiā yìdiǎnr kāishuǐ jiù dàn le · Here. Add a little hot water to the soup and it'll be milder.

zhao yang 这些东西营养不多，热量很高。不过今天我们就尝一尝酸甜苦辣！
zhèxiē dōngxi yíngyǎng bù duō rèliàng hěn gāo búguò jīntiān wǒmen jiù cháng yi chang suān tián kǔ là · There isn't much goodness in this food, and it's high in calories. But tonight we're tasting every flavour!

anna 这家的口味很独特，能满足不同客人的需要。我要拍下来跟朋友分享。
zhè jiā de kǒuwèi hěn dútè néng mǎnzú bù tóng kèrén de xūyào wǒ yào pāi xialai gēn péngyou fēnxiǎng · This stall's flavours are really distinctive: they can please every kind of customer. I'm going to take a picture to share with friends.

xiaoming 吃完了我们再去买甜品和雪糕。吃不完的，就打包带回家。
chī wán le wǒmen zài qù mǎi tiánpǐn hé xuěgāo chī bu wán de jiù dǎbāo dài huí jiā · After that we'll get dessert and ice lollies. Whatever we can't finish, we'll take home.

chapter 3 a scarf for auntie zhang

anna 你们看，这里有很多围巾和手套，样式都很好看。
nǐmen kàn zhèlǐ yǒu hěn duō wéijīn hé shǒutào yàngshì dōu hěn hǎokàn · Look, there are lots of scarves and gloves here, and they're really nice styles.

zhao yang 这些服装都是名牌吗？还有西装呢！
zhèxiē fúzhuāng dōu shì míngpái ma hái yǒu xīzhuāng ne · Are these clothes all designer labels? There are even suits!

xiaoming 有的是二手的。品质不错，可是并不是高档品牌。
yǒude shì èrshǒu de pǐnzhì búcuò kěshì bìng bú shì gāodàng pǐnpái · Some are second-hand. Good quality, but not top-end brands.

anna 我上次送了小明一条领带。今天我想给自己买一条灰色的牛仔裤。
wǒ shàng cì sòng le Xiǎomíng yì tiáo lǐngdài jīntiān wǒ xiǎng gěi zìjǐ mǎi yì tiáo huīsè de niúzǎikù · Last time I gave Xiaoming a tie. Today I want to buy myself some grey jeans.

anna 哎，这条牛仔裤的口袋上都是灰。
āi zhè tiáo niúzǎikù de kǒudai shàng dōu shì huī · Oh, the pocket on these jeans is all dusty.

xiaoming 没关系，师傅说不合适可以退，钱也会退还给你。
méi guānxi shīfu shuō bù héshì kěyǐ tuì qián yě huì tuìhuán gěi nǐ · No problem: the stallholder says you can return them if they don't fit, and you'll get your money back.

xiaoming 我妈妈最喜欢紫的。那条紫的围巾怎么样？
wǒ māma zuì xǐhuan zǐ de nà tiáo zǐ de wéijīn zěnmeyàng · My mum loves purple. How about that purple scarf?

anna 颜色不错，可是这条有点儿短。长度够吗？
yánsè búcuò kěshì zhè tiáo yǒudiǎnr duǎn chángdù gòu ma · Nice colour, but this one is a bit short. Is it long enough?

zhao yang 那我们把这条换一条长的。再问问有没有折扣。
nà wǒmen bǎ zhè tiáo huàn yì tiáo cháng de zài wèn wen yǒu méiyǒu zhékòu · Then let's swap it for a longer one, and ask if there's a discount.

xiaoming 师傅说买两条可以便宜二十块。
shīfu shuō mǎi liǎng tiáo kěyǐ piányi èrshí kuài · The stallholder says it's twenty yuan off if we buy two.

anna 那我也买一条，给我外婆寄回英国去。彩色的那条包装也很漂亮。
nà wǒ yě mǎi yì tiáo gěi wǒ wàipó jì huí Yīngguó qù cǎisè de nà tiáo bāozhuāng yě hěn piàoliang · Then I'll buy one too and post it home to my grandma in the UK. The multicoloured one is beautifully wrapped too.

zhao yang 旁边那家在出售新的牙膏，可以免费试用，还有人在品茶。
pángbiān nà jiā zài chūshòu xīn de yágāo kěyǐ miǎnfèi shìyòng hái yǒu rén zài pǐn chá · The stall next door is selling a new toothpaste you can try for free, and there are people tasting tea.

anna 我买两管牙膏吧，买一送一，不买白不买！
wǒ mǎi liǎng guǎn yágāo ba mǎi yī sòng yī bù mǎi bái bù mǎi · I'll get two tubes of toothpaste: buy one, get one free. It'd be silly not to!

chapter 4 counting the haul

zhao yang 好，我们看一看今天买了什么。
hǎo wǒmen kàn yi kan jīntiān mǎi le shénme · Right, let's see what we bought tonight.

anna 两条围巾、一副手套，还有一束花，是送给张阿姨的。我还买了一面小镜子。
liǎng tiáo wéijīn yí fù shǒutào hái yǒu yí shù huā shì sòng gěi zhāng āyí de wǒ hái mǎi le yí miàn xiǎo jìngzi · Two scarves, a pair of gloves and a bunch of flowers for Auntie Zhang. And I bought a little mirror.

xiaoming 我还买了一盒点心和几根玉米，还有一套书，一共两册。
wǒ hái mǎi le yì hé diǎnxin hé jǐ gēn yùmǐ hái yǒu yí tào shū yígòng liǎng cè · And I bought a box of pastries, a few corn cobs, and a set of books: two volumes.

zhao yang 今天花了一大笔钱！不过这个视频可以做两集。
jīntiān huā le yí dà bǐ qián búguò zhège shìpín kěyǐ zuò liǎng jí · We've spent a tidy sum tonight! But I can make two episodes out of this video.

zhao yang 刚才刮了一阵大风，我的视频拍得怎么样？
gāngcái guā le yí zhèn dà fēng wǒ de shìpín pāi de zěnmeyàng · There was a gust of wind just now. How did my video turn out?

anna 我看了一眼，拍得很好！一群人都在后面看你。
wǒ kàn le yì yǎn pāi de hěn hǎo yì qún rén dōu zài hòumiàn kàn nǐ · I had a quick look. It's great! A whole crowd was watching you from behind.

xiaoming 那边还来了一个旅游团，一伙年轻人在唱歌。听说这个夜市一天能卖出一吨烧烤！
nàbiān hái lái le yí gè lǚyóu tuán yì huǒ niánqīng rén zài chàng gē tīngshuō zhège yèshì yì tiān néng mài chū yì dūn shāokǎo · A tour group has turned up over there too, and a bunch of young people are singing. They say this market sells a tonne of barbecue a day!

zhao yang 这是第三届夜市美食节，人当然多。我上个月的美食视频还拿了一等奖呢！
zhè shì dì sān jiè yèshì měishí jié rén dāngrán duō wǒ shàng gè yuè de měishí shìpín hái ná le yī děng jiǎng ne · It's the third night-market food festival, so of course it's busy. My food video even won first prize last month!

anna 你看，有几颗星星，还有一架飞机飞过。
nǐ kàn yǒu jǐ kē xīngxing hái yǒu yí jià fēijī fēi guò · Look, there are a few stars in the sky, and a plane flying past.

xiaoming 这个箱子的重量……我拿不动了！它的宽度有五十厘米。
zhège xiāngzi de zhòngliàng wǒ ná bu dòng le tā de kuāndù yǒu wǔshí límǐ · The weight of this box… I can't carry it! It's fifty centimetres wide.

xiaoming 这么晚了，你给你妈妈留条了吗？
zhème wǎn le nǐ gěi nǐ māma liú tiáo le ma · It's so late: did you leave your mum a note?

zhao yang 留了。快走吧，最后一班地铁十一点就开了。
liú le kuài zǒu ba zuìhòu yì bān dìtiě shíyī diǎn jiù kāi le · I did. Let's hurry: the last train leaves at eleven.

xiaoming 下次我们还来。今天晚上真难得！
xià cì wǒmen hái lái jīntiān wǎnshang zhēn nándé · Let's come again. Tonight was a rare treat!

chapter 5 fruit for tomorrow

xiaoming 回家以前，我们去那家水果店看看吧，我妈妈让我买一点儿水果。
huí jiā yǐqián wǒmen qù nà jiā shuǐguǒ diàn kàn kan ba wǒ māma ràng wǒ mǎi yìdiǎnr shuǐguǒ · Before we go home, let's look in that fruit shop: my mum asked me to buy some fruit.

anna 这里的种类真多：橙子、橘子、梨、桃，还有很多新品种。
zhèlǐ de zhǒnglèi zhēn duō chéngzi júzi lí táo hái yǒu hěn duō xīn pǐnzhǒng · There's such a choice here: oranges, tangerines, pears, peaches, and lots of new varieties.

zhao yang 晚上的售价比白天便宜，可以节省不少钱。我们挑几个梨吧。
wǎnshang de shòujià bǐ báitiān piányi kěyǐ jiéshěng bù shǎo qián wǒmen tiāo jǐ gè lí ba · Prices are lower at night than in the daytime, so you can save a fair bit. Let's pick a few pears.

xiaoming 师傅，请帮我称一下。这些桃看起来很甜，比梨贵吗？
shīfu qǐng bāng wǒ chēng yíxià zhèxiē táo kànqǐlai hěn tián bǐ lí guì ma · Could you weigh these, please? These peaches look sweet. Are they dearer than the pears?

zhao yang 桃一斤贵梨三块，不过很新鲜。这家做了十年买卖，最近物价高了，他们的价格却没怎么变。
táo yì jīn guì lí sān kuài búguò hěn xīnxiān zhè jiā zuò le shí nián mǎimai zuìjìn wùjià gāo le tāmen de jiàgé què méi zěnme biàn · Peaches are three yuan a jin more than pears, but they're very fresh. This shop has been trading for ten years, and prices have gone up lately, but theirs have hardly changed.

ms zhang 喂，小明？顺便在便利店买一袋大米。家里的蔬菜也不多了，再挑几个番茄、黄瓜和土豆。
wèi Xiǎomíng shùnbiàn zài biànlìdiàn mǎi yí dài dàmǐ jiā lǐ de shūcài yě bù duō le zài tiāo jǐ gè fānqié huángguā hé tǔdòu · Hello, Xiaoming? Pick up a bag of rice at the convenience store on the way. We're low on vegetables too: choose a few tomatoes, cucumbers and potatoes.

xiaoming 好的。妈妈，明天还要海鲜吗？
hǎo de māma míngtiān hái yào hǎixiān ma · OK. Mum, do you want seafood for tomorrow too?

ms zhang 不用了，海鲜太贵，我们省一点儿。米饭是我们的主食，粮食可不能浪费。
búyòng le hǎixiān tài guì wǒmen shěng yìdiǎnr mǐfàn shì wǒmen de zhǔshí liángshi kě bù néng làngfèi · No need: seafood is too expensive, let's save a bit. Rice is our staple, and we really mustn't waste food.

anna 我也是，自从来中国以来，几乎每天都吃米饭。我早我的英国朋友一年学会了用筷子！
wǒ yě shì zìcóng lái Zhōngguó yǐlái jīhū měi tiān dōu chī mǐfàn wǒ zǎo wǒ de Yīngguó péngyou yì nián xuéhuì le yòng kuàizi · Me too: ever since I came to China I've had rice nearly every day. I learnt to use chopsticks a year before my British friends did!

xiaoming 哈哈，可是你刚才还要叉子呢！
hā hā kěshì nǐ gāngcái hái yào chāzi ne · Ha ha, but you were asking for a fork just now!

Smells, prices, bargains and measure words: you've just spent a whole evening at a night market in Chinese. Unit 3 done!
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 19 which way?

Give and follow directions: towards, along, how far, and how to get back on track.

Maps help, but in a maze of lanes you still need to ask, and understand the answer.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
朝	cháo	towards; to face	我家的窗户朝南，冬天也很暖和。 Our windows face south, so it's warm even in winter.
沿	yán	along	我们沿着河边走走吧。 Let's take a stroll along the river.
背后	bèihòu	behind; behind someone's back	别在背后说别人不好。 Don't talk about people behind their backs.
四周	sìzhōu	all around	房子四周都是高高的树。 The house is surrounded by tall trees.
四处	sìchù	everywhere, all over	我四处找我的钥匙，|还是{==still}没找到。 I looked everywhere for my keys and still couldn't find them.
位置	wèizhì	position, location; seat	你能把你的位置发给我吗? Can you send me your location?
位于	wèiyú	to be located in/at	我们学校位于城市的东边。 Our school is in the east of the city.
距	jù	to be … away from	酒店距机场只有十公里。 The hotel is only ten kilometres from the airport.
前往	qiánwǎng	to go to, head for	下{=next}个月他要前往北京工作。 Next month he's off to Beijing to work.
前来	qiánlái	to come (here)	谢谢大家前来参加今天的会议。 Thank you all for coming to today's meeting.
返回	fǎnhuí	to return, go back	点{=to tap, click}这里可以返回上{=previous}一页。 Tap here to go back to the previous page.
往返	wǎngfǎn	there and back; round trip	去北京的往返机票多少钱? How much is a return flight to Beijing?
到达	dàodá	to arrive, reach	飞机晚上九点到达北京。 The plane gets into Beijing at nine in the evening.
迷路	mílù	to get lost	第一次来这儿的人很容易迷路。 People who come here for the first time get lost easily.
路线	lùxiàn	route	这条路线更近，可是要走很多胡同。 This route is shorter, but you have to go through lots of lanes.
行走	xíngzǒu	to walk (written)	下雪天在路上行走要特别小心。 Take extra care walking on the roads when it snows.

步行	bùxíng	to go on foot	从这儿步行到车站要二十分钟。 It's a twenty-minute walk from here to the station.
行人	xíngrén	pedestrian	路口的行人很多，开车慢一点儿。 There are lots of pedestrians at the crossing. Drive slowly.
路人	lùrén	passer-by	我向一个路人问了路。 I asked a passer-by for directions.
广场	guǎngchǎng	square, plaza	晚上广场上有很多人跳舞。 In the evening lots of people dance in the square.
胡同	hútòng	hutong, narrow lane	老北京的胡同里有很多有意思的小店。 Old Beijing's hutongs are full of interesting little shops.
大厦	dàshà	tall building, tower	那座大厦有六十层。 That tower has sixty floors.
地下	dìxià	underground, basement	停车场在大厦的地下一层。 The car park is on the first basement level.
靠近	kàojìn	near; to move close to	我想租一套靠近地铁站的房子。 I want to rent a flat near a metro station.
绕	rào	to go around; detour	前面在修路，我们得{dei3}绕过去。 They're fixing the road ahead. We'll have to go round.

pattern 朝 towards and 沿着 along

朝 / 沿着 | direction or path | verb

朝 means "towards, facing": 朝北走 walk north, 朝我笑 smile at me. 沿（着） means "along": 沿着河边走 walk along the river. Both go before the verb. As a verb, 朝 also means "to face": 窗户朝南.

小明朝我笑了笑。 **Xiǎomíng cháo wǒ xiào le xiao** Xiaoming gave me a smile.

我们沿着河边走了一个小时。 **wǒmen yán zhe hé biān zǒu le yí gè xiǎoshí** We walked along the river for an hour.

老人们沿着小路慢慢行走。 **lǎorénmen yán zhe xiǎo lù màn màn xíngzǒu** The old people walk slowly along the path.

我的卧室朝南，阳光特别好。 **wǒ de wòshì cháo nán yángguāng tèbié hǎo** My bedroom faces south and gets lovely sunshine.

dialogue where is that tower?

zhao yang 安娜，我好像迷路了。你们的新大厦到底在哪儿?
Ānnà wǒ hǎoxiàng mílù le nǐmen de xīn dàshà dàodǐ zài nǎr · Anna, I think I'm lost. Where on earth is your new building?

anna 别着急。你现在在什么位置？四周有什么?
bié zháojí nǐ xiànzài zài shénme wèizhì sìzhōu yǒu shénme · Don't panic. Where are you right now? What's around you?

zhao yang 我背后是一个大广场，四处都是行人，旁边还有一个地下商场。
wǒ bèihòu shì yí gè dà guǎngchǎng sìchù dōu shì xíngrén pángbiān hái yǒu yí gè dìxià shāngchǎng · There's a big square behind me, people everywhere, and an underground shopping centre next to it.

anna 你走过了！大厦距地铁站只有五百米，步行十分钟就到。
nǐ zǒu guò le dàshà jù dìtiě zhàn zhǐyǒu wǔbǎi mǐ bùxíng shí fēnzhōng jiù dào · You've gone past it! The building is only five hundred metres from the metro, a ten-minute walk.

zhao yang 我是按手机上的路线走的，可是越走越远。
wǒ shì àn shǒujī shàng de lùxiàn zǒu de kěshì yuè zǒu yuè yuǎn · I followed the route on my phone, but I just kept getting further away.

anna 你先返回地铁站，然后朝东走，沿着大路一直走，别绕到胡同里去。
nǐ xiān fǎnhuí dìtiě zhàn ránhòu cháo dōng zǒu yán zhe dà lù yìzhí zǒu bié rào dào hútòng lǐ qù · Go back to the metro station first, then head east and keep to the main road. Don't wander into the lanes.

zhao yang 好。你把大厦的名字告诉我，我再问问路人。
hǎo nǐ bǎ dàshà de míngzi gàosu wǒ wǒ zài wèn wen lùrén · OK. Tell me the name of the building and I'll ask someone on the street.

anna 算了，我下去接你吧，你跟着我走就行。
suàn le wǒ xiàqù jiē nǐ ba nǐ gēn zhe wǒ zǒu jiù xíng · Never mind, I'll come down and get you. Just follow me.

zhao yang 太好了！等我到达以后，请你喝咖啡。
tài hǎo le děng wǒ dàodá yǐhòu qǐng nǐ hē kāfēi · Brilliant! Once I get there, the coffee's on me.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

胡
hú
beard; foreign (old)

靠
kào
to lean on; rely on; be near

good to know · 跟 is the "with" you know, but at this level it is also a verb, "to follow": 跟着我走 follow me, 跟不上 can't keep up. As a noun it means "heel". Northern Chinese often give directions by compass (朝北走, 往东拐); in the south people more often say left and right.

Lost in a maze of lanes? Now you can ask the way, and follow the answer.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 20 in the traffic

Talk about driving and traffic: jams, accidents, speeding, and what happened along the way.

Traffic is a favourite topic in every Chinese city, and the first excuse for being late.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
驾驶	jiàshǐ	to drive, to pilot	他驾驶这辆车已经十年了。 He's been driving this car for ten years.
驾照	jiàzhào	driving licence	我去年才拿到驾照。 I only got my driving licence last year.
车辆	chēliàng	vehicles, traffic	这条路上的车辆越来越多了。 There's more and more traffic on this road.
车主	chēzhǔ	car owner	这辆车挡住了路，车主去哪儿了? This car is blocking the road. Where's the owner?
车库	chēkù	garage	我们家的车库太小了，停不下两辆车。 Our garage is too small for two cars.
汽油	qìyóu	petrol, gasoline	现在的汽油越来越贵了。 Petrol keeps getting more expensive.
安全带	ānquándài	seat belt	这辆车后面的安全带坏了。 The back seat belt in this car is broken.
超速	chāosù	to speed	他开车超速，被罚了两百块钱。 He was fined two hundred yuan for speeding.
堵	dǔ	to block; jammed	下班的时候路上特别堵。 The roads are really jammed at rush hour.
车祸	chēhuò	car crash	他在一场车祸中受伤了。 He was hurt in a car crash.
事故	shìgù	accident	这个路口经常发生交通事故。 There are often traffic accidents at this junction.
撞	zhuàng	to hit, bump into	他走路看手机，撞到了一棵树。 He was looking at his phone while walking and walked into a tree.
行驶	xíngshǐ	to travel (of vehicles)	下雪的时候，车辆要慢慢行驶。 When it snows, vehicles should drive slowly.
通行	tōngxíng	to pass through (traffic)	这条路正在修，暂时不能通行。 This road is under repair and closed for now.
挤	jǐ	crowded; to squeeze	周末的商场总是很挤。 The shopping centre is always packed at the weekend.
人群	rénqún	crowd	他在人群中一眼就看到了我。 He spotted me in the crowd at a glance.
停留	tíngliú	to stay, stop over	我们在北京只{zhi3}停留两天。 We're only stopping in Beijing for two days.

开通	kāitōng	to open (a line, service)	这个城市去年开通了地铁。 This city opened its metro last year.
挡	dǎng	to block (way, view)	你站{zhan4-3}在这儿挡住我了，我什么都看不见。 You're standing in my way here. I can't see a thing.
冲	chōng	to rush, dash	听到声音，他马上冲了出去。 When he heard the noise, he dashed straight out.
倒	dǎo	to fall over; to change (trains)	风太大了，路边的一棵树倒{dao3}了。 The wind was so strong that a tree by the road fell over.
移动	yídòng	to move; mobile	请把你的车向前移动一点儿。 Please move your car forward a little.
一路	yīlù	all the way; along the way	他一路|上都在听音乐。 He listened to music the whole way.
长途	chángtú	long-distance	开长途车很累，要常常停下来休息。 Long-distance driving is tiring. Stop and rest often.
缓慢	huǎnmàn	slow (formal)	前面出了事故，车辆只能缓慢地向前开。 There's been an accident ahead, so the traffic is crawling.

pattern a着a着: while doing it, something happens

verb + 着 | verb + 着 | , | what happened

Say a verb with 着 twice, and you're in the middle of doing it for a while; the next part says what happened along the way, often a surprise: 走着走着就迷路了 we were walking along and got lost. 就 or 突然 often follows.

我开着开着，突然发现汽油快没了。 **wǒ kāi zhe kāi zhe tūrán fāxiàn qìyóu kuài méi le** I was driving along when I suddenly noticed we were almost out of petrol.

我们聊着聊着，就忘了时间。 **wǒmen liáo zhe liáo zhe jiù wàng le shíjiān** We got chatting and lost track of time.

孩子听着听着，就笑了起来。 **háizi tīng zhe tīng zhe jiù xiào le qǐlai** The child listened for a while and started to laugh.

dialogue stuck in traffic

anna 我们已经在这儿停了二十分钟了，车一点儿都没移动。
wǒmen yǐjīng zài zhèr tíng le èrshí fēnzhōng le chē yìdiǎnr dōu méi yídòng · We've been sitting here for twenty minutes and the car hasn't moved an inch.

xiaoming 听说前面两辆车撞了，一辆车倒在路中间，挡住了路。
tīngshuō qiánmiàn liǎng liàng chē zhuàng le yí liàng chē dǎo zài lù zhōngjiān dǎng zhù le lù · Apparently two cars crashed ahead. One's on its side in the middle of the road, blocking it.

anna 严重吗？有人受伤吗？
yánzhòng ma yǒu rén shòushāng ma · Is it serious? Is anyone hurt?

xiaoming 好像不严重。两位车主正在等交警，半个小时以后才能通行。
hǎoxiàng bù yánzhòng liǎng wèi chēzhǔ zhèngzài děng jiāojǐng bàn gè xiǎoshí yǐhòu cái néng tōngxíng · Doesn't seem serious. The two drivers are waiting for the police; it'll be half an hour before traffic gets through.

anna 你看那辆车，一直在超速，刚才差点儿冲到我们前面来。
nǐ kàn nà liàng chē yìzhí zài chāosù gāngcái chàdiǎnr chōng dào wǒmen qiánmiàn lái · Look at that car. It's been speeding the whole time; it nearly cut right in front of us.

xiaoming 那种司机最危险。上次我开长途，开着开着就困了，只好停在路边休息。
nà zhǒng sījī zuì wēixiǎn shàng cì wǒ kāi chángtú kāi zhe kāi zhe jiù kùn le zhǐhǎo tíng zài lùbiān xiūxi · Drivers like that are the most dangerous. Last time I drove long-distance, I got sleepy along the way and had to pull over for a rest.

anna 附近有新开通的地铁站，我们改坐地铁怎么样？
fùjìn yǒu xīn kāitōng de dìtiě zhàn wǒmen gǎi zuò dìtiě zěnmeyàng · There's a newly opened metro station nearby. How about taking the metro instead?

xiaoming 车怎么办？早知道我就把车留在车库里了。
chē zěnme bàn zǎo zhīdào wǒ jiù bǎ chē liú zài chēkù lǐ le · And the car? If I'd known, I'd have left it in the garage.

anna 没关系，我们在车里停留一会儿，就算是休息吧。
méi guānxi wǒmen zài chē lǐ tíngliú yíhuìr jiù suàn shì xiūxi ba · Never mind. We'll just stay in the car a while and call it a break.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

挤 jǐ
crowded; to squeeze

挡 dǎng
to block (way, view)

冲 chōng
to rush, dash

good to know · 带 is also a noun, “belt, band”: 安全带 seat belt. 这一带 means “this area, round here”. 差点儿 + verb is “nearly”: 差点儿冲到我们前面 nearly cut in front of us. 差点儿没 means the same for something bad. 起 is also a measure word for incidents: 一起交通事故 one traffic accident, 两起车祸 two crashes.

Next time you’re stuck in traffic, you can tell the whole story in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 21 trains & planes

Get through stations, trains and flights, and say who does what for whom.

Holiday travel in China means booking early, finding your carriage, and maybe a long flight home.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
列车	lièchē	train (formal)	本{ben3-5}次列车开往北京。 This train is for Beijing.
铁路	tiělù	railway	这条铁路是去年修好的。 This railway was finished last year.
站台	zhàntái	platform	请到三号站台上车。 Please board at platform 3.
车厢	chēxiāng	carriage (of a train)	我们在八号车厢，你在几号? We're in carriage 8. Which one are you in?
乘务员	chéngwùyuán	train or flight attendant	有问题可以问乘务员。 If you have any questions, ask the attendant.
飞行	fēixíng	to fly; flight	这次飞行要十个小时。 This flight takes ten hours.
飞行员	fēixíngyuán	pilot	我哥哥是一名飞行员。 My brother is a pilot.
海关	hǎiguān	customs	过海关的时候要拿出护照。 You need to show your passport at customs.
时差	shíchā	time difference; jet lag	我刚回来，还在倒{dao3}时差。 I've just got back and I'm still getting over the jet lag.
行程	xíngchéng	itinerary, trip	我们的行程安排得太满了。 Our itinerary is far too packed.
运	yùn	to transport, carry	这些水果是从南方运来的。 This fruit was brought up from the south.
运输	yùnshū	to transport; transport	用火车运输东西，又便宜又安全。 Moving goods by train is cheap and safe.
替	tì	for, instead of; to replace	我今天不舒服，你能替我去开会吗? I'm not well today. Could you go to the meeting for me?
同	tóng	with; same	我同他是大学同学。 He and I were at university together.
较	jiào	compared with; fairly	今年的机票较去年贵了一些。 Flights are a bit more expensive than last year.
一路顺风	yīlùshùnfēng	have a good trip!	祝你一路顺风! Have a good trip!
幸运	xìngyùn	lucky; good luck	能认识你，我真幸运。 I'm so lucky to have met you.
首次	shǒucì	for the first time	这是我首次来中国。 This is my first time in China.

随后	suíhòu	soon after, then	你们先走，我随后就到。 You go ahead. I'll be right behind you.
期间	qījiān	period; during	会议期间，请大家关掉手机。 During the meeting, please switch off your phones.
延长	yáncháng	to extend, lengthen	我想把签证延长一个月。 I'd like to extend my visa by a month.
抢	qiǎng	to grab; to rush for	假期的火车票特别难抢。 Train tickets for the holidays are really hard to get.
系	jì	to tie, fasten	上车以后请系{ji4-5}好安全带。 Please fasten your seat belt once you're in.
登	dēng	to climb; to board	我们花{hua1}了三个小时才登上山。 It took us three hours to climb the mountain.

pattern 替 for, 同 with, 较 compared with

替 / 同 / 较 | someone or something | verb or adjective

替 + person + verb: do it for them, in their place (替我问好). 同 + person: a more formal "with" (我同他商量). 较 + B + adjective: written "compared with B" (今年较去年冷). All three go before the verb.

请替我向你父母问好。 **qǐng tì wǒ xiàng nǐ fùmǔ wèn hǎo** Please say hello to your parents for me.

这件事我要同大家商量一下。 **zhè jiàn shì wǒ yào tóng dàjiā shāngliang yíxià** I need to talk this over with everyone.

今年坐火车的人较去年多了不少。 **jīnnián zuò huǒchē de rén jiào qùnián duō le bù shǎo** Far more people are taking the train this year than last year.

我开车替你把行李运过去吧。 **wǒ kāichē tì nǐ bǎ xíngli yùn guoqu ba** I'll drive your luggage over for you.

dialogue platform 6, carriage 8

xiaoming 安娜，快一点儿！列车十分钟以后就开了。
Ānnà kuài yìdiǎnr lièchē shí fēnzhōng yǐhòu jiù kāi le · Anna, hurry! The train leaves in ten minutes.

anna 来了来了！我们在几号车厢?
lái le lai le wǒmen zài jǐ hào chēxiāng · Coming, coming! Which carriage are we in?

xiaoming 八号车厢。站台上人太多了，你同我一起走，别走丢了。
bā hào chēxiāng zhàntái shàng rén tài duō le nǐ tóng wǒ yìqǐ zǒu bié zǒu diū le · Carriage 8. The platform's packed, so stay with me and don't get lost.

anna 谢谢你替我买票。假期期间的票真难抢，我自己试了三天都没买到。
xièxie nǐ tì wǒ mǎi piào jiàqī qījiān de piào zhēn nán qiǎng wǒ zìjǐ shì le sān tiān dōu méi mǎi dào · Thanks for getting my ticket. Holiday tickets are so hard to get; I tried for three days on my own.

xiaoming 不客气。对了，你父母下个月来中国，是他们首次来吗?
búkèqi duì le nǐ fùmǔ xià gè yuè lái Zhōngguó shì tāmen shǒucì lái ma · No problem. Oh, your parents are coming to China next month. Is it their first time?

anna 对。要飞行十几个小时，下了飞机还要过海关、倒时差，一定很累。
duì yào fēixíng shí jǐ gè xiǎoshí xià le fēijī hái yào guò hǎiguān dǎo shíchā yídìng hěn lèi · Yes. It's a flight of over ten hours, then customs and jet lag. They'll be exhausted.

xiaoming 那就把行程安排得轻松一点儿。他们能延长假期吗?
nà jiù bǎ xíngchéng ānpái de qīngsōng yìdiǎnr tāmen néng yáncháng jiàqī ma · Then make the itinerary nice and relaxed. Can they make their holiday longer?

anna 已经延长了一个星期。我爸爸说，这么远的地方，不来白不来！
yǐjīng yáncháng le yí gè xīngqī wǒ bàba shuō zhème yuǎn de dìfang bù lái bái bù lái · They already added a week. My dad says it's so far that it would be a waste not to make the most of it!

xiaoming 说得对！你看，铁路两边的风景多美。这条铁路以前主要用来运输东西。
shuō de duì nǐ kàn tiělù liǎng biān de fēngjǐng duō měi zhè tiáo tiělù yǐqián zhǔyào yònglái yùnshū dōngxi · He's right! Look how beautiful it is on both sides of the line. This railway used to be mainly for freight.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

厢

xiāng
compartment, side room

替

tì
for, instead of; to replace

good to know · 关 is also a noun, "pass, checkpoint": 海关 customs, 过关 get through (a checkpoint, or a tough test). On Chinese trains, seats are listed by carriage (车厢) and seat number: 8车12A is carriage 8, seat 12A.

Platforms, carriages, customs and jet lag: you can now handle the whole journey in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 22 home town & far away

Talk about home towns, regions and places near and far, and give two choices or a “once this happens…”.

“Where’s your home town?” is one of the first questions anyone asks you in China.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
故乡	gùxiāng	home town, native place	他离开故乡已经二十年了。 It’s twenty years since he left his home town.
本地	běndì	local, this area	我不是本地人，我是从南方来的。 I’m not from here. I’m from the south.
当地	dāngdì	local (there)	到了那儿，我们去当地的小饭馆吃饭吧。 When we get there, let’s eat at a local restaurant.
地区	dìqū	area, region	这个地区冬天特别冷。 Winters in this region are really cold.
区域	qūyù	zone, area	这个区域不能停车。 You can’t park in this area.
城区	chéngqū	city area, urban district	酒店在老城区，离火车站不远。 The hotel is in the old town, not far from the station.
省份	shěngfèn	province	你去过{guo}中国的哪些省份? Which Chinese provinces have you been to?
省会	shěnghuì	provincial capital	这座城市是省会，也是这个地区的中心。 This city is the provincial capital and the heart of the region.
县	xiàn	county	他老家在一个小县城。 His family home is in a small county town.
乡	xiāng	countryside; village	我姥姥一直住在|乡下{==the countryside}。 My grandma has always lived in the countryside.
乡村	xiāngcūn	village, countryside	越来越多的年轻人离开了乡村。 More and more young people have left the villages.
山区	shānqū	mountain area	山区的冬天来得特别早。 Winter comes really early in the mountains.
海外	hǎiwài	overseas, abroad	他在海外生活了很多年。 He lived abroad for many years.
欧洲	Ōuzhōu	Europe	安娜是从欧洲来的。 Anna comes from Europe.
非洲	Fēizhōu	Africa	我从来没去过{guo}非洲。 I’ve never been to Africa.
访问	fǎngwèn	to visit; to access (a site)	今天访问这个网站的人特别多。 Loads of people have visited this website today.

游览	yóulǎn	to tour, go sightseeing	我们花{hua1}了一整天游览老城区。 We spent a whole day touring the old town.
旅行社	lǚxíngshè	travel agency	这次旅行是旅行社帮我们安排的。 A travel agency arranged this trip for us.
或是	huòshì	or; either ... or	周末我们去爬山或是去看电影吧。 Let's go hiking or see a film this weekend.
中心	zhōngxīn	centre	我们的酒店就在市中心。 Our hotel is right in the city centre.
处	chù	place, spot	你的住处{chu4}离公司远吗? Is your place far from the office?
当中	dāngzhōng	among, in the middle of	我们几个|人当中，只有他去过{guo}海外。 Of all of us, only he has been abroad.
内部	nèibù	inside, internal	这是公司内部的事，你别问了。 That's an internal company matter. Don't ask.
外部	wàibù	outside, external	这座大厦的外部很普通，里面却很漂亮。 The outside of the building is plain, but inside it's beautiful.
里头	lǐtou	inside	盒子里头是什么? What's inside the box?

pattern 或是……或是…… either ... or ..., and 一旦……就…… once ...

或是 | choice A | ，或是 | choice B

或是 A，或是 B lays out two choices: either A or B (a little more written than 或者). 一旦 A，就 B means "once A happens, B follows", often for something sudden or serious: 一旦下雪，就不能走了.

你或是坐火车，或是坐长途车，都能到。 **nǐ huòshì zuò huǒchē huòshì zuò chángtú chē dōu néng dào** You can get there either by train or by long-distance bus.

一旦决定了，就要坚持下去。 **yídàn juédìng le jiù yào jiānchí xiaqu** Once you've decided, you have to stick with it.

这个区域一旦停电，整个城区都会受影响。 **zhège qūyù yídàn tíng diàn zhěnggè chéngqū dōu huì shòu yǐngxiǎng** If the power goes off in this area, the whole district is affected.

dialogue grandma's home town

anna 我们聊着聊着就到了！这就是你姥姥的故乡吗?
wǒmen liáo zhe liáo zhe jiù dào le zhè jiùshì nǐ lǎolao de gùxiāng ma · We were so busy chatting that we're here already! So this is your grandma's home town?

xiaoming 对，也是我妈妈的故乡。这个县在山区，以前交通很不方便，现在好多了。
duì yě shì wǒ māma de gùxiāng zhège xiàn zài shānqū yǐqián jiāotōng hěn bù fāngbiàn xiànzài hǎo duō le · Yes, and my mum's too. The county is up in the mountains. Getting here used to be really hard, but it's much better now.

anna 当地人说话，我有点儿听不懂。
dāngdì rén shuōhuà wǒ yǒudiǎnr tīng bu dǒng · I can't quite follow what the locals are saying.

xiaoming 本地人说话特别快，连我也只能听懂一半。
běndì rén shuōhuà tèbié kuài lián wǒ yě zhǐ néng tīng dǒng yíbàn · People here talk really fast. Even I only get about half.

xiaoming 明天我们或是去城区的老街走走，或是去乡下看看姥姥的老房子。
míngtiān wǒmen huòshì qù chéngqū de lǎo jiē zǒu zou huòshì qù xiāngxià kàn kan lǎolao de lǎo fángzi · Tomorrow we can either wander round the old streets in town or go out to the countryside to see Grandma's old house.

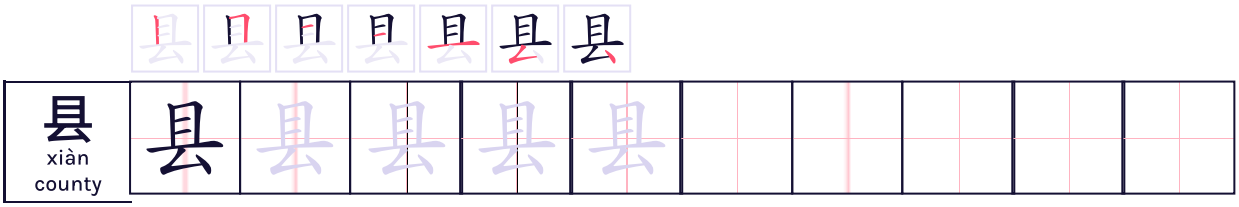
anna 我都想去！老房子里头现在还有人住吗?
wǒ dōu xiǎng qù lǎo fángzi lǐtou xiànzài hái yǒu rén zhù ma · I want to do both! Does anyone still live in the old house?

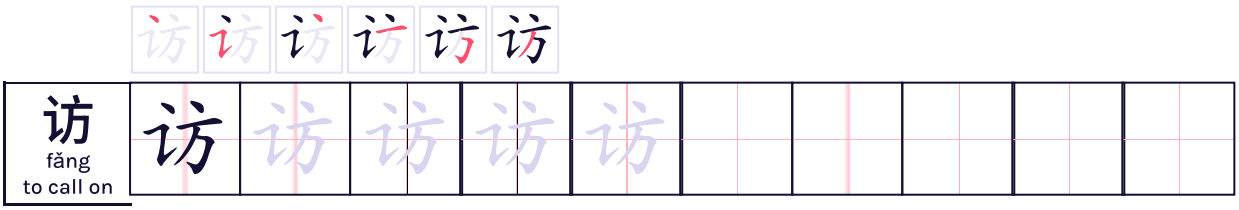
xiaoming 没有了。房子外部看起来很旧，内部去年刚装修过。
méiyǒu le fángzi wàibù kàn qǐlai hěn jiù nèibù qùnián gāng zhuāngxiū guo · Not any more. The outside looks old, but the inside was done up last year.

anna 听说这里的旅行社也开始带海外游客来了。
tīngshuō zhèlǐ de lǚxíngshè yě kāishǐ dài hǎiwài yóukè lái le · I hear the travel agencies here have started bringing in tourists from abroad.

xiaoming 是啊，去年还有一群欧洲学生来访问。一旦路修好了，来的人就会更多。
shì a qùnián hái yǒu yì qún Ōuzhōu xuéshēng lái fǎngwèn yídàn lù xiū hǎo le lái de rén jiù huì gèng duō · That's right. Last year a group of students from Europe came to visit. Once the road is finished, even more people will come.

write it trace the grey, then write your own





good to know · From big to small: 省 province → 市 city → 县 county → 乡 or 镇 township → 村 village. 省会 is a province's capital. 本地人 are "people from here", where you are now; 当地人 are "the locals" of the place you're talking about. You met 一旦 on day 3. Here it is with its partner: 一旦……，就……, "once A happens, B follows".

Now you can say where you're from, where you've been, and where you'd love to go next.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 23 weather on the way

Understand a weather forecast and pass on what you heard: “according to…”, “apparently…”.

Mountain weather changes fast, and a quick look at the forecast can save your day out.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
据	jù	according to	据他说，那家{=(measure word)}饭馆已经关门了。 According to him, that restaurant has closed down.
据说	jùshuō	it is said, people say	据说明天要下大雪。 Apparently it’s going to snow heavily tomorrow.
预报	yùbào	to forecast; forecast	天气预报说今天傍晚有雨。 The forecast says rain this evening.
暴雨	bàoyǔ	rainstorm, downpour	一场暴雨以后，路上全是水。 After the downpour, the streets were full of water.
雾	wù	fog, mist	早上雾很大，看不见前面的路。 The fog was thick this morning. You couldn’t see the road ahead.
降水	jiàngshuǐ	rainfall, precipitation	这个地区夏天降水比较多。 This region gets a lot of rain in summer.
雨水	yǔshuǐ	rain, rainwater	今年的雨水特别多。 We’ve had a lot of rain this year.
升温	shēngwēn	to warm up (temperature)	从明天开始，天气会慢慢升温。 From tomorrow it will slowly get warmer.
冻	dòng	to freeze; freezing	外面太冷了，我的手都冻疼了。 It’s so cold out that my hands hurt.
湿	shī	wet	我忘了带伞，衣服全湿了。 I forgot my umbrella and got soaked.
温暖	wēnnuǎn	warm	回到家里，我觉得特别温暖。 Back home, I felt so warm and cosy.
天空	tiānkōng	sky	雨停了，天空特别蓝。 The rain has stopped and the sky is so blue.
天上	tiānshàng	in the sky	你看，天上有一架飞机。 Look, there’s a plane in the sky.
光线	guāngxiàn	light (amount of)	这个房间光线不好，有点儿暗。 This room doesn’t get much light. It’s a bit dark.
暗	àn	dark, dim	天越来越暗了，我们快回家吧。 It’s getting darker. Let’s hurry home.
傍晚	bàngwǎn	dusk, early evening	傍晚的时候，我们常在河边散步。 We often walk by the river at dusk.
半夜	bànyè	the middle of the night	他昨天半夜才回家。 He didn’t get home until the middle of the night.

夜间	yèjiān	at night, night-time	夜间开车一定要小心。 Be very careful driving at night.
整整	zhěngzhěng	a whole, fully	雨整整下了三天。 It rained for three whole days.
怪	guài	strange; to blame	这几天的天气真怪，一会儿冷一会儿热。 The weather's been so odd lately: cold one minute, hot the next.
可怕	kěpà	frightening, terrible	昨天晚上的暴雨真可怕。 Last night's storm was terrifying.
糟	zāo	bad, terrible; oh no	糟了，我把伞忘在车上了！ Oh no, I left my umbrella in the car!
躲	duǒ	to hide; to shelter from	下雨了，我们先找个地方躲雨吧。 It's raining. Let's find somewhere to shelter first.
滑	huá	slippery; to slide	下过{guo}雨以后路很滑，小心别摔倒{dao3}。 The roads are slippery after the rain. Careful you don't fall.
沉	chén	heavy; to sink	你的包怎么这么沉? Why is your bag so heavy?

pattern 据: according to

据 | source | , | what you heard

据 + a source says where your information comes from: 据天气预报 according to the forecast, 据我了解 as far as I know. 据说 on its own means "apparently, people say", when you don't name the source. It usually starts the sentence.

据我了解，这条路晚上不能通行。 **jù wǒ liǎojiě zhè tiáo lù wǎnshang bù néng tōngxíng** As far as I know, this road is closed at night.

据预报，明天开始升温。 **jù yùbào míngtiān kāishǐ shēngwēn** According to the forecast, it starts warming up tomorrow.

据他说，山里早上的雾特别大。 **jù tā shuō shān lǐ zǎoshang de wù tèbié dà** According to him, the mornings in the mountains are very foggy.

dialogue here comes the storm

anna 你看天空，怎么突然变得这么暗?
nǐ kàn tiānkōng zěnme tūrán biàn de zhème àn · Look at the sky. Why has it suddenly gone so dark?

xiaoming 我刚才看了一眼天气预报，说傍晚有暴雨。我们快一点儿回去吧。
wǒ gāngcái kàn le yì yǎn tiānqì yùbào shuō bàngwǎn yǒu bàoyǔ wǒmen kuài yìdiǎnr huíqù ba · I just had a look at the forecast: there's a storm coming this evening. Let's get back quickly.

anna 糟了，我没带伞！我的包又这么沉，走不快。
zāo le wǒ méi dài sǎn wǒ de bāo yòu zhème chén zǒu bú kuài · Oh no, I didn't bring an umbrella! And my bag's so heavy I can't walk fast.

xiaoming 来，我替你拿。前面有家小店，我们先进去躲一躲。
lái wǒ tì nǐ ná qiánmiàn yǒu jiā xiǎo diàn wǒmen xiān jìnqù duǒ yi duo · Here, I'll carry it for you. There's a little shop ahead. Let's duck in there first.

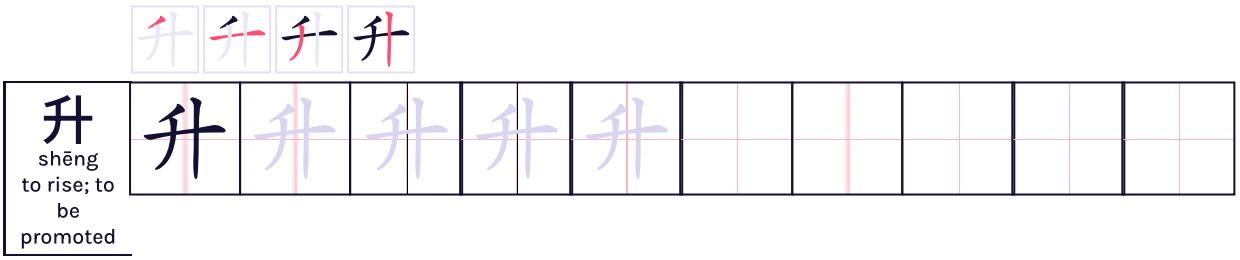
anna 这里的天气真怪，中午还那么热，现在突然这么冷。
zhèlǐ de tiānqì zhēn guài zhōngwǔ hái nàme rè xiànzài tūrán zhème lěng · The weather here is so strange. It was hot at noon, and now it's suddenly cold.

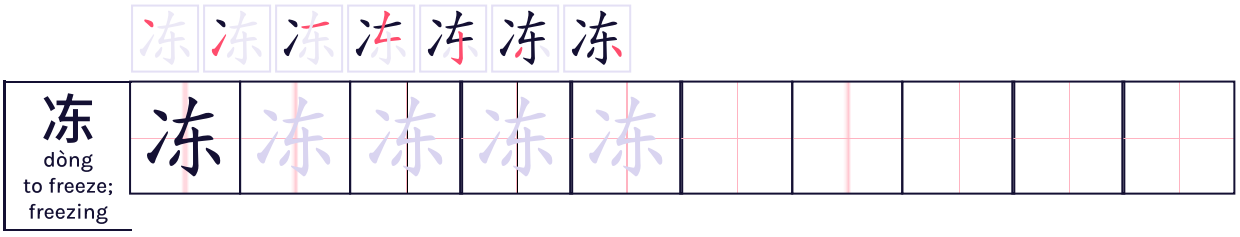
xiaoming 山区就是这样。据说昨天半夜特别冷，路上的水都冻住了。
shānqū jiùshì zhèyàng jùshuō zuótiān bànyè tèbié lěng lùshang de shuǐ dōu dòng zhù le · That's the mountains for you. Apparently it was freezing in the middle of last night; the puddles froze over.

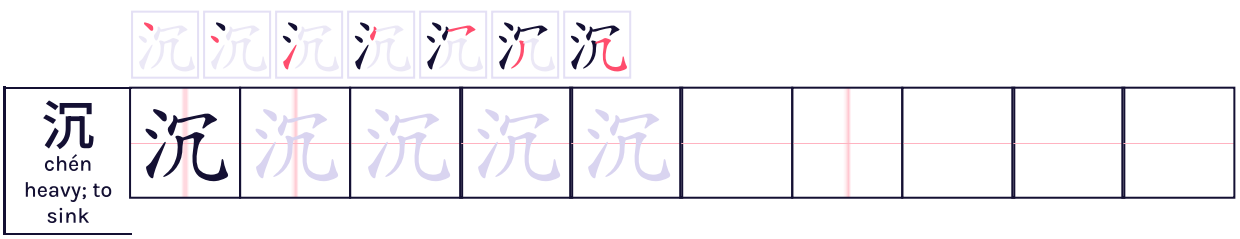
anna 真可怕！今年的雨水是不是特别多?
zhēn kěpà jīnnián de yǔshuǐ shì bu shì tèbié duō · How scary! Has there been a lot of rain this year?

xiaoming 是啊。不过别担心，姥姥家很温暖。等雨停了，光线好的时候，我带你去拍照。
shì a búguò bié dānxīn lǎolao jiā hěn wēnnuǎn děng yǔ tíng le guāngxiàn hǎo de shíhou wǒ dài nǐ qù pāizhào · Yes, loads. But don't worry, Grandma's house is nice and warm. When the rain stops and the light's good, I'll take you out for photos.

write it trace the grey, then write your own







good to know · Weather reports love formal words: 降水 precipitation, 升温 temperatures rising, 夜间 overnight. In conversation people just say 下雨, 变暖, 晚上. 整整 stresses a full amount: 整整三天 three whole days, 整整一个小时 a full hour. 准 "accurate" is also an adverb, "certainly, bound to": 明天准下雨 it's bound to rain tomorrow, 他准会来 he's sure to come.

Forecast, sky and storm: now you can plan your day out, and pass the news on to your friends.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 24 mission: lost in the old town

Follow a whole story of getting lost, asking the way and sheltering from a storm.

Directions, travel and weather all come together the moment you wander off the map.

chapter 1 the train to grandma's

anna 你听，车厢里在广播。
nǐ tīng chēxiāng lǐ zài guǎngbō · Listen, there's an announcement in the carriage.

xiaoming 我给你读一读：
wǒ gěi nǐ dú yi du · Let me read it to you:

xiaoming “各位乘客：本次列车即将到达县城站，请带好行李，从车厢的前门下车。据天气预报，今天傍晚当地有暴雨，夜间降水较多，明天开始升温。山区的路一旦下雨，就会很滑，请大家注意安全。下车以后，或是坐长途车，或是坐出租车，都可以前往城区。祝大家一路顺风！”
gèwèi chéngkè běn cì lièchē jíjiāng dàodá xiàn chéng zhàn qǐng dài hǎo xíngli cóng chēxiāng de qián mén xià chē jù tiānqì yùbào jīntiān bàngwǎn dāngdì yǒu bàoyǔ yèjiān jiàngshuǐ jiào duō míngtiān kāishǐ shēngwēn shānqū de lù yídàn xià yǔ jiù huì hěn huá qǐng dàjiā zhùyì ānquán xià chē yǐhòu huòshì zuò chángtú chē huòshì zuò chūzūchē dōu kěyǐ qiánwǎng chéngqū zhù dàjiā yílù shùnfēng · “Dear passengers: this train will shortly arrive at the county town. Please take all your luggage and leave by the front door of the carriage. According to the forecast, there will be heavy rain locally this evening, with a lot of rainfall overnight, and temperatures rising from tomorrow. Once it rains, the mountain roads become slippery: please take care. After you get off, you can reach the town centre either by long-distance bus or by taxi. Have a good trip!”

anna 这次行程真顺利。谢谢你替我抢到了票，假期期间的票太难买了。
zhè cì xíngchéng zhēn shùnlì xièxie nǐ tì wǒ qiǎng dào le piào jiàqī qījiān de piào tài nán mǎi le · This trip has gone so smoothly. Thanks for grabbing me a ticket: tickets in the holidays are so hard to get.

xiaoming 不客气。往返一共四百块，比坐飞机便宜多了。今年来这儿的游客较去年多了很多。
búkèqi wǎngfǎn yígòng sìbǎi kuài bǐ zuò fēijī piányi duō le jīnnián lái zhèr de yóukè jiào qùnián duō le hěn duō · No problem. It's four hundred return, much cheaper than flying. Far more tourists are coming here this year than last year.

anna 我同你们一起来，真幸运。上次我坐飞机回英国，过海关排了一个小时的队，还倒了三天时差。
wǒ tóng nǐmen yìqǐ lái zhēn xìngyùn shàng cì wǒ zuò fēijī huí Yīngguó guò hǎiguān pái le yí gè xiǎoshí de duì hái dǎo le sān tiān shíchā · I'm so lucky to be coming with you. Last time I flew back to the UK, I queued an hour at customs and had three days of jet lag.

little sister 这次考试我也过了关，所以妈妈才让我来玩！
zhè cì kǎoshì wǒ yě guò le guān suǒyǐ māma cái ràng wǒ lái wán · I got through my exams this time too, so that's why Mum let me come!

little sister 这是我首次坐这么快的列车！我长大了或是当飞行员，或是当乘务员。
zhè shì wǒ shǒucì zuò zhème kuài de lièchē wǒ zhǎng dà le huòshì dāng fēixíngyuán huòshì dāng chéngwùyuán · It's my first time on such a fast train! When I grow up, I'll be either a pilot or a flight attendant.

xiaoming 你上次还说要当医生呢。这条铁路以前主要用来运东西，县里的东西现在也主要用铁路运输。
nǐ shàng cì hái shuō yào dāng yīshēng ne zhè tiáo tiělù yǐqián zhǔyào yònglái yùn dōngxi xiàn lǐ de dōngxi xiànzài yě zhǔyào yòng tiělù yùnshū · Last time you said you wanted to be a doctor. This railway used to be mainly for freight, and the county still moves most of its goods by rail.

anna 我们先去姥姥家，随后去老城区，好吗？
wǒmen xiān qù lǎolao jiā suíhòu qù lǎo chéngqū hǎo ma · Shall we go to Grandma's first, and the old town after that?

xiaoming 好。我们的假期延长了两天，时间够了。明天还可以去登山。
hǎo wǒmen de jiàqī yáncháng le liǎng tiān shíjiān gòu le míngtiān hái kěyǐ qù dēng shān · Sure. We've added two days to our holiday, so there's plenty of time. Tomorrow we can climb the mountain too.

chapter 2 a walk in the old town

little sister 安娜姐姐，哥哥要替姥姥做饭，我们俩去老城区走走吧！
Ānnà jiějie gēge yào tì lǎolao zuòfàn wǒmen liǎ qù lǎo chéngqū zǒu zou ba · Anna, my brother's cooking for Grandma. Let's go and wander round the old town, just us two!

anna 好啊！据说老城区的胡同特别有意思。
hǎo a jùshuō lǎo chéngqū de hútòng tèbié yǒu yìsi · Great! I hear the lanes in the old town are really interesting.

little sister 对。老城区位于县城的中心，从这儿步行二十分钟就到了。
duì lǎo chéngqū wèiyú xiàn chéng de zhōngxīn cóng zhèr bùxíng èrshí fēnzhōng jiù dào le · They are. The old town is in the centre of the county town, a twenty-minute walk from here.

anna 那我们沿着河边走过去吧，我想看看风景。这里是你妈妈的故乡吧？这个地区真漂亮。
nà wǒmen yán zhe hé biān zǒu guoqu ba wǒ xiǎng kàn kan fēngjǐng zhèlǐ shì nǐ māma de gùxiāng ba zhège dìqū zhēn piàoliang · Then let's walk there along the river. I'd like to see the view. This is your mum's home town, isn't it? What a beautiful area.

little sister 对。我们这个省份有很多山区，这个县离省会有三个小时。很多海外游客也来这儿游览。
duì wǒmen zhège shěngfèn yǒu hěn duō shānqū zhège xiàn lí shěnghuì yǒu sān gè xiǎoshí hěn duō hǎiwài yóukè yě lái zhèr yóulǎn · Yes. Our province has lots of mountains, and this county is three hours from the provincial capital. Lots of visitors from abroad come to tour here too.

anna 你看，那个旅行社带着一群欧洲人，还有几个从非洲来访问的学生。
nǐ kàn nàge lǚxíngshè dài zhe yì qún Ōuzhōu rén hái yǒu jǐ gè cóng Fēizhōu lái fǎngwèn de xuéshēng · Look, that travel agency has a group of Europeans, and some students visiting from Africa.

little sister 他们当中有人还会说中文呢！
tāmen dāngzhōng yǒu rén hái huì shuō Zhōngwén ne · Some of them even speak Chinese!

anna 这个区域四处都是老房子，没有一座大厦。
zhège qūyù sìchù dōu shì lǎo fángzi méiyǒu yí zuò dàshà · There are old houses everywhere in this area, and not one tower block.

little sister 对，这一带不能盖高楼。房子外部很旧，里头却很漂亮，内部都装修过。
duì zhè yídài bù néng gài gāo lóu fángzi wàibù hěn jiù lǐtou què hěn piàoliang nèibù dōu zhuāngxiū guo · Right: you can't build tall buildings round here. The outsides of the houses are old, but they're lovely inside: the insides have all been done up.

little sister 不过天气预报说傍晚可能有雨，我们早一点儿返回。
búguò tiānqì yùbào shuō bàngwǎn kěnéng yǒu yǔ wǒmen zǎo yìdiǎnr fǎnhuí · But the forecast says it might rain this evening, so let's come back early.

anna 没问题，四点以前一定回来。
méi wèntí sì diǎn yǐqián yídìng huilai · No problem. We'll be back by four for sure.

chapter 3 lost in the lanes

anna 这些胡同怎么都一样？我们走着走着就不知道在哪儿了。
zhèxiē hútòng zěnme dōu yíyàng wǒmen zǒu zhe zǒu zhe jiù bù zhīdào zài nǎr le · Why do all these lanes look the same? We just kept walking, and now we've no idea where we are.

little sister 我们好像一直在绕，你看，我们背后就是刚才那家小商店。
wǒmen hǎoxiàng yìzhí zài rào nǐ kàn wǒmen bèihòu jiùshì gāngcái nà jiā xiǎo shāngdiàn · We seem to be going round in circles: look, the little shop from before is right behind us.

little sister 我也不认识路了。我看看手机上的位置……糟了，手机快没电了！
wǒ yě bú rènshi lù le wǒ kàn kan shǒujī shàng de wèizhì zāo le shǒujī kuài méi diàn le · I don't know the way either. Let me check my location on my phone... Oh no, my battery's nearly dead!

anna 别着急，我们问问路人吧。不过胡同里行人很少。
bié zháojí wǒmen wèn wen lùrén ba búguò hútòng lǐ xíngrén hěn shǎo · Don't worry, let's ask someone. Though there aren't many people about in the lanes.

little sister 那位阿姨说，朝南走，到了大路再往右走。
nà wèi āyí shuō cháo nán zǒu dào le dà lù zài wǎng yòu zǒu · That lady says to head south, then turn right when we get to the main road.

anna 可是哪边是南啊？四周都是房子，太阳也看不见。
kěshì nǎ biān shì nán a sìzhōu dōu shì fángzi tàiyáng yě kàn bújiàn · But which way is south? There are houses all around and we can't even see the sun.

little sister 哈哈，我们还是请一个当地人带我们出去吧。那位大爷说：“你们跟着我走吧！”
hā hā wǒmen háishi qǐng yí gè dāngdì rén dài wǒmen chūqù ba nà wèi dàye shuō nǐmen gēn zhe wǒ zǒu ba · Ha ha, we'd better ask a local to lead us out. That old man says, “Follow me!”

chapter 4 the storm

anna 天怎么突然暗了？天空一下子变暗了，光线这么差，我什么都看不清楚。
tiān zěnme tūrán àn le tiānkōng yíxiàzi biàn àn le guāngxiàn zhème chà wǒ shénme dōu kàn bu qīngchu · Why has it suddenly gone dark? The sky went dark all at once: the light is so poor I can't see a thing.

little sister 下雨了！快，我们进这家小店躲一躲。
xià yǔ le kuài wǒmen jìn zhè jiā xiǎo diàn duǒ yi duo · It's raining! Quick, let's shelter in this little shop.

anna 雨这么大，衣服都湿了。真可怕！你的包这么沉，我替你拿吧。
yǔ zhème dà yīfu dōu shī le zhēn kěpà nǐ de bāo zhème chén wǒ tì nǐ ná ba · It's pouring, and we're soaked. How awful! Your bag is so heavy: let me carry it.

little sister 据说这里的天气很怪，中午很热，半夜却冷得水都冻住了。今年雨水也特别多。
jùshuō zhèlǐ de tiānqì hěn guài zhōngwǔ hěn rè bànyè què lěng de shuǐ dōu dòng zhù le jīnnián yǔshuǐ yě tèbié duō · They say the weather here is strange: hot at noon, but so cold in the middle of the night that the water freezes. And there's been a lot of rain this year.

little sister 我给哥哥打个电话吧。哥哥，我们迷路了，现在在一家小店里躲雨。
wǒ gěi gēge dǎ gè diànhuà ba gēge wǒmen mílù le xiànzài zài yì jiā xiǎo diàn lǐ duǒ yǔ · I'll call my brother. Hi, it's me. We got lost, and now we're sheltering in a little shop.

xiaoming 你们在什么位置？把店的名字告诉我，我开车过来接你们。
nǐmen zài shénme wèizhì bǎ diàn de míngzi gàosu wǒ wǒ kāichē guòlái jiē nǐmen · Where are you? Tell me the name of the shop and I'll drive over and pick you up.

little sister 店的名字叫“老王饺子”。
diàn de míngzi jiào lǎo Wáng jiǎozi · It's called “Old Wang's Dumplings”.

xiaoming 我知道那儿，距姥姥家不远。这场雨准要下一整夜。路很滑，山上的雾也越来越大，你们别出来，我十分钟就到。
wǒ zhīdào nàr jù lǎolao jiā bù yuǎn zhè chǎng yǔ zhǔn yào xià yì zhěng yè lù hěn huá shān shàng de wù yě yuè lái yuè dà nǐmen bié chūlái wǒ shí fēnzhōng jiù dào · I know it, it's not far from Grandma's. This rain is sure to go on all night. The roads are slippery and the fog on the hill is getting thicker, so stay inside. I'll be there in ten minutes.

chapter 5 home at last

xiaoming 快上车，系好安全带。
kuài shàng chē jì hǎo ānquándài · Quick, get in and fasten your seat belts.

anna 谢谢你下这么大的雨还来接我们。
xièxie nǐ xià zhème dà de yǔ hái lái jiē wǒmen · Thanks for coming to get us in all this rain.

xiaoming 前面那条路堵了。听说刚才出了一起交通事故，两辆车撞了。
qiánmiàn nà tiáo lù dǔ le tīngshuō gāngcái chū le yì qǐ jiāotōng shìgù liǎng liàng chē zhuàng le · The road ahead is jammed. Apparently there's been an accident: two cars crashed.

anna 是车祸吗？严重吗？是不是有人超速？
shì chēhuò ma yánzhòng ma shì bu shì yǒu rén chāosù · A crash? Is it serious? Was someone speeding?

xiaoming 还好，没人受伤。一辆车倒在路边，挡住了一半的路，车辆只能慢慢通行。那个车主刚拿到驾照，驾驶经验太少了。
hái hǎo méi rén shòushāng yí liàng chē dǎo zài lùbiān dǎng zhù le yíbàn de lù chēliàng zhǐ néng màn màn tōngxíng nàge chēzhǔ gāng ná dào jiàzhào jiàshǐ jīngyàn tài shǎo le · Luckily nobody's hurt. One car is on its side by the road, blocking half of it, so the traffic can only get through slowly. That car's owner has only just got his licence: he hasn't much driving experience.

little sister 刚才车站门口人群特别挤，大家都冲进去躲雨。
gāngcái chēzhàn ménkǒu rénqún tèbié jǐ dàjiā dōu chōng jinqu duǒ yǔ · There was such a crush at the station entrance just now: everyone rushed in out of the rain.

xiaoming 我们绕一下，走另一条路。我这一路上几乎没移动，在路上停留了半个小时，汽油也快没了。
wǒmen rào yíxià zǒu lìng yì tiáo lù wǒ zhè yílù shàng jīhū méi yídòng zài lùshang tíngliú le bàn gè xiǎoshí qìyóu yě kuài méi le · Let's go round another way. I've barely moved the whole way, I was stuck for half an hour, and I'm nearly out of petrol.

xiaoming 雨太大，我只能缓慢行驶。我把车停在靠近家门的地下车库里吧。
yǔ tài dà wǒ zhǐ néng huǎnmàn xíngshǐ wǒ bǎ chē tíng zài kàojìn jiā mén de dìxià chēkù lǐ ba · The rain's so heavy I can only go slowly. I'll park in the underground garage near the house.

little sister 哥哥，我们今天在胡同里整整走了两个小时！
gēge wǒmen jīntiān zài hútòng lǐ zhěngzhěng zǒu le liǎng gè xiǎoshí · We walked round those lanes for two whole hours today!

xiaoming 哈哈，老城区的路线连本地人都会迷路。下个月县里要开通一条新的长途车路线，以后来这儿就方便了。
hā hā lǎo chéngqū de lùxiàn lián běndì rén dōu huì mílù xià gè yuè xiàn lǐ yào kāitōng yì tiáo xīn de chángtú chē lùxiàn yǐhòu lái zhèr jiù fāngbiàn le · Ha ha, even the locals get lost in the old town. Next month the county is opening a new long-distance bus route, so it'll be easier to get here.

anna 回到家里真温暖。在乡下住几天真舒服，我喜欢乡村生活。下次我一定先在地图上看好路线。
huí dào jiā lǐ zhēn wēnnuǎn zài xiāngxià zhù jǐ tiān zhēn shūfu wǒ xǐhuan xiāngcūn shēnghuó xià cì wǒ yídìng xiān zài dìtú shàng kàn hǎo lùxiàn · It's so cosy to be back. A few days in the countryside are lovely: I like village life. Next time I'll check the route on a map first.

little sister 明天我们或是去山上，或是去河边，我都愿意！
míngtiān wǒmen huòshì qù shān shàng huòshì qù hé biān wǒ dōu yuànyì · Tomorrow we can go up the mountain or down to the river: I'm happy either way!

xiaoming 不过一旦下雨，山路就很危险。
búguò yídàn xià yǔ shān lù jiù hěn wēixiǎn · But once it rains, the mountain road gets dangerous.

anna 据预报，明天开始升温，准是个好天气。我跟着你们走就行！
jù yùbào míngtiān kāishǐ shēngwēn zhǔn shì gè hǎo tiānqì wǒ gēn zhe nǐmen zǒu jiù xíng · According to the forecast it starts warming up tomorrow, so it's bound to be a lovely day. I'll just follow you two!

Lost, soaked and rescued: you just followed a whole adventure in Chinese, from the first step to a warm house.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 25 i don't feel well

Say where it hurts and how you feel, and guess what's wrong: "it seems…", "as if…".

When you're ill in a new country, explaining your symptoms clearly matters a lot.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
似乎	sìhū	it seems, apparently	他今天似乎不太高兴。 He doesn't seem very happy today.
仿佛	fǎngfú	as if, as though	他高兴得仿佛年轻了十岁。 He was so happy he looked ten years younger.
着凉	zháoliáng	to catch a chill	晚上别开着窗户睡觉，小心着凉。 Don't sleep with the window open, or you'll catch a chill.
流感	liúgǎn	flu	最近很多人得{de2}了流感。 Lots of people have had the flu lately.
疼痛	téngtòng	pain; aching	这种药可以缓解疼痛。 This medicine can relieve the pain.
胃	wèi	stomach	我胃不舒服，不想吃东西。 My stomach isn't right. I don't feel like eating.
腰	yāo	waist; lower back	坐了一天，我的腰好疼。 After sitting all day, my lower back really hurts.
牙齿	yáchǐ	teeth	每天都要刷牙，保护好你的牙齿。 Brush every day and look after your teeth.
嘴巴	zuǐba	mouth	张{=to open}开嘴巴，我看看。 Open your mouth and let me have a look.
背	bèi	the back; to recite	我的背{bei4-5}有点儿疼。 My back hurts a bit.
手指	shǒuzhǐ	finger	我切菜的时候切到了手指。 I cut my finger while chopping vegetables.
肌肉	jīròu	muscle	跑完步以后，腿上的肌肉很疼。 After the run, my leg muscles ache.
人体	réntǐ	the human body	水对人体非常重要。 Water is vital to the human body.
大脑	dànǎo	brain	睡觉的时候，大脑也在工作。 Even while you sleep, your brain keeps working.
消化	xiāohuà	to digest	吃得太快，不好消化。 If you eat too fast, it's hard to digest.
过敏	guòmǐn	to be allergic	我对猫过敏，一见到猫就不舒服。 I'm allergic to cats. As soon as I'm near one I feel ill.
毛病	máobìng	fault; bad habit; illness	我的电脑又出毛病了。 My computer's playing up again.
病情	bìngqíng	patient's condition	医生说他的病情好多了。 The doctor says he's much better.

好转	hǎozhuǎn	to get better, improve	吃了药以后，她的病情慢慢好转了。 After the medicine she slowly got better.
缓解	huǎnjiě	to ease, relieve	散步可以缓解压力。 Going for a walk can relieve stress.
痛苦	tòngkǔ	painful; suffering	看到他这么痛苦，我心里也很难过。 Seeing him suffer like that makes me sad too.
伤	shāng	wound, injury; to hurt	他的腿受了伤，要休息一个月。 He hurt his leg and needs a month's rest.
疾病	jíbìng	disease (formal)	经常运动可以减少很多疾病。 Regular exercise can cut down many diseases.
呼吸	hūxī	to breathe	慢慢呼吸，别紧张。 Breathe slowly. Don't be nervous.
汗水	hànshuǐ	sweat	跑完步，他的衣服全是汗水。 After his run, his clothes were soaked with sweat.

pattern 似乎 it seems, 仿佛 as if

subject | **似乎 / 仿佛** | **what it looks like**

似乎 + verb or adjective is a guess from what you see: 他似乎很累 he seems tired. 仿佛 means "as if", comparing with something that isn't quite real: 我仿佛又活过来了 I felt as if I'd come back to life. 仿佛 is a little more literary.

你似乎瘦了，最近是不是太累了？ **nǐ sìhū shòu le zuìjìn shì bu shì tài lèi le** You seem to have lost weight. Have you been overdoing it?

他张开嘴巴，似乎想说什么。 **tā zhāng kāi zuǐba sìhū xiǎng shuō shénme** He opened his mouth as if to say something.

吃了药以后，我仿佛又活过来了。 **chī le yào yǐhòu wǒ fǎngfú yòu huó guolai le** After the medicine, I felt as if I'd come back to life.

dialogue you don't look well

manager lin 安娜，你今天似乎不太舒服，怎么了？
Ānnà nǐ jīntiān sìhū bú tài shūfu zěnme le · Anna, you don't seem very well today. What's up?

anna 上个周末在山区遇到了暴雨，好像着凉了。
shàng gè zhōumò zài shānqū yùdào le bàoyǔ hǎoxiàng zháoliáng le · I got caught in a storm up in the mountains last weekend. I think I caught a chill.

manager lin 是不是得了流感？最近公司里好几个人都病了。
shì bu shì dé le liúgǎn zuìjìn gōngsī lǐ hǎo jǐ gè rén dōu bìng le · Could it be flu? Several people here have been ill lately.

anna 应该不是。就是头疼，腰和背上的肌肉也有点儿疼。
yīnggāi bú shì jiùshì tóu téng yāo hé bèi shàng de jīròu yě yǒudiǎnr téng · I don't think so. Just a headache, and the muscles in my back ache a bit.

manager lin 呼吸有问题吗？胃难受吗？
hūxī yǒu wèntí ma wèi nánshòu ma · Any trouble breathing? Is your stomach upset?

anna 呼吸没问题，就是不想吃东西。昨天晚上衣服上全是汗水，今天好一些了。
hūxī méi wèntí jiùshì bù xiǎng chī dōngxi zuótiān wǎnshang yīfu shàng quán shì hànshuǐ jīntiān hǎo yìxiē le · Breathing's fine, I just don't feel like eating. Last night I was drenched in sweat, but today I'm a bit better.

manager lin 我这儿有缓解疼痛的药，你先吃一片。
wǒ zhèr yǒu huǎnjiě téngtòng de yào nǐ xiān chī yí piàn · I've got something for the pain here. Take one for now.

anna 谢谢！我一忙起来就忘了吃饭，这是我的老毛病了。
xièxie wǒ yì máng qǐlai jiù wàng le chī fàn zhè shì wǒ de lǎo máobìng le · Thanks! Whenever I'm busy I forget to eat. It's an old bad habit of mine.

manager lin 人体需要休息，大脑也一样。你或是回家休息，或是去医院看看，今天别工作了。
réntǐ xūyào xiūxi dànǎo yě yíyàng nǐ huòshì huí jiā xiūxi huòshì qù yīyuàn kàn kan jīntiān bié gōngzuò le · The body needs rest, and so does the brain. Either go home and rest or see a doctor. No more work today.

anna 谢谢林经理，那我先回家了。
xièxie Línjīnglǐ nà wǒ xiān huí jiā le · Thank you, Manager Lin. I'll head home, then.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

似
sì
to seem, like

佛
fú
faint, blurred (in this word)

胃
wèi
stomach

good to know · Say where it hurts with place + 疼: 头疼, 腰疼, 胃疼. 疼痛 is the formal noun you'll see on medicine boxes. 背 has two readings: bèi is your back (背疼), bēi is carrying on your back (背包).

Head, back, stomach or breathing: now you can tell people exactly how you feel.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 26 at the hospital

Get through a hospital visit: register, explain the problem, follow the doctor, and say “it hurts like mad!”.

Chinese hospitals have their own routine: register first, then see the doctor, then pay and pick up your medicine.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
挂号	guàhào	to register (at hospital)	去医院看病，要先挂号。 At the hospital, you register first.
门诊	ménzhěn	outpatient (clinic)	这家{=(measure word)}医院的门诊每天都有很多人。 This hospital’s outpatient clinic is busy every day.
急诊	jízhěn	emergency (room)	他半夜发高烧，我们只好去看急诊。 He had a high fever in the night, so we had to go to A&E.
救护车	jiùhùchē	ambulance	快叫救护车！ Quick, call an ambulance!
抢救	qiǎngjiù	to give emergency treatment	医生们正在抢救病人。 The doctors are fighting to save the patient.
紧急	jǐnjí	urgent, emergency	遇到紧急情况，请打120。 In an emergency, call 120.
病房	bìngfáng	(hospital) ward	他住在三楼的病房。 He’s in a ward on the third floor.
手术	shǒushù	operation, surgery	手术很成功，你放心吧。 The operation went well. Don’t worry.
诊断	zhěnduàn	to diagnose	医生诊断她得{de2}了流感。 The doctor diagnosed her with flu.
治疗	zhìliáo	to treat; treatment	这种病要治疗一个月。 This illness needs a month of treatment.
医疗	yīliáo	medical (care)	这个城市的医疗条件很好。 Medical care in this city is very good.
医学	yīxué	medicine (the science)	她大学学的是医学。 She studied medicine at university.
药品	yàopǐn	medicines, drugs	药品要放在孩子拿不到的地方。 Keep medicines out of children’s reach.
药物	yàowù	medication	有些药物不能和牛奶一起吃。 Some medications shouldn’t be taken with milk.
中药	zhōngyào	Chinese (herbal) medicine	中药很苦，可是姥姥很喜欢。 Chinese medicine is bitter, but Grandma swears by it.
中医	zhōngyī	Chinese medicine; TCM doctor	他腰疼，去看了中医。 His back hurt, so he went to a Chinese medicine doctor.

伤害	shānghài	to hurt, harm	吸烟会伤害身体。 Smoking harms your health.
不得了	bùdéliǎo	terrible!; extremely	不得了，孩子发高烧了！ Oh no, the child's got a high fever!
预防	yùfáng	to prevent	多洗手可以预防流感。 Washing your hands often helps prevent flu.
伸	shēn	to stretch out	请把手伸出来。 Please hold out your hand.
摸	mō	to touch, feel	妈妈摸了摸我的头，说：“有点儿发烧。” Mum felt my forehead and said, "You've got a bit of a temperature."
抽	chōu	to draw (blood); to take out	明天早上要抽血，今天晚上别吃东西。 You're having a blood test tomorrow morning, so don't eat tonight.
用力	yònglì	to use force, push hard	别太用力，慢慢来。 Don't push too hard. Take it slowly.
握	wò	to hold, grip	他一直握着我的手。 He held my hand the whole time.
扶	fú	to support with the hand	你扶着我，我自己能走。 Just hold on to me. I can walk by myself.

pattern 不得了: how awful! / extremely

adjective or feeling | 得 | 不得了

On its own, 不得了！ is an alarm: "Oh no, this is serious!". After an adjective or a feeling verb + 得, it means "extremely": 疼得不得了 hurts terribly, 高兴得不得了 over the moon. In speech, 死了 does the same job: 累死了, 疼死了.

不得了，大白不见了！ **bùdéliǎo Dàbái bújiàn le** Oh no, Dabai's gone missing!

听到这个消息，她高兴得不得了。 **tīng dào zhège xiāoxi tā gāoxìng de bùdéliǎo** When she heard the news, she was over the moon.

今天热得不得了，我们别出门了。 **jīntiān rè de bùdéliǎo wǒmen bié chūmén le** It's incredibly hot today. Let's stay in.

我妹妹学医学，每天忙得不得了。 **wǒ mèimei xué yīxué měi tiān máng de bùdéliǎo** My sister studies medicine and she's run off her feet every day.

dialogue a&e with zhao yang

anna 李医生！我扶着赵阳过来了。他拍东西的时候摔倒了，手疼得不得了。
Lǐyīshēng wǒ fú zhe ZhàoYáng guòlái le tā pāi dōngxi de shíhou shuāi dǎo le shǒu téng de bùdéliǎo · Dr Li! I've brought Zhao Yang in. He fell over while filming, and his hand hurts terribly.

dr li 别着急。挂号了吗？门诊已经下班了，急诊在这边。来，把手伸出来，我看看。
bié zháojí guàhào le ma ménzhěn yǐjīng xiàbān le jízhěn zài zhèbiān lái bǎ shǒu shēn chulai wǒ kàn kan · Don't worry. Have you registered? Outpatients has closed, so A&E is this way. Come on, hold out your hand and let me see.

zhao yang 哎呀，疼死了！您轻一点儿。
āiyā téng sǐ le nín qīng yìdiǎnr · Ow, that's agony! Gently, please.

dr li 我摸一下。这里疼吗？用力握一下我的手。
wǒ mō yíxià zhèlǐ téng ma yònglì wò yíxià wǒ de shǒu · Let me feel it. Does this hurt? Squeeze my hand, hard.

zhao yang 握不了，一用力就疼。
wò bu liǎo yí yònglì jiù téng · I can't. It hurts as soon as I squeeze.

dr li 据我的经验，没有什么大问题，不用做手术。
jù wǒ de jīngyàn méiyǒu shénme dà wèntí búyòng zuò shǒushù · In my experience, it's nothing serious. No need for surgery.

anna 太好了！我还以为要叫救护车呢。
tài hǎo le wǒ hái yǐwéi yào jiào jiùhùchē ne · Thank goodness! I thought we were going to need an ambulance.

zhao yang 要抽血吗？我最怕抽血了。
yào chōu xiě ma wǒ zuì pà chōu xiě le · Do I need a blood test? I hate having blood taken.

dr li 不用。我给你开一些药物，再加一点儿中药。这些药品按时吃，这几天别用这只手。
búyòng wǒ gěi nǐ kāi yìxiē yàowù zài jiā yìdiǎnr zhōngyào zhèxiē yàopǐn ànshí chī zhè jǐ tiān bié yòng zhè zhī shǒu · No. I'll give you some medication and a little Chinese medicine. Take them on time, and don't use that hand for a few days.

zhao yang 谢谢李医生！以后拍东西的时候，我得小心一点儿了。
xièxie Lǐyīshēng yǐhòu pāi dōngxi de shíhou wǒ děi xiǎoxīn yìdiǎnr le · Thank you, Dr Li! I'll have to be more careful when I'm filming.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

治
zhì
to govern; to treat, cure

疗
liáo
to heal

防
fáng
to guard against



抽
chōu
to draw (blood); to take out

good to know · In a Chinese hospital you usually 挂号 (register, often on an app), see the doctor, pay, then collect your medicine at the pharmacy window. 死 after an adjective is a very common spoken "extremely": 累死了 I'm dead tired, 饿死了 I'm starving. It's casual, not rude.

From the registration desk to the doctor's words, a hospital visit in Chinese is no longer scary.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 27 sleep & stress

Talk about sleep, stress and mood, and say exactly how much: rather, especially, extremely, too.

Long hours and late nights are a real topic among young workers in Chinese cities.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
熬夜	áoyè	to stay up late	我昨天熬夜工作，今天特别累。 I stayed up late working yesterday and I'm shattered today.
失眠	shīmián	to be unable to sleep	压力太大的时候，我常常失眠。 When I'm under a lot of stress, I often can't sleep.
睡眠	shuìmián	sleep (noun)	良好的睡眠对身体很重要。 Good sleep is important for your health.
心理	xīnlǐ	psychology; the mind	运动对心理健康也有好处。 Exercise is good for your mental health too.
精力	jīnglì	energy	孩子们的精力真好，玩了一天也不累。 Kids have so much energy. They play all day and never get tired.
体力	tǐlì	physical strength	爬山很需要体力。 Climbing mountains takes a lot of stamina.
过于	guòyú	too, overly	你过于担心了，一切都会好的。 You worry too much. Everything will be fine.
相当	xiāngdāng	quite, fairly; to match	这个问题相当难。 This question is pretty difficult.
格外	géwài	especially, all the more	雨后的空气格外新鲜。 The air is especially fresh after the rain.
极其	jíqí	extremely	这件事极其重要。 This matter is extremely important.
过度	guòdù	excessive, over-	过度工作对身体不好。 Overwork is bad for your health.
过分	guòfèn	going too far, excessive	你这样说太过分了！ That's going too far!
程度	chéngdù	degree, extent, level	你的中文已经达到很高的程度了。 Your Chinese has reached a very high level.
心态	xīntài	attitude, mindset	心态好的人，压力也小一些。 People with a good attitude feel less stressed.
情绪	qíngxù	mood, emotions	他最近情绪不太好。 He's been in a low mood lately.
平静	píngjìng	calm, peaceful	听了这首歌，我的心慢慢平静下来。 Listening to this song, I slowly calmed down.
定期	dìngqī	regular, at fixed times	我们应该定期检查身体。 We should have regular check-ups.
持续	chíxù	to continue, last	这种情况已经持续两个星期了。 It's been like this for two weeks now.

缺乏	quēfá	to lack, be short of	他最近缺乏睡眠，总是很累。 He's short of sleep lately and always tired.
足够	zúgòu	enough	每天要有足够的睡眠。 You need enough sleep every day.
充足	chōngzú	plentiful, ample	这个房间阳光充足。 This room gets plenty of sunshine.
适当	shìdàng	suitable, appropriate	适当运动对身体有好处。 A sensible amount of exercise is good for you.
有益	yǒuyì	beneficial, good for	喝茶对身体有益。 Tea is good for you.
有害	yǒuhài	harmful	吸烟对身体有害。 Smoking is harmful to your health.
良好	liánghǎo	good, fine (formal)	良好的习惯要从小养成。 Good habits should start young.

pattern how much: 相当, 格外, 极其, 过于, 可

相当 / 格外 / 极其 / 过于 / 可 **adjective**

All go before an adjective. 相当 quite, rather; 格外 especially (more than usual); 极其 extremely (formal); 过于 too, overly (a criticism). Spoken 可 makes it strong: 可好吃了 so tasty!, 可不行 no way. 较 means "fairly" in writing: 较远.

今天格外冷，多穿一件衣服吧。 **jīntiān géwài lěng duō chuān yí jiàn yīfu ba** It's especially cold today. Put on an extra layer.

这个工作相当辛苦。 **zhège gōngzuò xiāngdāng xīnkǔ** This job is pretty tough.

你对自己的要求过于严格了。 **nǐ duì zìjǐ de yāoqiú guòyú yángé le** You're too hard on yourself.

这家店的菜可好吃了！ **zhè jiā diàn de cài kě hǎochī le** The food at this place is so good!

dialogue after class

teacher wang 安娜，你今天上课似乎有点儿累。
Ānnà nǐ jīntiān shàngkè sìhū yǒudiǎnr lèi · Anna, you seemed a bit tired in class today.

anna 王老师，公司最近特别忙，我每天都熬夜，晚上又失眠。这种情况已经持续两个星期了。
Wánglǎoshī gōngsī zuìjìn tèbié máng wǒ měi tiān dōu áoyè wǎnshang yòu shīmián zhè zhǒng qíngkuàng yǐjīng chíxù liǎng gè xīngqī le · Teacher Wang, work has been crazy lately. I stay up late every night and then I can't sleep. It's been going on for two weeks.

teacher wang 这样可不行！你已经累到这种程度了。一直缺乏睡眠，对身体和心理都有害。
zhèyàng kě bùxíng nǐ yǐjīng lèi dào zhè zhǒng chéngdù le yìzhí quēfá shuìmián duì shēntǐ hé xīnlǐ dōu yǒu hài · That won't do! Look how worn out you are. Going short of sleep all the time is bad for body and mind.

anna 我知道，可是我的情绪老是很紧张。躺在床上，大脑还在想工作。
wǒ zhīdào kěshì wǒ de qíngxù lǎoshì hěn jǐnzhāng tǎng zài chuáng shàng dànǎo hái zài xiǎng gōngzuò · I know, but I'm always on edge. Even lying in bed, my brain is still on work.

teacher wang 你对自己的要求太高了。适当放松一下，工作反而做得更好。
nǐ duì zìjǐ de yāoqiú tài gāo le shìdàng fàngsōng yíxià gōngzuò fǎnér zuò de gèng hǎo · You expect too much of yourself. Relax a little and you'll actually work better.

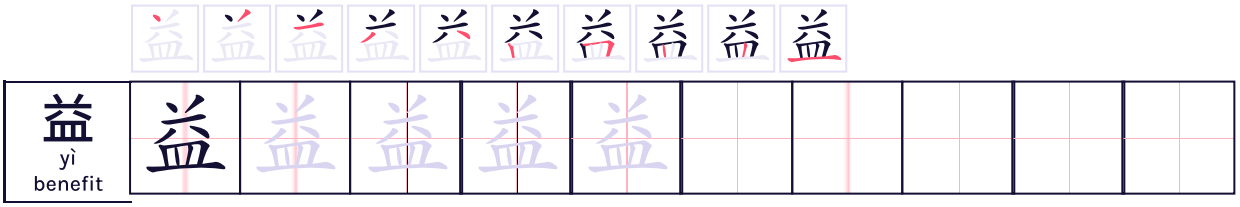
anna 您说得对。其实林经理的要求也不过分，是我自己太着急了。
nín shuō de duì qíshí Línjīnglǐ de yāoqiú yě bú guòfèn shì wǒ zìjǐ tài zháojí le · You're right. Actually, Manager Lin doesn't ask too much. I'm the one rushing.

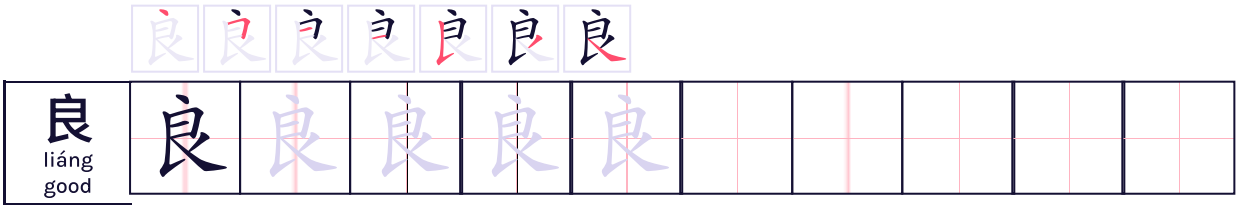
teacher wang 睡觉以前别看手机，听听音乐。每天要保证充足的睡眠，周末多去公园走走，对身体和心情都有益。
shuìjiào yǐqián bié kàn shǒujī tīng ting yīnyuè měi tiān yào bǎozhèng chōngzú de shuìmián zhōumò duō qù gōngyuán zǒu zou duì shēntǐ hé xīnqíng dōu yǒuyì · No phone before bed; listen to some music. Make sure you get plenty of sleep, and go for walks in the park at weekends. It's good for body and mood.

anna 我同小明也聊过，他说要定期运动。
wǒ tóng Xiǎomíng yě liáo guo tā shuō yào dìngqī yùndòng · I talked to Xiaoming about it too. He says I should exercise regularly.

teacher wang 对，心态最重要。只要心态良好，压力就没那么可怕了。
duì xīntài zuì zhòngyào zhǐyào xīntài liánghǎo yālì jiù méi nàme kěpà le · Exactly. Your attitude matters most. With a good attitude, stress isn't so scary.

write it trace the grey, then write your own





good to know · 过于 and 过分 both mean "too much", but 过分 is about behaviour going too far: 你太过分了！ That's out of line! 熬夜 is "staying up late", often for work or study. 熬 first meant simmering something for a long time.

Now you can talk honestly about stress and sleep, and give a friend some kind, sensible advice.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 28 keeping fit

Make a fitness plan, give tips on doing it right, and warn “do this, otherwise…”.

Morning runs, park workouts and weight-loss apps are part of everyday life in Chinese cities.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
减肥	jiǎnféi	to lose weight	我想减肥，所以晚上不吃米饭了。 I want to lose weight, so I’ve stopped eating rice in the evening.
身材	shēncái	figure, build	他身材很高，很适合打篮球。 He’s tall, perfect for basketball.
姿势	zīshì	posture, position	你看书的姿势不对，对眼睛不好。 You’re reading in the wrong position. It’s bad for your eyes.
不然	bùrán	otherwise	快走吧，不然要迟到了。 Let’s go, or we’ll be late.
要不	yàobù	otherwise; how about	天气这么好，要不我们去爬山吧? It’s such lovely weather. How about we go hiking?
保持	bǎochí	to keep, maintain	他每天跑步，一直保持着好身材。 He runs every day and has always stayed in good shape.
维持	wéichí	to maintain, keep going	这些钱只{zhi3}够维持一个月的生活。 This money will only last a month.
防	fáng	to guard against	这件衣服可以防水。 This jacket is waterproof.
防止	fángzhǐ	to prevent	开车慢一点儿，防止发生事故。 Drive slowly to avoid accidents.
保	bǎo	to keep, protect; to promise	按时吃药，保你三天就好。 Take your medicine on time and I promise you’ll be fine in three days.
确保	quèbǎo	to ensure, make sure	出发以前要确保车里有足够的汽油。 Before you set off, make sure there’s enough petrol in the car.
守	shǒu	to guard, stay by; to keep	他每天守在病房里照顾妈妈。 He stays in the ward every day looking after his mum.
不良	bùliáng	bad, unhealthy	长期熬夜是一种不良习惯。 Staying up late all the time is a bad habit.
长期	chángqī	long-term	长期坐着工作，对腰不好。 Sitting at work for years is bad for your back.
短期	duǎnqī	short-term	这只{zhi3}是一个短期的计划。 This is only a short-term plan.
反复	fǎnfù	again and again; to recur	这个动作要反复练习。 You have to practise this move over and over.
连续	liánxù	in a row, continuous	他已经连续工作了十个小时。 He’s been working for ten hours straight.

抓	zhuā	to grab, catch; to scratch	孩子突然抓住了我的手。 The child suddenly grabbed my hand.
摇	yáo	to shake, rock	他摇了摇头，说：“我不去。” He shook his head and said, “I’m not going.”
挥	huī	to wave	她朝我挥了挥手。 She waved at me.
滚	gǔn	to roll	球滚到桌子下面去了。 The ball rolled under the table.
平衡	pínghéng	balance; balanced	工作和生活要保持平衡。 You need to keep a balance between work and life.
稳定	wěndìng	stable, steady	他的病情已经稳定了。 His condition is stable now.
力量	lìliàng	strength, power	这个练习可以让你的腿更有力量。 This exercise will make your legs stronger.
阶段	jiēduàn	stage, phase	这个阶段最重要的是休息。 At this stage, rest is what matters most.

pattern ……，不然 / 要不然……: otherwise

what to do ，不然 / 要不然 what will happen

First say what someone should do, then 不然 or 要不然 + the bad result if they don’t: 快走吧，不然会迟到. 要不 also works, and at the start of a sentence 要不 means “how about…?”: 要不我们一起去?

多穿一件衣服，不然会着凉的。 **duō chuān yí jiàn yīfu bùrán huì zháoliáng de** Put on another layer, or you’ll catch a chill.

我们得出发了，要不然会迟到。 **wǒmen děi chūfā le yào bùrán huì chídào** We have to go now, otherwise we’ll be late.

你最好去医院看看，不然病情会更严重。 **nǐ zuìhǎo qù yīyuàn kàn kan bùrán bìngqíng huì gèng yánzhòng** You’d better see a doctor, or it’ll get worse.

早上风大，戴上帽子防风，要不然会头疼。 **zǎoshang fēng dà dài shàng màozi fáng fēng yào bùrán huì tóu téng** It’s windy in the mornings. Wear a hat against the wind, or you’ll get a headache.

dialogue the morning run

xiaoming 安娜，我决定减肥了！我每天坐着工作，又有很多不良习惯，身材越来越差，再不运动就不得了了。

Ānnà wǒ juédìng jiǎnféi le wǒ měi tiān zuò zhe gōngzuò yòu yǒu hěn duō bùliáng xíguàn shēncái yuè lái yuè chà zài bú yùndòng jiù bùdéliǎo le · Anna, I've decided to lose weight! I sit at work all day, I've got loads of bad habits, and I'm getting more and more out of shape. If I don't start exercising, I'm in trouble.

anna 好啊！要不我们每天早上一起跑步？

hǎo a yàobù wǒmen měi tiān zǎoshang yìqǐ pǎobù · Great! How about we go running together every morning?

xiaoming 我们或是早上跑步，或是晚上去健身房，你选吧。

wǒmen huòshì zǎoshang pǎobù huòshì wǎnshang qù jiànshēnfáng nǐ xuǎn ba · We could either run in the morning or go to the gym in the evening. You choose.

anna 早上吧，空气好。不过你跑步的姿势得改一改：身体别摇来摇去，不然容易伤到腰。

zǎoshang ba kōngqì hǎo búguò nǐ pǎobù de zīshì děi gǎi yi gai shēntǐ bié yáo lái yáo qù bùrán róngyì shāng dào yāo · Mornings. The air's better. But you need to fix your running style: stop swaying about, or you'll hurt your back.

xiaoming 你看我这样对不对？手这样挥，身体保持平衡，腿上要有力量。

nǐ kàn wǒ zhèyàng duì bu duì shǒu zhèyàng huī shēntǐ bǎochí pínghéng tuǐ shàng yào yǒu lìliàng · Is this right? Swing the arms like this, keep the body balanced, and push with the legs.

anna 对！刚开始要确保速度稳定，别跑得太快。

duì gāng kāishǐ yào quèbǎo sùdù wěndìng bié pǎo de tài kuài · That's it! At first, make sure you keep a steady pace. Don't go too fast.

xiaoming 明白。第一个阶段先跑两公里，动作反复练习，以后再慢慢加。

míngbai dì yī gè jiēduàn xiān pǎo liǎng gōnglǐ dòngzuò fǎnfù liànxí yǐhòu zài màn màn jiā · Got it. Stage one: two kilometres, practising the moves again and again, then slowly build up.

anna 一旦养成了习惯，就不会觉得辛苦了。

yídàn yǎngchéng le xíguàn jiù bú huì juéde xīnkǔ le · Once it's a habit, it won't feel like hard work.

xiaoming 那你得每天来叫我起床，要不然我肯定起不来！

nà nǐ děi měi tiān lái jiào wǒ qǐchuáng yào bùrán wǒ kěndìng qǐ bu lái · Then you'll have to come and wake me up every day, or I'll never get up!

anna 没问题！我每天七点在你家楼下守着，保你起得来！

méi wèntí wǒ měi tiān qī diǎn zài nǐ jiā lóu xià shǒu zhe bǎo nǐ qǐ de lái · No problem! I'll be waiting outside your building at seven every day. I promise you'll get up!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

势
shì
position; force

挥
huī
to wave

good to know · 保持 and 维持 both mean "keep". 保持 is keeping something good (保持好身材); 维持 is keeping something going, often with effort (维持生活). Many Chinese parks are full at dawn: people run, dance, practise tai chi and walk backwards for their health.

A plan, a warning and a promise: you're ready to be someone's workout buddy in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 29 feeling good

Talk about feelings, faces and courage, and say “however hard it is, still…”.

Encouraging a friend, or telling your own story of a hard time, is real, deep conversation.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
乐观	lèguān	optimistic	她是一个很乐观的人。 She’s a very optimistic person.
消极	xiāojí	negative, passive	别总是这么消极，事情没那么糟。 Don’t be so negative. Things aren’t that bad.
向上	xiàngshàng	upward; to strive upward	他是一个积极向上的年轻人。 He’s a positive, go-getting young man.
精神	jīngshen	spirit; lively, energetic	休息了一会儿，我又有精神了。 After a short rest, I feel full of beans again.
微笑	wēixiào	to smile; smile	她总是微笑着跟大家打招呼。 She always greets everyone with a smile.
眼泪	yǎnlèi	tears	听到这个消息，她流下了眼泪。 When she heard the news, she burst into tears.
泪	lèi	tear(s)	他笑得眼{=eye}里都有泪了。 He laughed so hard there were tears in his eyes.
泪水	lèishuǐ	tears	她的脸上全是泪水。 Her face was wet with tears.
表情	biǎoqíng	(facial) expression	看他的表情，就知道他很紧张。 One look at his face and you can tell he’s nervous.
脸色	liǎnsè	complexion; the look on a face	你脸色不太好，是不是不舒服? You look a bit pale. Are you feeling ill?
目光	mùguāng	gaze, look	妈妈的目光总是那么温暖。 Mum’s gaze is always so warm.
敏感	mǐngǎn	sensitive	他对别人的看法很敏感。 He’s very sensitive to what other people think.
情感	qínggǎn	emotion, feelings	这个故事里有很深的情感。 There’s deep feeling in this story.
克服	kèfú	to overcome	他克服了很多困难，终于成功了。 He overcame lots of difficulties and finally made it.
勇气	yǒngqì	courage	说出自己的想法需要勇气。 It takes courage to say what you really think.
坚强	jiānqiáng	strong (in spirit), tough	她是一个很坚强的女孩子。 She’s a very strong girl.
艰苦	jiānkǔ	hard, tough (conditions)	他小时候的生活很艰苦。 He had a hard life as a child.
承受	chéngshòu	to bear, endure	他承受了很大的压力。 He’s been under enormous pressure.

自觉	zìjué	self-motivated; aware	孩子们很自觉，每天自己做作业。 The children are very self-motivated and do their homework on their own every day.
决心	juéxīn	determination; to resolve	他下决心每天早上跑步。 He's made up his mind to run every morning.
期待	qīdài	to look forward to	我很期待下{=next}个月的旅行。 I'm really looking forward to next month's trip.
强烈	qiángliè	strong, intense	下午的阳光很强烈，出门要注意。 The afternoon sun is fierce. Take care when you go out.
明显	míngxiǎn	obvious, clear	吃了药以后，他明显好多了。 Since taking the medicine he's clearly much better.
犹豫	yóuyù	to hesitate; hesitant	别犹豫了，快决定吧！ Stop dithering and make up your mind!
惊喜	jīngxǐ	pleasant surprise	生日那天，朋友们给了我一个大惊喜。 On my birthday my friends gave me a big surprise.

pattern 再……也……: however ..., still ...

再 | adjective or verb | ，(subject) 也 | still the same

再 + adjective sets the extreme case, and 也 says nothing changes: 再累也要吃饭 however tired you are, you still have to eat. You can also say 再 + adjective + 的 + noun: 再难的事 however hard a thing.

工作再忙，我也会给妈妈打电话。 **gōngzuò zài máng wǒ yě huì gěi māma dǎ diànhuà** However busy work gets, I still call my mum.

天气再冷，他也坚持每天跑步。 **tiānqì zài lěng tā yě jiānchí měi tiān pǎobù** However cold it is, he still runs every day.

再好的朋友，也会有矛盾。 **zài hǎo de péngyou yě huì yǒu máodùn** Even the best of friends fall out sometimes.

dialogue professor sun's story

zhao yang 孙教授，大家都说您特别乐观。您年轻的时候生活很艰苦吗？
Sūnjiàoshòu dàjiā dōu shuō nín tèbié lèguān nín niánqīng de shíhou shēnghuó hěn jiānkǔ ma · Professor Sun, everyone says you're a real optimist. Was life hard when you were young?

professor sun 是啊。那时候家里条件很差，可是再苦再累，我也没放弃学习。
shì a nà shíhou jiā lǐ tiáojiàn hěn chà kěshì zài kǔ zài lèi wǒ yě méi fàngqì xuéxí · It was. My family had very little, but however hard and tiring it got, I never gave up studying.

anna 您那时候有没有犹豫过？
nín nà shíhou yǒu méiyǒu yóuyù guo · Did you ever have doubts back then?

professor sun 当然犹豫过。不过我下了决心，一定要考上大学。
dāngrán yóuyù guo búguò wǒ xià le juéxīn yídìng yào kǎo shàng dàxué · Of course. But I made up my mind that I would get into university.

zhao yang 据说您第一次没考上？
jùshuō nín dì yī cì méi kǎo shàng · Apparently you didn't pass the first time?

professor sun 对。那天我一个人流了很多泪，可是第二天又有精神了。人要坚强，也要学会承受失败。
duì nà tiān wǒ yí gè rén liú le hěn duō lèi kěshì dì èr tiān yòu yǒu jīngshen le rén yào jiānqiáng yě yào xué huì chéngshòu shībài · That's right. I cried a lot that day, on my own, but the next day I had my spirit back. You have to be strong, and learn to take failure.

anna 您说这些的时候，表情那么平静，目光那么温暖。
nín shuō zhèxiē de shíhou biǎoqíng nàme píngjìng mùguāng nàme wēnnuǎn · When you talk about it, your face is so calm and your eyes so warm.

professor sun 每个人都有消极的时候。只要积极向上，困难总能克服。
měi gè rén dōu yǒu xiāojí de shíhou zhǐyào jījí xiàngshàng kùnnan zǒng néng kèfú · Everyone has low moments. As long as you stay positive and keep aiming higher, you can always get through.

zhao yang 最后，您对年轻人有什么期待？
zuìhòu nín duì niánqīng rén yǒu shénme qīdài · Finally, what do you hope for from young people?

professor sun 我期待他们自觉地学习，快乐地生活。
wǒ qīdài tāmen zìjué de xuéxí kuàilè de shēnghuó · I hope they'll learn because they want to, and live happily.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

神
shen
spirit

泪
lèi
tear(s)

艰
jiān
difficult



承 chéng to bear, to hold up										

good to know · 积极 and 消极 are opposites: positive and negative, in mood or in action. 积极向上 is a common way to praise someone's outlook. 精神 jīngshén is spirit; 精神 jīngshen (light second syllable) is an adjective, "lively, full of energy": 你今天真精神!

Courage, tears and smiles: you can now listen to someone's life story, and tell your own.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 30 mission: a week of good habits

Follow a whole week of good intentions, a bad day, a small accident and a happy ending.

Health, sleep, stress and feelings all mix together in a normal week, so here they come together in one story.

chapter 1 monday: the plan

anna 从今天开始，我们保持一个星期的好习惯，怎么样？
cóng jīntiān kāishǐ wǒmen bǎochí yí gè xīngqī de hǎo xíguàn zěnmeyàng · From today, let's keep up good habits for a whole week. What do you say?

xiaoming 好！第一，每天十一点以前睡觉，不熬夜。
hǎo dì yī měi tiān shíyī diǎn yǐqián shuìjiào bù áoyè · Deal! One: in bed by eleven every night, no late nights.

anna 第二，睡觉以前不看手机，要不然我又会失眠。
dì èr shuìjiào yǐqián bú kàn shǒujī yàobùrán wǒ yòu huì shīmián · Two: no phone before bed, otherwise I'll be awake all night again.

xiaoming 第三，早上一起跑步，再累也要去。
dì sān zǎoshang yìqǐ pǎobù zài lèi yě yào qù · Three: run together every morning, however tired we are.

anna 第四，按时吃饭，别再忘了。这是我的老毛病。
dì sì ànshí chī fàn bié zài wàng le zhè shì wǒ de lǎo máobìng · Four: eat at proper times and don't forget. That's my old weakness.

xiaoming 第五，改掉不良的饮食习惯。减肥不是短期的事，好身材要长期维持。
dì wǔ gǎi diào bùliáng de yǐnshí xíguàn jiǎnféi bú shì duǎnqī de shì hǎo shēncái yào chángqī wéichí · Five: drop bad eating habits. Losing weight isn't a quick fix: a good figure takes keeping up over the long term.

anna 你看，李医生的医院在网上发了一篇文章，我读给你听：
nǐ kàn Lǐyīshēng de yīyuàn zài wǎngshang fā le yì piān wénzhāng wǒ dú gěi nǐ tīng · Look, Dr Li's hospital has put an article online. Let me read it to you:

anna "睡眠对人体极其重要。长期缺乏睡眠，大脑和心理都会受到伤害，情绪也不稳定。医生建议：每天保证充足的睡眠，定期运动，但是不要过度；运动以前要做准备活动，防止受伤。只要心态良好，压力就不会持续太久。"
shuìmián duì réntǐ jíqí zhòngyào chángqī quēfá shuìmián dànǎo hé xīnlǐ dōu huì shòudào shānghài qíngxù yě bù wěndìng yīshēng jiànyì měi tiān bǎozhèng chōngzú de shuìmián dìngqī yùndòng dànshì búyào guòdù yùndòng yǐqián yào zuò zhǔnbèi huódòng fángzhǐ shòushāng zhǐyào xīntài liánghǎo yālì jiù bú huì chíxù tài jiǔ · "Sleep is extremely important for the human body. Long-term lack of sleep harms both the brain and the mind, and makes your mood unstable. Doctors advise: get enough sleep every day and exercise regularly, but don't overdo it; warm up before exercise to prevent injury. As long as your attitude is good, stress won't last long."

xiaoming 说得对。我们每天跑步要确保足够的时间。要不我们晚上互相发消息，看谁先睡？
shuō de duì wǒmen měi tiān pǎobù yào quèbǎo zúgòu de shíjiān yàobù wǒmen wǎnshang hùxiāng fā xiāoxi kàn shéi xiān shuì · Quite right. We need to make sure we leave enough time for running every day. How about we message each other at night, to see who goes to bed first?

xiaoming 一旦有人做不到，就请大家吃饭！
yídàn yǒu rén zuò bu dào jiù qǐng dàjiā chī fàn · If anyone breaks the rules, they buy everyone dinner!

chapter 2 wednesday: a hard day

manager lin 安娜，这个工作明天就要，你今天晚上能不能加班？
Ānnà zhège gōngzuò míngtiān jiù yào nǐ jīntiān wǎnshang néng bu néng jiābān · Anna, this job is due tomorrow. Could you stay late tonight?

anna 林经理，我这个星期在保持好的睡眠习惯。我明天早上七点来，可以吗？
Línjīnglǐ wǒ zhège xīngqī zài bǎochí hǎo de shuìmián xíguàn wǒ míngtiān zǎoshang qī diǎn lái kěyǐ ma · Manager Lin, I'm keeping good sleep habits this week. Could I come in at seven tomorrow morning?

manager lin 七点？你似乎是认真的。
qī diǎn nǐ sìhū shì rènzhēn de · Seven? You seem to be serious.

anna 是的。上次连续熬夜，我的精力明显差了很多，效果反而不好。今天我的体力和精神都相当好。
shì de shàng cì liánxù áoyè wǒ de jīnglì míngxiǎn chà le hěn duō xiàoguǒ fǎnér bù hǎo jīntiān wǒ de tǐlì hé jīngshen dōu xiāngdāng hǎo · I am. Last time I stayed up night after night, I had much less energy, and the work actually got worse. Today I've got plenty of energy, body and mind.

manager lin 看你的表情，似乎真的很开心。你这几天仿佛年轻了五岁！
kàn nǐ de biǎoqíng sìhū zhēn de hěn kāixīn nǐ zhè jǐ tiān fǎngfú niánqīng le wǔ suì · From the look on your face, you really do seem happy. These last few days you look five years younger!

manager lin 以前让你加班到半夜，是我过分了。加班到这种程度，对谁都没有好处。
yǐqián ràng nǐ jiābān dào bànyè shì wǒ guòfèn le jiābān dào zhè zhǒng chéngdù duì shéi dōu méiyǒu hǎochù · Making you work until midnight before was too much of me. Overtime to that degree is no good for anyone.

anna 您别这么说。是我对自己要求过于严格了。
nín bié zhème shuō shì wǒ duì zìjǐ yāoqiú guòyú yángé le · Please don't say that. I was the one being too strict with myself.

manager lin 你说得对。只要明天十点以前做好就行，不然今天你又要熬夜了。
nǐ shuō de duì zhǐyào míngtiān shí diǎn yǐqián zuò hǎo jiù xíng bùrán jīntiān nǐ yòu yào áoyè le · Fair enough. As long as it's done before ten tomorrow: otherwise you'll be up all night again.

anna 谢谢林经理！我保你十点以前做好。
xièxie Línjīnglǐ wǒ bǎo nǐ shí diǎn yǐqián zuò hǎo · Thank you, Manager Lin! I promise it'll be done before ten.

chapter 3 friday: a small accident

xiaoming 哎呀！我的脚疼得不得了！疼死了！

āiyā wǒ de jiǎo téng de bùdéliǎo téng sǐ le · Ow! My foot really hurts! It's killing me!

anna 别动，我扶着你。你刚才跑得太快了，地上又滑。

bié dòng wǒ fú zhe nǐ nǐ gāngcái pǎo de tài kuài le dì shàng yòu huá · Don't move, I've got you. You were running too fast just now, and the ground's slippery.

xiaoming 我太想快一点儿减肥了。刚才我挥着手跑，身体摇得很厉害，一下子就滚到了草地上。

wǒ tài xiǎng kuài yìdiǎnr jiǎnféi le gāngcái wǒ huī zhe shǒu pǎo shēntǐ yáo de hěn lìhai yíxiàzi jiù gǔn dào le cǎodì shàng · I wanted to lose weight too quickly. I was running with my arms swinging, my body rocking all over the place, and suddenly I rolled onto the grass.

anna 你出了好多汗水，呼吸也很快。别用力，把脚伸出来我看看。

nǐ chū le hǎoduō hànshuǐ hūxī yě hěn kuài bié yònglì bǎ jiǎo shēn chulai wǒ kàn kan · You're dripping with sweat and breathing fast. Don't push: stretch your foot out and let me see.

xiaoming 我是不是得叫救护车？

wǒ shì bu shì děi jiào jiùhùchē · Do I need an ambulance?

anna 没那么紧急。你抓住我的手，慢慢站起来，保持平衡。我们去医院让李医生看看吧，不然我不放心。

méi nàme jǐnjí nǐ zhuā zhù wǒ de shǒu màn màn zhàn qǐlai bǎochí pínghéng wǒmen qù yīyuàn ràng Lǐyīshēng kàn kan ba bùrán wǒ bú fàngxīn · It's not that urgent. Grab my hand, stand up slowly and keep your balance. Let's get your dad to look at it at the hospital, or I'll worry.

anna 我们先去门诊挂号吧。

wǒmen xiān qù ménzhěn guàhào ba · Let's register at outpatients first.

dr li 我摸一下……没什么大问题，是肌肉受了一点儿伤，不用做手术，也不用住病房。休息三天就好了。

wǒ mō yíxià méi shénme dà wèntí shì jīròu shòu le yìdiǎnr shāng búyòng zuò shǒushù yě búyòng zhù bìngfáng xiūxi sān tiān jiù hǎo le · Let me feel... It's nothing serious: you've hurt a muscle a little. No operation, no ward. Rest for three days and you'll be fine.

xiaoming 爸爸，吃药会不会让我胃不舒服？

bàba chī yào huì bu huì ràng wǒ wèi bù shūfu · Dad, will the medicine upset my stomach?

dr li 不会，饭后吃，好消化。你的病情不严重，过两天疼痛就会缓解。

bú huì fàn hòu chī hǎo xiāohuà nǐ de bìngqíng bù yánzhòng guò liǎng tiān téngtòng jiù huì huǎnjiě · No, take it after meals and it goes down easily. Your condition isn't serious: in a couple of days the pain will ease.

dr li 你跑步的姿势有问题，腰上用的力量太大了。这个阶段先慢慢走，反复练习，等稳定了再跑。运动要适当，过度运动对身体有害。

nǐ pǎobù de zīshì yǒu wèntí yāo shàng yòng de lìliàng tài dà le zhège jiēduàn xiān màn màn zǒu fǎnfù liànxí děng wěndìng le zài pǎo yùndòng yào shìdàng guòdù yùndòng duì shēntǐ yǒu hài · Your running posture is the problem: you put too much force through your lower back. For this stage, walk slowly, practise again and again, and run again once you're steady. Exercise in moderation: too much is bad for you.

dr li 我再给你开一点儿中药。中医也说，预防比治疗更重要，预防疾病，要从每天的小事开始。

wǒ zài gěi nǐ kāi yìdiǎnr zhōngyào zhōngyī yě shuō yùfáng bǐ zhìliáo gèng zhòngyào yùfáng jíbìng yào cóng měi tiān de xiǎo shì kāishǐ · I'll give you a little Chinese medicine as well. Chinese medicine says it too: prevention is better than cure, and preventing illness starts with small things.

anna 这三天我来看着他，不让他跑步！

zhè sān tiān wǒ lái kān zhe tā bú ràng tā pǎobù · I'll keep watch on him for these three days and not let him run!

chapter 4 sunday: the result

ms zhang 来，吃饭吧！今天我做了很多蔬菜，又健康又好吃。
lái chī fàn ba jīntiān wǒ zuò le hěn duō shūcài yòu jiànkāng yòu hǎochī · Come and eat! I've made lots of vegetables today, healthy and delicious.

xiaoming 妈妈，我这个星期瘦了一公斤！
māma wǒ zhège xīngqī shòu le yì gōngjīn · Mum, I lost a kilo this week!

ms zhang 真的？你的脸色也明显好多了，格外有精神。你们这个星期真自觉！
zhēn de nǐ de liǎnsè yě míngxiǎn hǎo duō le géwài yǒu jīngshen nǐmen zhège xīngqī zhēn zìjué · Really? You look much better too, really full of life. You two have been so self-disciplined this week!

anna 这个星期我一次都没失眠，心情特别平静。一开始我还犹豫过，可是下了决心，再难也要坚持。
zhège xīngqī wǒ yí cì dōu méi shīmián xīnqíng tèbié píngjìng yì kāishǐ wǒ hái yóuyù guo kěshì xià le juéxīn zài nán yě yào jiānchí · I didn't have a single sleepless night this week, and I feel so calm. At first I had my doubts, but I made up my mind to keep going however hard it got.

xiaoming 不过我的脚受了伤，三天没跑步。受伤的时候我差点儿流眼泪，不过我很坚强。
búguò wǒ de jiǎo shòu le shāng sān tiān méi pǎobù shòushāng de shíhou wǒ chàdiǎnr liú yǎnlèi búguò wǒ hěn jiānqiáng · But I hurt my foot and missed three days of running. I nearly cried when it happened, but I was tough.

ms zhang 哈哈，你小时候打针也是这个表情。
hā hā nǐ xiǎoshíhou dǎzhēn yě shì zhège biǎoqíng · Ha ha, you pulled the same face when you had injections as a little boy.

dr li 运动对心理和身体都有益。你们的心态很乐观，这是最重要的。
yùndòng duì xīnlǐ hé shēntǐ dōu yǒuyì nǐmen de xīntài hěn lèguān zhè shì zuì zhòngyào de · Exercise is good for the mind and the body. You both have a positive attitude, and that's what matters most.

little sister 下个星期我也参加！我期待了很久了。
xià gè xīngqī wǒ yě cānjiā wǒ qīdài le hěn jiǔ le · Next week I'm joining in! I've been looking forward to it for ages.

anna 好啊！对了，阿姨，我给您准备了一个惊喜：这是我做的蛋糕，没有放糖。
hǎo a duì le āyí wǒ gěi nín zhǔnbèi le yí gè jīngxǐ zhè shì wǒ zuò de dàngāo méiyǒu fàng táng · Great! Oh, Auntie, I've got a surprise for you: a cake I made, with no sugar.

ms zhang 太好了！你看小明的目光，他早就想吃了。
tài hǎo le nǐ kàn Xiǎomíng de mùguāng tā zǎo jiù xiǎng chī le · Lovely! Look at the way Xiaoming is eyeing it: he's been dying to eat it.

anna 所以按我们的规定，今天小明请大家吃饭！
suǒyǐ àn wǒmen de guīdìng jīntiān Xiǎomíng qǐng dàjiā chī fàn · And by our rules, Xiaoming buys everyone dinner today!

ms zhang 哈哈，好！这顿饭就在家里吃吧。
hā hā hǎo zhè dùn fàn jiù zài jiā lǐ chī ba · Ha ha, fine! Then this dinner can be right here at home.

chapter 5 the next monday: on camera

zhao yang 安娜，听说你们完成了“好习惯一星期”，我想问你几个问题。
Ānnà tīngshuō nǐmen wánchéng le hǎo xíguàn yì xīngqī wǒ xiǎng wèn nǐ jǐ gè wèntí · Anna, I hear you two completed “a week of good habits”. I’d like to ask you a few questions.

anna 好啊。说真的，一开始我有点儿消极，觉得一个星期太长了。
hǎo a shuō zhēn de yì kāishǐ wǒ yǒudiǎnr xiāojí juéde yí gè xīngqī tài cháng le · Sure. Honestly, at first I was a bit negative: a week felt far too long.

zhao yang 什么时候最痛苦?
shénme shíhou zuì tòngkǔ · When was it hardest?

anna 星期三。工作压力相当大，我差点儿又熬夜。不过我克服了。
xīngqīsān gōngzuò yālì xiāngdāng dà wǒ chàdiǎnr yòu áoyè búguò wǒ kèfú le · Wednesday. The pressure at work was intense, and I nearly stayed up late again. But I got through it.

zhao yang 小明受伤的时候，你紧张吗?
Xiǎomíng shòushāng de shíhou nǐ jǐnzhāng ma · When Xiaoming got hurt, were you worried?

anna 紧张极了。我还以为要叫救护车，送他去急诊呢！后来李医生说没事，我高兴得流下了泪水。
jǐnzhāng jí le wǒ hái yǐwéi yào jiào jiùhùchē sòng tā qù jízhěn ne hòulái Lǐyīshēng shuō méishì wǒ gāoxìng de liú xià le lèishuǐ · Terribly. I thought we’d have to call an ambulance and rush him to A&E! When Dr Li said he was fine, I cried with relief.

zhao yang 最近流感很多，你没着凉吧?
zuìjìn liúgǎn hěn duō nǐ méi zháoliáng ba · There’s a lot of flu about. You haven’t caught a chill, have you?

anna 没有。以前我常常胃疼、腰疼，现在身体好多了。
méiyǒu yǐqián wǒ chángcháng wèi téng yāo téng xiànzài shēntǐ hǎo duō le · No. I used to get stomach aches and backache a lot, but I’m much healthier now.

zhao yang 哈哈，那就好。这次你学到了什么?
hā hā nà jiù hǎo zhè cì nǐ xué dào le shénme · Ha ha, good to hear. What have you learnt this time?

anna 好习惯需要勇气，也需要坚持。再忙也要睡好、吃好。
hǎo xíguàn xūyào yǒngqì yě xūyào jiānchí zài máng yě yào shuì hǎo chī hǎo · Good habits take courage, and they take staying power. However busy you are, sleep well and eat well.

zhao yang 最后，对看视频的朋友说一句吧。
zuìhòu duì kàn shìpín de péngyou shuō yí jù ba · Finally, say something to the people watching.

anna 大家要积极向上，微笑着面对每一天！
dàjiā yào jījí xiàngshàng wēixiào zhe miànduì měi yì tiān · Stay positive, everyone, and meet every day with a smile!

Plans, a bad day, a sore foot and a family dinner: a whole week of real life, in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 31 what's she like?

Describe someone's personality, strengths and quirks, and compare with "just like…".

Describing people well is how you talk about friends, family and colleagues, and how you understand gossip.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
个性	gèxìng	personality, character	她很有个性，从来不跟别人一样。 She has real character. She's never like everyone else.
善良	shànliáng	kind-hearted	他是一个很善良的人，总是帮助别人。 He's a kind man who's always helping others.
调皮	tiáopí	naughty, cheeky	这个孩子很调皮，一分钟也坐不住。 This kid is so cheeky he can't sit still for a minute.
大胆	dàdǎn	bold, daring	你大胆说吧，没关系。 Go on, speak up. It's fine.
胆小	dǎnxiǎo	timid, easily scared	我妹妹很胆小，晚上不敢一个人出门。 My little sister is timid and won't go out alone at night.
谨慎	jǐnshèn	careful, cautious	做这么重要的决定，要谨慎一点儿。 With such an important decision, be careful.
虚心	xūxīn	modest, open to advice	他很虚心，总是听别人的意见。 He's modest and always listens to other people's advice.
严肃	yánsù	serious, stern	王老师今天很严肃，大家都不敢说话。 Teacher Wang is very stern today. Nobody dares say a word.
真诚	zhēnchéng	sincere	谢谢你真诚的帮助。 Thank you for your heartfelt help.
主动	zhǔdòng	proactive, of one's own accord	他总是主动帮大家做事。 He always offers to help everyone.
独立	dúlì	independent	她十八岁就开始独立生活了。 She's lived on her own since she was eighteen.
成熟	chéngshú	mature; ripe	这两年他成熟了很多。 He's grown up a lot in the last two years.
傻	shǎ	silly, foolish	我真傻，又把钥匙忘在家里了。 How silly of me, I've left my keys at home again.
好奇	hàoqí	curious	孩子对什么都很好奇。 Children are curious about everything.
好	hào	to like, be fond of	这孩子好{hao4-5}学，什么都想知道。 This child loves learning and wants to know everything.
讲究	jiǎngjiu	particular about; refined	他吃饭很讲究，菜一定要新鲜。 He's fussy about food: it has to be fresh.

长处	chángchù	strong point	每个人都有自己的长处。 Everyone has their own strengths.
短处	duǎnchù	weak point	别总是看别人的短处。 Don't always look at other people's faults.
魅力	mèilì	charm, appeal	她笑起来特别有魅力。 She's especially charming when she smiles.
形象	xíngxiàng	image; vivid	王老师在我们心里的形象特别好。 Teacher Wang has a wonderful place in our hearts.
打扮	dǎban	to dress up	她今天打扮得很漂亮。 She's all dressed up and looks lovely today.
似的	shìde	as if, just like	他高兴得像孩子似的。 He was as happy as a child.
成长	chéngzhǎng	to grow up	父母都希望孩子健康成长。 All parents want their children to grow up healthy.
乐趣	lèqù	fun, delight	学中文给我带来了很多乐趣。 Learning Chinese has brought me so much fun.
敢于	gǎnyú	to dare to	年轻人要敢于尝试新的东西。 Young people should dare to try new things.

pattern 像……似的: just like, as if

像 | something | 似的 | (how)

像 + something + 似的 compares: just like, as if. It can describe a verb (跑得像风似的 runs like the wind) or a noun (像孩子似的笑容). 好像……似的 works too. 似的 is read shìde and is a little more spoken than 一样.

地上的雪像一条白色的被子似的。 **dì shàng de xuě xiàng yì tiáo báisè de bèizi shìde** The snow lies on the ground like a white quilt.

他今天打扮得特别帅，像要去见女朋友似的。 **tā jīntiān dǎban de tèbié shuài xiàng yào qù jiàn nǚpéngyou shìde** He's dressed up so smartly today, as if he's off to meet his girlfriend.

她好像什么都知道似的。 **tā hǎoxiàng shénme dōu zhīdào shìde** She acts as if she knows everything.

dialogue she's grown up

anna 阿姨，妹妹最近变化真大，像换了一个人似的。
āyí mèimei zuìjìn biànhuà zhēn dà xiàng huàn le yí gè rén shìde · Auntie, your daughter has changed so much lately. She's like a different person.

ms zhang 是啊。她小时候特别调皮，又胆小，一个人在家都害怕。
shì a tā xiǎoshíhou tèbié tiáopí yòu dǎnxiǎo yí gè rén zài jiā dōu hàipà · She has. As a little girl she was so cheeky, and timid too; she was scared to be home alone.

anna 现在她很独立，做什么都很主动，也特别好学。
xiànzài tā hěn dúlì zuò shénme dōu hěn zhǔdòng yě tèbié hào xué · Now she's independent, takes the lead in everything, and loves learning.

ms zhang 她现在对什么都好奇。上个星期还大胆地一个人去参加了一个比赛。
tā xiànzài duì shénme dōu hàoqí shàng gè xīngqī hái dàdǎn de yí gè rén qù cānjiā le yí gè bǐsài · She's curious about everything now. Last week she bravely entered a competition on her own.

anna 真厉害！我觉得她很有个性，也很有魅力。
zhēn lìhai wǒ juéde tā hěn yǒu gèxìng yě hěn yǒu mèilì · Amazing! I think she's got real character, and real charm.

ms zhang 老师说她在学校的形象很好。不过她有一个短处：吃东西太讲究，这个不吃，那个不吃。
lǎoshī shuō tā zài xuéxiào de xíngxiàng hěn hǎo búguò tā yǒu yí gè duǎnchù chī dōngxi tài jiǎngjiu zhège bù chī nàge bù chī · Her teachers say she has a great reputation at school. But she has one weakness: she's so fussy about food, won't eat this, won't eat that.

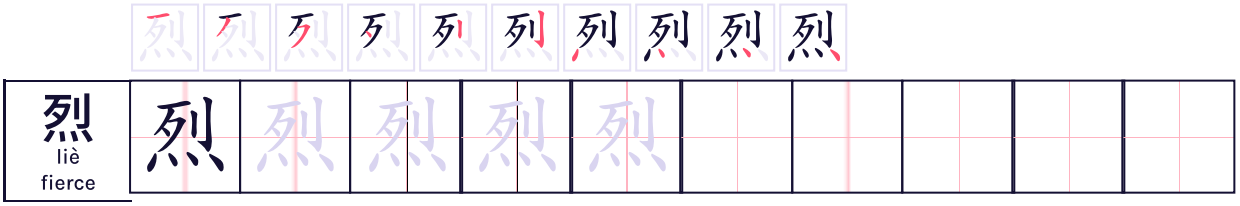
anna 哈哈，那也是一种个性啊。她还很虚心，也很真诚，我说什么她都认真听。
hā hā nà yě shì yì zhǒng gèxìng a tā hái hěn xūxīn yě hěn zhēnchéng wǒ shuō shénme tā dōu rènzhēn tīng · Ha ha, that's personality too! She's also open to advice, and so sincere. She listens properly to everything I say.

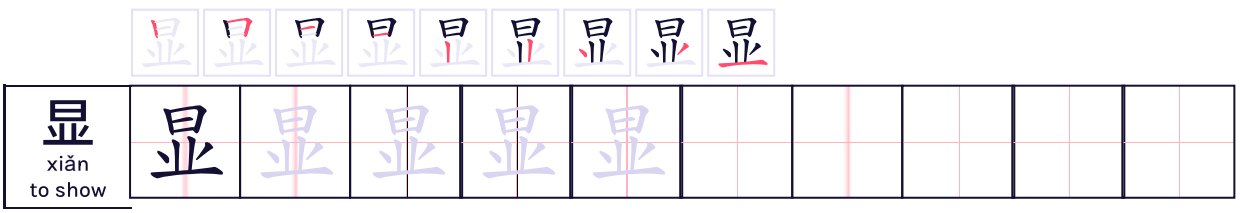
ms zhang 看着她一天一天成长，是我最大的乐趣。
kàn zhe tā yì tiān yì tiān chéngzhǎng shì wǒ zuì dà de lèqù · Watching her grow up day by day is my greatest joy.

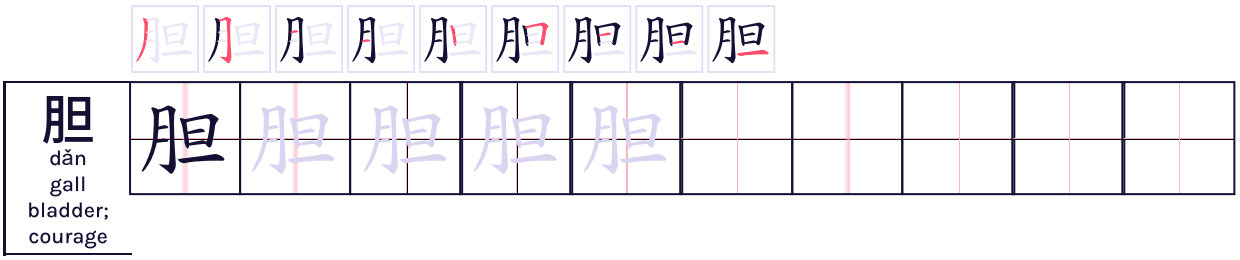
anna 她爸爸呢？
tā bàba ne · And her dad?

ms zhang 她爸爸看起来很严肃，其实最疼她了。
tā bàba kàn qǐlai hěn yánsù qíshí zuì téng tā le · Her dad looks stern, but he dotes on her more than anyone.

write it trace the grey, then write your own







胆
dǎn
gall bladder; courage



形
xíng
shape, form

good to know · Chinese puts courage in the gall bladder, 胆: 大胆 bold, 胆小 timid, 胆子大 brave. 好 hào (fourth tone) means “to like”: 好学 keen to learn, 好奇 curious. 好 hǎo means “good”.

Kind, cheeky, bold or fussy: now you can paint a real picture of the people in your life.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 32 good friends

Talk about friendship, trust and secrets, and say when neither choice feels right.

Good friends share news, worries and secrets, and sometimes there's no easy answer.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
伙伴	huǒbàn	partner, buddy	他是我小时候的好伙伴。 He was my best buddy when I was little.
人际	rénjì	interpersonal	好的人际关系让工作更轻松。 Good relationships with people make work easier.
信任	xìnrèn	to trust	朋友之间最重要的是信任。 Between friends, trust matters most.
秘密	mìmì	secret	这是我们俩的秘密，别告诉别人。 This is our secret. Don't tell anyone.
私人	sīrén	private, personal	这是我的私人问题，我不想说。 That's a personal matter. I'd rather not say.
密切	mìqiè	close (link, relations)	这两件事有密切的关系。 These two things are closely linked.
紧密	jǐnmì	close, tight-knit	我们一家人的关系很紧密。 Our family is very close.
深厚	shēnhòu	deep (friendship, feelings)	他们俩有深厚的友谊。 The two of them share a deep friendship.
碰见	pèngjiàn	to run into	我昨天在超市碰见了王老师。 I ran into Teacher Wang at the supermarket yesterday.
握手	wòshǒu	to shake hands	我们第一次见面的时候先握手。 When we first meet, we shake hands.
拥抱	yōngbào	to hug	好久不见，我们高兴地拥抱在一起。 We hadn't seen each other for ages, and we hugged happily.
合影	héyǐng	group photo; take one together	我们来合影吧！ Let's take a photo together!
相册	xiàngcè	photo album	这本相册里都是我小时候的照片。 This album is full of photos of me as a child.
对待	duìdài	to treat	他对待朋友非常真诚。 He's completely sincere with his friends.
反应	fǎnyìng	reaction; to react	听到这个消息，他一点儿反应也没有。 When he heard the news, he didn't react at all.
沉默	chénmò	silent; silence	他沉默了很久，才说出自己的想法。 He was silent for a long time before saying what he thought.
称赞	chēngzàn	to praise	老师称赞她中文说得好。 The teacher praised her good Chinese.

争	zhēng	to argue; to compete for	两个孩子在争一个玩具。 The two children are fighting over a toy.
低头	dītóu	to lower one's head	他不好意思地低头笑了。 He looked down with an embarrassed smile.
在乎	zàihu	to care about, mind	我不在乎别人怎么想。 I don't care what other people think.
单独	dāndú	alone, on one's own	我想单独跟你谈谈。 I'd like a word with you in private.
独自	dúzì	alone, by oneself	她独自在国外生活了三年。 She lived abroad on her own for three years.
不幸	bùxìng	unfortunate; misfortune	听到这个不幸的消息，大家都很难过。 Everyone was upset to hear the sad news.
遗憾	yíhàn	a pity; regret	没能去你的生日聚会，我很遗憾。 I'm so sorry I couldn't make your birthday party.
舍不得	shěbude	can't bear to (part with)	我舍不得离开这个城市。 I can't bear to leave this city.

pattern x也不是，y也不是: neither feels right

X 也不是， Y 也不是

Put two opposite actions in the frame and you're stuck: whatever you do feels wrong. 站也不是，坐也不是 can't stand still, can't sit down (so nervous). The two halves are often opposites: 去/不去, 说/不说, 哭/笑.

站也不是，坐也不是，他紧张得不得了。 **zhàn yě bú shì zuò yě bú shì tā jǐnzhāng de bùdéliǎo** He couldn't stand still or sit down; he was a bundle of nerves.

走也不是，留也不是，我真不知道怎么办。 **zǒu yě bú shì liú yě bú shì wǒ zhēn bù zhīdào zěnme bàn** Should I go or stay? I really don't know what to do.

他笑也不是，哭也不是。 **tā xiào yě bú shì kū yě bú shì** He didn't know whether to laugh or cry.

dialogue xiaoming's secret

xiaoming 安娜，我有一件私人的事，想单独告诉你。这是一个秘密。
Ānnà wǒ yǒu yí jiàn sīrén de shì xiǎng dāndú gàosu nǐ zhè shì yí gè mìmì · Anna, there's something personal I want to tell just you. It's a secret.

anna 什么秘密？看你的表情这么严肃。
shénme mìmì kàn nǐ de biǎoqíng zhème yánsù · What secret? You look so serious.

xiaoming 公司让我去海外工作一年。这是很好的机会，可是我舍不得家人和朋友。
gōngsī ràng wǒ qù hǎiwài gōngzuò yì nián zhè shì hěn hǎo de jīhuì kěshì wǒ shěbude jiārén hé péngyou · My company wants me to work abroad for a year. It's a great chance, but I can't bear to leave my family and friends.

anna 这是好消息啊！你家里人有什么反应？
zhè shì hǎo xiāoxi a nǐ jiā lǐ rén yǒu shénme fǎnyìng · That's great news! How did your family react?

xiaoming 我还没告诉他们。我妈妈听了肯定会先沉默，然后跟我争。说也不是，不说也不是。
wǒ hái méi gàosu tāmen wǒ māma tīng le kěndìng huì xiān chénmò ránhòu gēn wǒ zhēng shuō yě bú shì bù shuō yě bú shì · I haven't told them yet. My mum will go quiet first, then argue with me. I can't tell them, and I can't not tell them.

anna 你在乎他们的感受，这很好。不过一个人独自在海外，一年也不算长。
nǐ zàihu tāmen de gǎnshòu zhè hěn hǎo búguò yí gè rén dúzì zài hǎiwài yì nián yě bú suàn cháng · It's good that you care how they feel. But a year abroad on your own isn't that long.

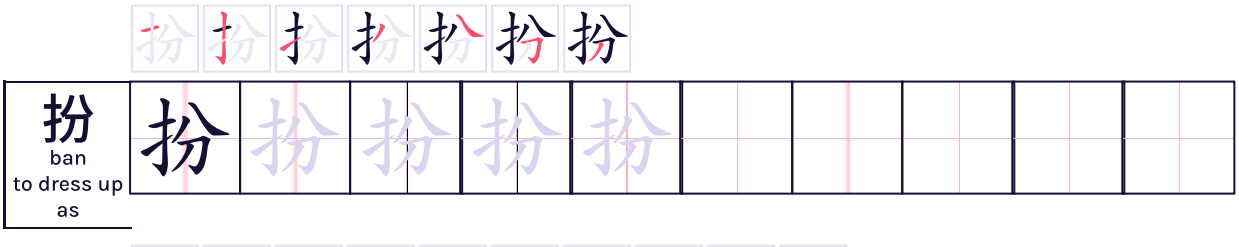
xiaoming 你说得对。你是我最好的伙伴，我们的关系这么密切，我当然要先问你。
nǐ shuō de duì nǐ shì wǒ zuìhǎo de huǒbàn wǒmen de guānxì zhème mìqiè wǒ dāngrán yào xiān wèn nǐ · You're right. You're my best mate and we're so close, of course I had to ask you first.

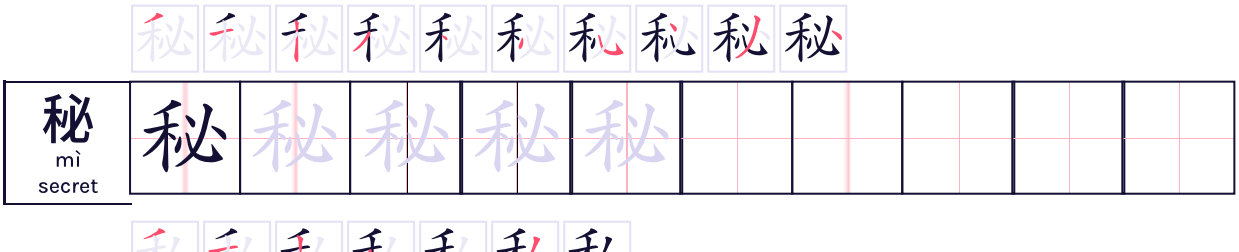
anna 我只是有点儿遗憾，以后不能常常见面了。
wǒ zhǐshì yǒudiǎnr yíhàn yǐhòu bù néng chángcháng jiànmiàn le · I'm just a bit sad we won't see each other so often.

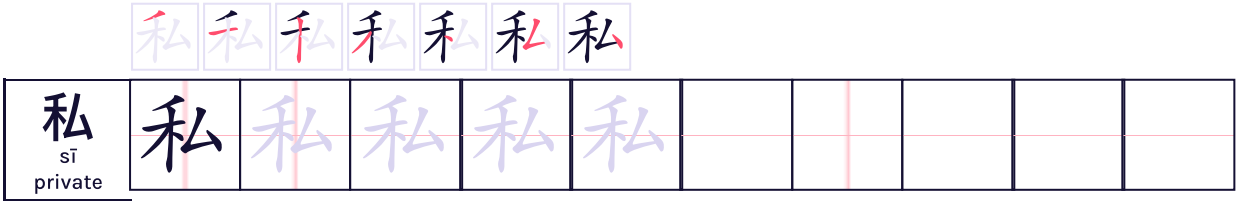
xiaoming 没关系，我们可以常常视频。现在大家的联系这么紧密，一年很快就过去了。
méi guānxi wǒmen kěyǐ chángcháng shìpín xiànzài dàjiā de liánxì zhème jǐnmì yì nián hěn kuài jiù guòqù le · Don't worry, we can video-call all the time. Everyone's so connected these days, a year will fly by.

anna 好！谢谢你这么信任我。来，我们拥抱一下，再合影！
hǎo xièxie nǐ zhème xìnrèn wǒ lái wǒmen yōngbào yíxià zài héyǐng · OK! Thanks for trusting me. Come here, a hug, then a photo!

write it trace the grey, then write your own









碰
pèng
to touch;
bump into

good to know · 舍不得 is “can’t bear to (let go)”: 舍不得走 can’t bear to leave, 舍不得花钱 can’t bear to spend. 舍得 is the opposite. 独自 and 单独 both mean “alone”. 独自 is doing it by yourself; 单独 is one to one, without others: 单独谈谈. 深 “deep” is also an adverb, “deeply, very”: 深受感动 deeply moved, 深受欢迎 very popular.

Secrets, trust and a hug: now you can be there for a friend in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 33 love & weddings

Talk about love, weddings and goodbyes, and tease or praise a friend: “you’re really something!”.

Weddings are huge family events in China, and you’ll need the right words for the couple.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
恋爱	liànài	to be in love; romance	他们恋爱了三年，今年结婚了。 They went out for three years and got married this year.
对象	duìxiàng	partner (to marry); target	你姐姐有对象了吗? Is your sister seeing anyone?
失恋	shīliàn	to have a broken heart	他失恋了，心情很不好。 He’s just been dumped and he’s feeling low.
分手	fēnshǒu	to break up; to part	他们上{=last}个月分手了。 They broke up last month.
分别	fēnbié	to part; separately	我们分别了十年，终于又见面了。 After ten years apart, we finally met again.
分离	fēnlí	to be separated	他不想和家人分离。 He doesn’t want to be apart from his family.
告别	gàobié	to say goodbye	走以前，他跟每个人都告别了。 Before he left, he said goodbye to everyone.
想念	xiǎngniàn	to miss (someone)	我很想念我的家人。 I really miss my family.
追求	zhuīqiú	to pursue, seek	每个人都在追求幸福。 Everyone is looking for happiness.
婚礼	hūnlǐ	wedding	他们的婚礼在下{=next}个月。 Their wedding is next month.
新郎	xīnláng	bridegroom	新郎今天特别帅。 The groom looks really handsome today.
新娘	xīnniáng	bride	新娘今天真漂亮。 The bride looks beautiful today.
离婚	líhūn	to divorce	他的父母很早就离婚了。 His parents divorced when he was young.
男子	nánzǐ	man (formal)	一名男子在路边帮助了那位老人。 A man helped an elderly person at the roadside.
女子	nǚzǐ	woman (formal)	她在女子一百米比赛中得{de2}了第一。 She won the women’s 100 metres.
热爱	rèài	to love deeply	他非常热爱自己的工作。 He absolutely loves his work.
热烈	rèliè	warm, enthusiastic	大家热烈欢迎新同事。 Everyone gave the new colleague a warm welcome.
珍惜	zhēnxī	to treasure, cherish	我们要珍惜在一起的时间。 We should treasure our time together.

愿	yuàn	to wish; to be willing	愿你们永远幸福！ May you be happy for ever!
愿望	yuànwàng	wish, hope	我的愿望是让父母过上好日子。 My wish is to give my parents a good life.
赠	zèng	to give (as a gift)	这是公司赠给大家的礼物。 This is a gift to everyone from the company.
赠送	zèngsòng	to present, give free	买两本书，赠送一个本子。 Buy two books and get a free notebook.
运气	yùnqi	luck	今天运气真好，一出门就打到了车。 I was so lucky today: I got a taxi the moment I stepped out.
命运	mìngyùn	fate, destiny	他相信自己能改变命运。 He believes he can change his destiny.
命	mìng	life; fate	是你救了我的命！ You saved my life!

pattern 真有你的！ you're really something!

真有 | 你 / 他 / 她 | 的!

真有你的！ reacts to something surprising someone did. It can be real admiration (you did it!) or friendly teasing (only you would do that!). Your tone and the situation tell which. Use 他 or 她 for someone else.

这么难的题你都会，真有你的！ **zhème nán de tí nǐ dōu huì zhēn yǒu nǐ de** You solved such a hard problem? You're amazing!

他一个人做了一桌子菜，真有他的！ **tā yí gè rén zuò le yì zhuōzi cài zhēn yǒu tā de** He cooked a whole table of dishes by himself. What a guy!

她居然忘了自己婚礼的时间，真有她的！ **tā jūrán wàng le zìjǐ hūnlǐ de shíjiān zhēn yǒu tā de** She actually forgot what time her own wedding was. Typical her!

他热爱音乐，一个人写了一百首歌，真有他的！ **tā rèài yīnyuè yí gè rén xiě le yìbǎi shǒu gē zhēn yǒu tā de** He loves music so much he wrote a hundred songs on his own. Incredible!

dialogue zhao yang's wedding

xiaoming 赵阳，恭喜恭喜！你今天真帅。
ZhàoYáng gōngxǐ gōngxǐ nǐ jīntiān zhēn shuài · Zhao Yang, congratulations! You look so handsome today.

zhao yang 谢谢！我紧张得不得了，昨天晚上都没睡好。
xièxie wǒ jǐnzhāng de bùdéliǎo zuótiān wǎnshang dōu méi shuì hǎo · Thanks! I'm incredibly nervous. I hardly slept last night.

anna 你们是怎么认识的？我们都很好奇。
nǐmen shì zěnme rènshi de wǒmen dōu hěn hàoqí · How did you two meet? We're all dying to know.

zhao yang 三年前我去她的故乡拍东西，她每天带我四处走走。后来我就开始追求她了。
sān nián qián wǒ qù tā de gùxiāng pāi dōngxi tā měi tiān dài wǒ sìchù zǒu zou hòulái wǒ jiù kāishǐ zhuīqiú tā le · Three years ago I went to film in her home town, and she showed me around every day. After that I started courting her.

xiaoming 真有你的！拍着拍着就有对象了。
zhēn yǒu nǐ de pāi zhe pāi zhe jiù yǒu duìxiàng le · Only you! Out filming one day, and suddenly you've got a girlfriend.

zhao yang 那时候她在海外读书，我们分离了两年。每次在机场分别，我们都特别想念对方。
nà shíhou tā zài hǎiwài dúshū wǒmen fēnlí le liǎng nián měi cì zài jīchǎng fēnbié wǒmen dōu tèbié xiǎngniàn duìfāng · Back then she was studying abroad, so we were apart for two years. Every time we said goodbye at the airport, we missed each other terribly.

anna 听说新娘还是女子足球队的？
tīngshuō xīnniáng hái shì nǚzǐ zúqiú duì de · I hear the bride plays in a women's football team?

zhao yang 对，她踢得比很多男子都好！
duì tā tī de bǐ hěn duō nánzǐ dōu hǎo · That's right, she plays better than lots of men!

xiaoming 这就是命运啊！你们要好好珍惜。这本相册是我们赠给你们的。
zhè jiùshì mìngyùn a nǐmen yào hǎohǎo zhēnxī zhè běn xiàngcè shì wǒmen zèng gěi nǐmen de · That's destiny! Treasure each other. This photo album is our present to you.

zhao yang 谢谢大家这么热烈地祝贺我们！我们也准备了一些小礼物，赠送给大家。我们的愿望是大家都幸福！
xièxie dàjiā zhème rèliè de zhùhè wǒmen wǒmen yě zhǔnbèi le yìxiē xiǎo lǐwù zèngsòng gěi dàjiā wǒmen de yuànwàng shì dàjiā dōu xìngfú · Thank you all for such warm congratulations! We've got some little gifts for everyone too. Our wish is for you all to be happy!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

舍
shě
to give up

念
niàn
to read aloud; to study



追 zhuī to chase, run after	追	追	追	追	追					

good to know · 对象 is everyday Chinese for a serious boyfriend or girlfriend, someone you might marry: 你有对象了吗？ At Chinese weddings, guests often give money in a red envelope (红包) rather than a present.

Love stories, weddings and warm wishes: you're ready for the happiest day in a friend's life.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 34 let's talk it through

Talk about how a conversation went: interrupting, expressing yourself, adding, summing up, and "it went on and on".

Meetings, phone calls and difficult talks are easier when you can describe and steer the conversation.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
沟通	gōutōng	to communicate	有问题要及时沟通。 If there's a problem, talk about it straight away.
交换	jiāohuàn	to exchange	我们交换一下电话号码吧。 Let's swap phone numbers.
谈话	tánhuà	to have a talk; a talk	林经理想找你谈话。 Manager Lin wants a word with you.
讲话	jiǎnghuà	speech, talk	他的讲话很短，但是很有意思。 His speech was short but really interesting.
表达	biǎodá	to express	我不知道怎么表达我的感谢。 I don't know how to say how grateful I am.
说服	shuōfú	to persuade	我终于说服了爸爸，让他少抽{=to smoke}烟。 I finally persuaded my dad to smoke less.
打断	dǎduàn	to interrupt	别打断我，让我说完。 Don't interrupt. Let me finish.
请求	qǐngqiú	to request; request	经理同意了我的请求。 The manager agreed to my request.
询问	xúnwèn	to enquire	有问题可以向工作人员询问。 If you have questions, ask a member of staff.
提起	tíqǐ	to mention, bring up	他从来没有提起过{guo}这件事。 He's never mentioned it.
语气	yǔqì	tone (of voice)	他说话的语气很不|客气。 His tone was really rude.
话题	huàtí	topic	我们换个话题吧。 Let's change the subject.
强调	qiángdiào	to stress, emphasise	老师强调了好几次：明天别迟到。 The teacher said it several times: don't be late tomorrow.
补充	bǔchōng	to add, supplement	我想补充一点{=point (in a talk)}。 I'd like to add one thing.
表明	biǎomíng	to make clear, show	这个结果表明，我们的方法是对的。 This result shows our method was right.
形容	xíngróng	to describe	这里的风景美得没法儿形容。 The scenery here is beautiful beyond words.
描述	miáoshù	to describe (in detail)	请你描述一下那个人的样子。 Please describe what that person looked like.
讲述	jiǎngshù	to tell, narrate	这部电影讲述了一个家庭的故事。 This film tells the story of a family.

生动	shēngdòng	vivid, lively	孙教授讲课讲得很生动。 Professor Sun's lectures are really lively.
传递	chuándì	to pass on, convey	音乐可以传递快乐。 Music can spread joy.
反映	fǎnyìng	to reflect; to report	我们把这个问题反映给了经理。 We raised the problem with the manager.
概括	gàikuò	to sum up	你能简单地概括一下吗? Could you briefly sum it up?
称为	chēngwéi	to be called, be known as	这条街被称为“美食街”。 This street is known as “Food Street”.
自身	zìshēn	oneself, itself	先找自身的问题，再|说别人。 Look at your own faults before talking about others.
舍得	shěde	to be willing to part with	你舍得把这么好的东西送人吗? Can you really bear to give something this nice away?

pattern 没a没b: no a, no b

没 A 没 B

没A没B is a set four-character frame, “with neither A nor B”, and it usually complains. 没完没了 never-ending, 没大没小 no respect for age (talking to elders like friends), 没日没夜 day and night without a break.

他们没日没夜地工作了一个星期。 **tāmen méi rì méi yè de gōngzuò le yí gè xīngqī** They worked day and night for a whole week.

这孩子跟老人说话没大没小的。 **zhè háizi gēn lǎorén shuōhuà méi dà méi xiǎo de** This kid talks to old people with no respect at all.

雨下得没完没了。 **yǔ xià de méi wán méi liǎo** The rain just won't stop.

dialogue after the meeting

anna 林经理，今天的会开了四个小时，对方的问题没完没了。
Línjīnglǐ jīntiān de huì kāi le sì gè xiǎoshí duìfāng de wèntí méi wán méi liǎo · Manager Lin, today's meeting went on for four hours. The client's questions were endless.

manager lin 是啊。不过对方愿意跟我们沟通，也表明他们很重视我们。
shì a búguò duìfāng yuànyì gēn wǒmen gōutōng yě biǎomíng tāmen hěn zhòngshì wǒmen · Yes. But the fact that they want to talk shows they take us seriously.

anna 可是他老是打断我，我想表达的意思一句也没说完。
kěshì tā lǎoshì dǎduàn wǒ wǒ xiǎng biǎodá de yìsi yí jù yě méi shuō wán · But he kept interrupting me. I never got to finish a single point.

manager lin 我注意到了。不过我们也要先想想自身的问题。下次你先简单地概括一下，再慢慢补充。
wǒ zhùyì dào le búguò wǒmen yě yào xiān xiǎng xiang zìshēn de wèntí xià cì nǐ xiān jiǎndān de gàikuò yíxià zài màn màn bǔchōng · I noticed. But let's look at our own side first. Next time, sum it up briefly first, then fill in the details.

anna 好的。还有，他说话的语气让我很不舒服。我说也不是，不说也不是，只好换了个话题。
hǎo de hái yǒu tā shuōhuà de yǔqì ràng wǒ hěn bù shūfu wǒ shuō yě bú shì bù shuō yě bú shì zhǐhǎo huàn le gè huàtí · OK. And his tone made me really uncomfortable. I didn't know whether to say something, so I just changed the subject.

manager lin 这种时候别着急，要强调我们的长处，用作品说服他。
zhè zhǒng shíhou bié zháojí yào qiángdiào wǒmen de chángchù yòng zuòpǐn shuōfú tā · At times like that, stay calm, stress our strengths, and win him over with our work.

anna 明白了。我会把今天的谈话写下来，把问题反映给大家。
míngbai le wǒ huì bǎ jīntiān de tánhuà xiě xialai bǎ wèntí fǎnyìng gěi dàjiā · Got it. I'll write up today's discussion and pass the issues on to the team.

manager lin 很好。其实你今天的讲话很生动，对方很满意。
hěn hǎo qíshí nǐ jīntiān de jiǎnghuà hěn shēngdòng duìfāng hěn mǎnyì · Good. Actually, your presentation today was really lively. The client was very happy.

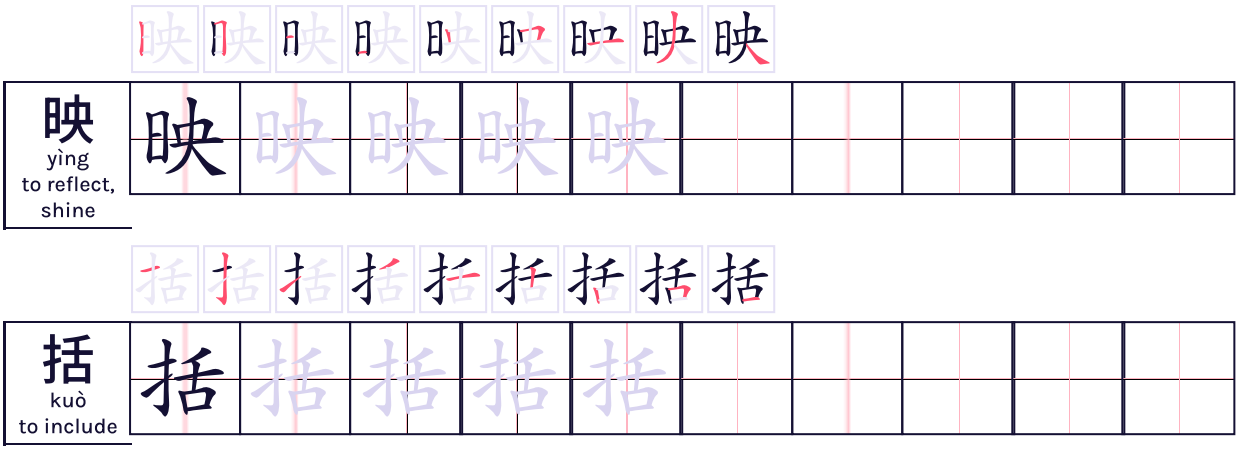
anna 真的吗？他走的时候还向我询问了下次见面的时间，我们交换了电话号码。
zhēn de ma tā zǒu de shíhou hái xiàng wǒ xúnwèn le xià cì jiànmiàn de shíjiān wǒmen jiāohuàn le diànhuà hàomǎ · Really? When he left, he asked me when we could meet next, and we swapped numbers.

manager lin 你看，他在邮件里还把我们称为“最认真的伙伴”。
nǐ kàn tā zài yóujiàn lǐ hái bǎ wǒmen chēngwéi zuì rènzhēn de huǒbàn · See? In his email he even called us “the most dedicated partners”.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

补
bǔ
to mend, make up

传
chuán
to pass (on), hand on



good to know · 反映 (to report, reflect) and 反应 (to react) sound the same, fǎnyìng. 把问题反映给经理 means telling the manager about a problem. Polite ways to get the floor back: 我补充一点 let me add one thing; 我先说完，好吗？ can I just finish?

Interrupted, misunderstood or stuck in an endless meeting: now you can describe it, and handle it better next time.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 35 who's right?

Give your opinion, agree or disagree with reasons, and hold your ground: "even if..., still...".

Discussing a question calmly, with reasons and respect, is a key skill at work, in class and with friends.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
观点	guāndiǎn	point of view	我同意你的观点。 I agree with your point of view.
赞成	zànchéng	to approve, be in favour	我赞成这个计划。 I'm in favour of this plan.
否认	fǒurèn	to deny	他否认了这件事。 He denied it.
否定	fǒudìng	to reject; negative	别马上否定别人的想法。 Don't shoot down other people's ideas straight away.
承认	chéngrèn	to admit	我承认是我错了。 I admit I was wrong.
理由	lǐyóu	reason, grounds	你迟到的理由是什么? What's your reason for being late?
道理	dàolǐ	reason, sense	你说的很有道理。 What you say makes a lot of sense.
合理	hélǐ	reasonable	这个要求很合理。 That's a reasonable request.
客观	kèguān	objective	看问题要客观。 You need to look at things objectively.
主观	zhǔguān	subjective	你这个看法太主观了。 Your view is too subjective.
角度	jiǎodù	angle, point of view	换个角度想想，问题也许没那么严重。 Look at it from another angle. Maybe it's not so bad.
看作	kànzuò	to regard as	我一直把他看作自己的哥哥。 I've always thought of him as my big brother.
当成	dàngchéng	to treat as, take for	别把我当成孩子。 Don't treat me like a child.
当作	dàngzuò	to treat as, regard as	他把这里当作自己的家。 He treats this place as his own home.
视为	shìwéi	to regard as (formal)	很多人把健康视为最重要的事。 Many people see health as the most important thing.
评价	píngjià	to evaluate; assessment	大家对这部电影的评价很高。 This film has had great reviews.
确定	quèdìng	to be sure; to fix	你确定明天不下雨吗? Are you sure it won't rain tomorrow?
确认	quèrèn	to confirm	请再确认一下时间和地点。 Please double-check the time and place.

认	rèn	to recognise; to admit	他戴着帽子，我差点儿没认出来。 He had a hat on and I almost didn't recognise him.
事实	shìshí	fact	事实证明，他是对的。 The facts proved him right.
真实	zhēnshí	true, real	这部电影是根据真实的故事拍的。 This film is based on a true story.
明确	míngquè	clear, definite	你的回答不太明确。 Your answer isn't very clear.
哪怕	nǎpà	even if	哪怕下雨，我们也要去。 Even if it rains, we're going.
显然	xiǎnrán	obvious(ly)	他显然不想去。 He obviously doesn't want to go.
疯狂	fēngkuáng	crazy, wild	这个想法太疯狂了！ That idea is crazy!

pattern 哪怕……也……: even if

哪怕 | **even in this case** | **，(subject) 也** | **still the same**

哪怕 A，也 B: even if A happens (often something extreme), B still holds. It's stronger and more spoken than 即使. The subject goes before 也 in the second part: 哪怕下雨，我们也去.

哪怕只有一点儿希望，我们也不能放弃。 **nǎpà zhǐ yǒuyìdiǎnr xīwàng wǒmen yě bù néng fàngqì** Even if there's only a little hope, we can't give up.

哪怕大家都反对，我也要试一试。 **nǎpà dàjiā dōu fǎnduì wǒ yě yào shì yi shi** Even if everyone is against it, I'm going to give it a try.

哪怕你不同意，也要听听别人的理由。 **nǎpà nǐ bù tóngyì yě yào tīng ting biérén de lǐyóu** Even if you disagree, listen to other people's reasons.

dialogue big city or home town?

professor sun 今天我们来讨论一个问题：年轻人应该在大城市工作，还是回故乡工作?
jīntiān wǒmen lái tǎolùn yí gè wèntí niánqīng rén yīnggāi zài dà chéngshì gōngzuò háishi huí gùxiāng gōngzuò · Today let's discuss a question: should young people work in big cities, or go back to their home towns?

xiaoming 我赞成在大城市工作。机会多，哪怕压力大，也值得。
wǒ zànchéng zài dà chéngshì gōngzuò jīhuì duō nǎpà yālì dà yě zhídé · I'm for big cities. There are more chances, so even if the pressure is high, it's worth it.

anna 我不完全同意。从另一个角度看，小城市生活更轻松，也更健康。
wǒ bù wánquán tóngyì cóng lìng yí gè jiǎodù kàn xiǎo chéngshì shēnghuó gèng qīngsōng yě gèng jiànkāng · I don't completely agree. From another angle, life in a small town is more relaxed and healthier.

zhao yang 我觉得你们的观点都有道理，不过都有点儿主观。我们应该看事实。
wǒ juéde nǐmen de guāndiǎn dōu yǒu dàolǐ búguò dōu yǒudiǎnr zhǔguān wǒmen yīnggāi kàn shìshí · I think you both have a point, but you're both a bit subjective. We should look at the facts.

professor sun 说得好。评价一个地方，不能只看工资。很多人把家人视为最重要的。
shuō de hǎo píngjià yí gè dìfang bù néng zhǐ kàn gōngzī hěn duō rén bǎ jiārén shìwéi zuì zhòngyào de · Well said. When you judge a place, you can't look only at salaries. Many people see family as what matters most.

xiaoming 好吧，我承认，大城市的房子贵得疯狂。
hǎo ba wǒ chéngrèn dà chéngshì de fángzi guì de fēngkuáng · OK, I admit it: housing in big cities is insanely expensive.

anna 显然，没有一个答案适合所有人。把每个人的选择都看作合理的，就不会争了。
xiǎnrán méiyǒu yí gè dáàn shìhé suǒyǒu rén bǎ měi gè rén de xuǎnzé dōu kànzuò hélǐ de jiù bú huì zhēng le · Clearly there's no one answer for everyone. If we see each person's choice as reasonable, there's nothing to argue about.

professor sun 对。别马上否定别人的选择，也别把自己的想法当作最好的答案。
duì bié mǎshàng fǒudìng biérén de xuǎnzé yě bié bǎ zìjǐ de xiǎngfǎ dàngzuò zuìhǎo de dáàn · Exactly. Don't dismiss other people's choices straight away, and don't treat your own idea as the best answer.

zhao yang 那我们确定一下，下次讨论什么话题?
nà wǒmen quèdìng yíxià xià cì tǎolùn shénme huàtí · So let's settle it: what's the topic for next time?

professor sun 我想一想，明天再跟大家确认。
wǒ xiǎng yi xiang míngtiān zài gēn dàjiā quèrèn · Let me think about it. I'll confirm with you all tomorrow.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

疯
fēng
mad

狂
kuáng
wild

good to know · Polite ways to disagree: 我不完全同意 I don't fully agree; 从另一个角度看 from another angle; 你说得有道理，不过..... you have a point, but.... 当成, 当作, 看作 and 视为 all mean "to regard A as B" with 把: 把他当成朋友. 视为 is the most formal, 当成 the most spoken. 不过 isn't only "but": as an adverb it means "only, merely": 他不过是开个玩笑 he was only joking, 不过十分钟 only ten minutes.

Opinions, reasons and respect: you can now hold your own in a friendly debate in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 36 mission: the surprise party

Chinese HSK 5 in 80 days
unit 6 · people & feelings

Follow a whole story of planning a secret party, arguing it out, the big surprise and a warm goodbye.

Personalities, friendship, feelings and discussion all come together when friends plan something together.

chapter 1 the secret plan

anna 赵阳，小明下个星期就要去海外了。我们给他开一个惊喜聚会，怎么样?
ZhàoYáng Xiǎomíng xià gè xīngqī jiù yào qù hǎiwài le wǒmen gěi tā kāi yí gè jīngxǐ jùhuì zěnmeyàng · Zhao Yang, Xiaoming leaves for abroad next week. How about a surprise party for him?

zhao yang 好主意！不过这件事是我们的秘密，千万别让他知道。小明那个人很好奇，做事又很谨慎，我们得小心。
hǎo zhǔyi búguò zhè jiàn shì shì wǒmen de mìmì qiānwàn bié ràng tā zhīdào Xiǎomíng nà gè rén hěn hàoqí zuò shì yòu hěn jǐnshèn wǒmen děi xiǎoxīn · Great idea! But this has to stay our secret. He mustn't find out. Xiaoming is curious and careful, so we need to watch out.

anna 放心吧。我已经单独跟张女士说了，她赞成在家里开。你别跟他提起这件事，也别在电话里说我们的计划。
fàngxīn ba wǒ yǐjīng dāndú gēn Zhāngnǚshì shuō le tā zànchéng zài jiā lǐ kāi nǐ bié gēn tā tíqǐ zhè jiàn shì yě bié zài diànhuà lǐ shuō wǒmen de jìhuà · Don't worry. I've already had a quiet word with Ms Zhang, and she's happy to have it at home. Don't mention it to him, and don't talk about our plan on the phone.

zhao yang 他要是询问，我就说周末要加班。前几天王老师碰见了他，跟他握了握手，说他越来越成熟了。我们也请王老师吧。
tā yàoshi xúnwèn wǒ jiù shuō zhōumò yào jiābān qián jǐ tiān Wánglǎoshī pèngjiàn le tā gēn tā wò le wòshǒu shuō tā yuè lái yuè chéngshú le wǒmen yě qǐng Wánglǎoshī ba · If he asks, I'll say I'm working at the weekend. Teacher Wang ran into him a few days ago, shook his hand and said he was getting more grown-up all the time. Let's invite her too.

zhao yang 那他妹妹呢？她那么调皮，会不会说出去?
nà tā mèimei ne tā nàme tiáopí huì bu huì shuō chuqu · What about his sister? She's so cheeky. Might she let it slip?

anna 她现在很成熟，我信任她。
tā xiànzài hěn chéngshú wǒ xìnrèn tā · She's very grown-up now. I trust her.

zhao yang 好。那我们周末一起讨论一下怎么准备。
hǎo nà wǒmen zhōumò yìqǐ tǎolùn yíxià zěnme zhǔnbèi · OK. Let's talk about the preparations together at the weekend.

chapter 2 who's right?

zhao yang

我觉得应该吃火锅，小明最喜欢火锅了。

wǒ juéde yīnggāi chī huǒguō Xiǎomíng zuì xǐhuan huǒguō le · I think we should have hotpot. Xiaoming loves hotpot more than anything.

little sister

我不完全同意。我哥哥最近在减肥，还是做一些健康的菜吧。从另一个角度看，吃得太多，他第二天会不舒服。

wǒ bù wánquán tóngyì wǒ gēge zuìjìn zài jiǎnféi háishi zuò yìxiē jiànkāng de cài ba cóng lìng yí gè jiǎodù kàn chī de tài duō tā dì èr tiān huì bù shūfu · I don't fully agree. My brother's been trying to lose weight, so let's make something healthy. And from another angle, if he eats too much, he'll feel ill the next day.

zhao yang

哪怕他在减肥，这么重要的晚上也可以吃一次火锅！我认为火锅是最好的选择，这是事实！

nǎpà tā zài jiǎnféi zhème zhòngyào de wǎnshang yě kěyǐ chī yí cì huǒguō wǒ rènwéi huǒguō shì zuìhǎo de xuǎnzé zhè shì shìshí · Even if he's on a diet, he can have hotpot just once on such a big night! Hotpot is the best choice: that's a fact!

little sister

你的理由不太明确，太主观了。

nǐ de lǐyóu bú tài míngquè tài zhǔguān le · Your reasons aren't very clear. You're being too subjective.

anna

你们别争了，这样讨论下去没完没了。我们要客观一点儿。

nǐmen bié zhēng le zhèyàng tǎolùn xiaqu méi wán méi liǎo wǒmen yào kèguān yìdiǎnr · Stop arguing, you two: at this rate we'll go on for ever. Let's be a bit more objective.

anna

你们的观点都有道理。要不我们吃火锅，再多准备一些蔬菜？

nǐmen de guāndiǎn dōu yǒu dàolǐ yàobù wǒmen chī huǒguō zài duō zhǔnbèi yìxiē shūcài · You both have a point. How about hotpot, with lots of extra vegetables?

little sister

这个想法很合理！真有你的，安娜姐姐。

zhège xiǎngfǎ hěn hélǐ zhēn yǒu nǐ de Ānnà jiějie · That's a sensible idea! You're brilliant, Anna.

zhao yang

好，我承认你说得对，我不否认你们说得有道理。那我负责拍照，把晚上的一切都拍下来。

hǎo wǒ chéngrèn nǐ shuō de duì wǒ bù fǒurèn nǐmen shuō de yǒu dàolǐ nà wǒ fùzé pāizhào bǎ wǎnshang de yíqiè dōu pāi xialai · OK, I admit you're right: I won't deny you have a point. Then I'll take the photos and film the whole evening.

little sister

我哥哥总是把我当成小孩子，这次我要让他看到我长大了。

wǒ gēge zǒngshì bǎ wǒ dàngchéng xiǎo háizi zhè cì wǒ yào ràng tā kàn dào wǒ zhǎng dà le · My brother always treats me like a little kid. This time I want him to see I've grown up.

anna

他一直把你看作最亲的人。

tā yìzhí bǎ nǐ kànzuò zuì qīn de rén · He's always seen you as the person closest to him.

little sister

不过，他不过是去一年，你们怎么像他要去十年似的！

búguò tā búguò shì qù yì nián nǐmen zěnme xiàng tā yào qù shí nián shìde · Still, he's only going for a year. You're all acting as if he were going for ten!

zhao yang

上次给他过生日，大家的评价是“太疯狂了”。显然这次要安静一点儿。

shàng cì gěi tā guò shēngrì dàjiā de píngjià shì tài fēngkuáng le xiǎnrán zhè cì yào ānjìng yìdiǎnr · Last time, for his birthday, everyone's verdict was "totally crazy". Clearly this time we need to keep it a bit quieter.

zhao yang

哈哈，那时间就这么确定了：星期六晚上七点。我明天跟张阿姨确认一下。

hā hā nà shíjiān jiù zhème quèdìng le xīngqīliù wǎnshang qī diǎn wǒ míngtiān gēn zhāng āyí quèrèn yíxià · Ha ha, then the time's fixed: Saturday at seven. I'll confirm it with Auntie Zhang tomorrow.

chapter 3 surprise!

xiaoming 妈妈，我回来了。家里怎么这么安静？
māma wǒ huílái le jiā lǐ zěnme zhème ānjìng · Mum, I'm home. Why's it so quiet?

little sister 惊喜！
jīngxǐ · Surprise!

xiaoming 你们……你们都在这儿？我站也不是，坐也不是，太激动了！
nǐmen nǐmen dōu zài zhèr wǒ zhàn yě bú shì zuò yě bú shì tài jīdòng le · You… you're all here? I don't know what to do with myself, I'm so excited!

ms zhang 这都是安娜的主意。大家准备了一个星期，你居然一点儿也不知道。你看，我们把家里打扮得像过节似的。
zhè dōu shì Ānnà de zhǔyi dàjiā zhǔnbèi le yí gè xīngqī nǐ jūrán yìdiǎnr yě bù zhīdào nǐ kàn wǒmen bǎ jiā lǐ dǎban de xiàng guòjié shìde · This was all Anna's idea. Everyone's been getting ready for a week, and you didn't have a clue. Look, we've decorated the house like it's a festival.

xiaoming 我真傻！这几天你们的表情都那么奇怪，我还以为出了什么事呢。
wǒ zhēn shǎ zhè jǐ tiān nǐmen de biǎoqíng dōu nàme qíguài wǒ hái yǐwéi chū le shénme shì ne · How silly of me! You've all had such funny looks on your faces these last few days, I thought something had happened.

xiaoming 妹妹，你平时那么胆小，这次居然一句也没说出去！
mèimei nǐ píngshí nàme dǎnxiǎo zhè cì jūrán yí jù yě méi shuō chuqu · Sis, you're usually so timid, and this time you didn't let slip a single word!

little sister 我现在很独立，也很大胆！
wǒ xiànzài hěn dúlì yě hěn dàdǎn · I'm very independent now, and very bold!

xiaoming 爸爸，您平时那么严肃，今天也笑得这么开心。
bàba nín píngshí nàme yánsù jīntiān yě xiào de zhème kāixīn · Dad, you're usually so serious, and today you're smiling so happily.

dr li 儿子要走了，我当然舍不得。不过年轻人应该敢于出去看看。
érzi yào zǒu le wǒ dāngrán shěbude búguò niánqīng rén yīnggāi gǎnyú chuqu kàn kan · My son is leaving: of course I'll miss him. But young people should dare to go and see the world.

teacher wang 你虚心、善良，个性也好，在公司的形象很好，到了海外一定会受欢迎。看着你们一天天成长，是我最大的乐趣。
nǐ xūxīn shànliáng gèxìng yě hǎo zài gōngsī de xíngxiàng hěn hǎo dào le hǎiwài yídìng huì shòu huānyíng kàn zhe nǐmen yì tiān tiān chéngzhǎng shì wǒ zuì dà de lèqù · You're modest and kind, with a lovely personality, and you have a great reputation at work: you'll be popular abroad. Watching you all grow up day by day is my greatest joy.

anna 小明的长处是真诚，短处是吃东西太讲究！
Xiǎomíng de chángchù shì zhēnchéng duǎnchù shì chī dōngxi tài jiǎngjiu · Xiaoming's strong point is that he's sincere; his weak point is being far too fussy about food!

zhao yang 哈哈，这也是一种魅力。
hā hā zhè yě shì yì zhǒng mèilì · Ha ha, that's part of his charm.

anna 我们舍不得你走，所以想好好跟你告别。
wǒmen shěbude nǐ zǒu suǒyǐ xiǎng hǎohǎo gēn nǐ gàobié · We can't bear to see you go, so we wanted to give you a proper send-off.

xiaoming 谢谢你们！我不知道怎么表达我的感谢。
xièxie nǐmen wǒ bù zhīdào zěnme biǎodá wǒ de gǎnxiè · Thank you all! I don't know how to say how grateful I am.

chapter 4 see you next year

anna 小明，大家给你写了一张卡片，我来读一读：
Xiǎomíng dàjiā gěi nǐ xiě le yì zhāng kǎpiàn wǒ lái dú yi du · Xiaoming, everyone has written you a card. Let me read it:

anna “亲爱的小明：认识你这么多年，你一直是我们最真诚、最善良的伙伴。你对待朋友像对待家人似的，我们之间的友谊特别深厚。明年你一个人在海外，哪怕遇到困难，也别忘了我们。我们会常常跟你视频，把家里的事都讲述给你听。祝你一路顺风，早日回来！”
qīnài de Xiǎomíng rènshi nǐ zhème duō nián nǐ yìzhí shì wǒmen zuì zhēnchéng zuì shànliáng de huǒbàn nǐ duìdài péngyou xiàng duìdài jiārén shìde wǒmen zhījiān de yǒuyì tèbié shēnhòu míngnián nǐ yí gè rén zài hǎiwài nǎpà yùdào kùnnan yě bié wàng le wǒmen wǒmen huì chángcháng gēn nǐ shìpín bǎ jiā lǐ de shì dōu jiǎngshù gěi nǐ tīng zhù nǐ yílù shùnfēng zǎo rì huílái · “Dear Xiaoming: in all the years we’ve known you, you’ve always been our most sincere and kind-hearted friend. You treat your friends like family, and our friendship runs deep. Next year, on your own abroad, even if things get hard, don’t forget us. We’ll video-call you often and tell you everything that happens at home. Have a good trip, and come back soon!”

ms zhang 你怎么沉默了？
nǐ zěnme chénmò le · Why have you gone quiet?

xiaoming 我深受感动，不知道说什么好。我在乎的人都在这儿，独自出去，真有点儿遗憾。
wǒ shēn shòu gǎndòng bù zhīdào shuō shénme hǎo wǒ zàihu de rén dōu zài zhèr dúzì chūqù zhēn yǒudiǎnr yíhàn · I’m deeply moved and don’t know what to say. Everyone I care about is here: going off alone feels like a bit of a shame.

ms zhang 一开始我不同意，还跟他争了几句。后来我想，年轻人应该出去看看。
yì kāishǐ wǒ bù tóngyì hái gēn tā zhēng le jǐ jù hòulái wǒ xiǎng niánqīng rén yīnggāi chūqù kàn kan · At first I was against it, and even argued with him a bit. Then I thought: young people should go and see the world.

xiaoming 妈妈一开始的反应，我早就猜到了。不过我们好好谈话以后，我说服了她。
māma yì kāishǐ de fǎnyìng wǒ zǎo jiù cāi dào le búguò wǒmen hǎohǎo tánhuà yǐhòu wǒ shuōfú le tā · I’d guessed how Mum would react at first. But after a proper talk, I won her round.

teacher wang 小明，到了海外，要主动跟别人沟通，也要照顾好自己。人际关系很重要，要真诚地对待别人。
Xiǎomíng dào le hǎiwài yào zhǔdòng gēn biérén gōutōng yě yào zhàogù hǎo zìjǐ rénjì guānxì hěn zhòngyào yào zhēnchéng de duìdài biérén · Xiaoming, when you’re abroad, make the effort to talk to people, and look after yourself. Relationships matter: treat people sincerely.

dr li 再忙也要好好吃饭，按时睡觉。
zài máng yě yào hǎohǎo chī fàn ànshí shuìjiào · However busy you are, eat properly and get to bed on time.

xiaoming 我补充一句：这张卡片我会一直保存着。
wǒ bǔchōng yí jù zhè zhāng kǎpiàn wǒ huì yìzhí bǎocún zhe · Let me add one thing: I’ll keep this card for ever.

zhao yang 来，大家合影！这张照片我要放进相册里。我们的联系会一直很紧密的。来，大家拥抱一下！
lái dàjiā héyǐng zhè zhāng zhàopiàn wǒ yào fàng jìn xiàngcè lǐ wǒmen de liánxì huì yìzhí hěn jǐnmì de lái dàjiā yōngbào yíxià · Come on, group photo! This one’s going in the album. We’ll always stay in close touch. Come on, group hug!

xiaoming 我会珍惜我们的友谊。哪怕在很远的地方，我也会想念你们的。
wǒ huì zhēnxī wǒmen de yǒuyì nǎpà zài hěn yuǎn de dìfang wǒ yě huì xiǎngniàn nǐmen de · I’ll treasure our friendship. Even far away, I’ll miss you all.

anna 一年很快就过去了，我们等你回来！
yì nián hěn kuài jiù guòqù le wǒmen děng nǐ huílái · A year will fly by. We’ll be waiting for you!

chapter 5 the airport

little sister 哥哥，你到了海外，要是有了对象，一定要先告诉我！
gēge nǐ dào le hǎiwài yàoshi yǒu le duìxiàng yídìng yào xiān gàosu wǒ · Bro, if you find a girlfriend abroad, you have to tell me first!

xiaoming 哈哈，你又提起这个话题了。我是去工作，不是去谈恋爱的。
hā hā nǐ yòu tíqǐ zhège huàtí le wǒ shì qù gōngzuò bú shì qù tán liànài de · Ha ha, you're on that subject again. I'm going to work, not to fall in love.

zhao yang 我和我太太当年也分离了两年，后来还是结婚了。这就是命运！
wǒ hé wǒ tàitai dāngnián yě fēnlí le liǎng nián hòulái háishi jiéhūn le zhè jiùshì mìngyùn · My wife and I were apart for two years back then, and we still got married. That's fate!

anna 你们的婚礼我还记得：大家的祝贺那么热烈，新郎紧张得不得了，新娘却一点儿也不紧张。
nǐmen de hūnlǐ wǒ hái jìde dàjiā de zhùhè nàme rèliè xīnláng jǐnzhāng de bùdéliǎo xīnniáng què yìdiǎnr yě bù jǐnzhāng · I still remember your wedding: everyone's good wishes were so warm, the groom was a nervous wreck, but the bride wasn't nervous at all.

zhao yang 别打断我！我还没说完呢。我想强调的是：分别不可怕，只要心在一起。
bié dǎduàn wǒ wǒ hái méi shuō wán ne wǒ xiǎng qiángdiào de shì fēnbié bù kěpà zhǐyào xīn zài yìqǐ · Don't interrupt! I haven't finished. What I want to stress is: parting isn't scary, as long as your hearts stay together.

ms zhang 小明，我有一个请求：每个星期给家里打一次电话。
Xiǎomíng wǒ yǒu yí gè qǐngqiú měi gè xīngqī gěi jiā lǐ dǎ yí cì diànhuà · Xiaoming, I have one request: call home once a week.

xiaoming 好，我答应您。我会把那边的生活生动地描述给你们听。
hǎo wǒ dāying nín wǒ huì bǎ nàbiān de shēnghuó shēngdòng de miáoshù gěi nǐmen tīng · OK, I promise. I'll tell you all about life over there, in every detail.

dr li 这是我们赠送给你的礼物，里面是全家的照片。愿你一切顺利！
zhè shì wǒmen zèngsòng gěi nǐ de lǐwù lǐmiàn shì quán jiā de zhàopiàn yuàn nǐ yíqiè shùnlì · This is our present for you: photos of the whole family. May everything go well for you!

teacher wang 你运气真好，有这么多热爱你的家人和朋友。
nǐ yùnqi zhēn hǎo yǒu zhème duō rèài nǐ de jiārén hé péngyou · You're so lucky to have so many family and friends who love you.

dr li 我们舍得让你走，是因为我们相信你。
wǒmen shěde ràng nǐ zǒu shì yīnwèi wǒmen xiāngxìn nǐ · We're willing to let you go because we believe in you.

xiaoming 谢谢大家！本来我有点儿舍不得走，现在放心多了。
xièxie dàjiā běnlái wǒ yǒudiǎnr shěbude zǒu xiànzài fàngxīn duō le · Thank you, everyone! I wasn't sure I could bear to leave, but I feel much better now.

zhao yang 我们交换一下新的电话号码吧。安娜，你用几个字概括一下今天吧！
wǒmen jiāohuàn yíxià xīn de diànhuà hàomǎ ba Ānnà nǐ yòng jǐ gè zì gàikuò yíxià jīntiān ba · Let's swap new phone numbers. Anna, sum today up in a few words!

anna 很简单：我们都爱你！妹妹，你呢？
hěn jiǎndān wǒmen dōu ài nǐ mèimei nǐ ne · Easy: we all love you! What about you, sis?

little sister 我的愿望是明年去看你！
wǒ de yuànwàng shì míngnián qù kàn nǐ · My wish is to go and visit you next year!

little sister 哥哥，一路顺风！
gēge yílù shùnfēng · Have a good trip, big brother!

A secret, a debate, a surprise and a goodbye: you followed a whole evening of friendship in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 37 back to school

Talk about school, subjects and exams, and list things with 以及 and 同.

School is a huge topic in China: every family talks about exams, results and which university will take whom.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
学年	xuénián	school year	新学年开始了，我们都换了新教室。 The new school year has started, and we've all moved to new classrooms.
学分	xuéfēn	credit (for a course)	这门{=(measure word for courses)}课有两个学分，不及格就拿不到。 This course is worth two credits, and you don't get them if you fail.
学科	xuékē	subject, discipline	数学是她最喜欢的学科。 Maths is her favourite subject.
学历	xuélì	education, qualifications	这份工作对学历要求很高。 This job asks for a high level of education.
证书	zhèngshū	certificate	考试通过以后，你会拿到一张证书。 When you pass the exam, you'll get a certificate.
录取	lùqǔ	to admit (to a school)	她被北京的一所大学录取了。 She's been accepted by a university in Beijing.
宿舍	sùshè	dormitory	我们宿舍住四个|人，大家相处得很好。 There are four of us in our dorm room, and we all get on well.
初级	chūjí	elementary, beginner	我刚来中国的时候，只{zhi3}会说一点儿初级汉语。 When I first came to China, I only spoke a little beginner's Chinese.
中级	zhōngjí	intermediate	我的汉语现在是中级水平。 My Chinese is at an intermediate level now.
级	jí	level, grade; step	我现在准备考五级。 I'm preparing for level 5 now.
及格	jígé	to pass (a test)	我只{zhi3}考了60分，刚好及格。 I only got 60, just enough to pass.
试卷	shìjuàn	exam paper	老师把试卷发下来了，大家开始做题。 The teacher handed out the papers, and everyone started on the questions.
题目	tímù	question (in a test); title	这道题目太难了，我看了三遍还是不懂。 This question is so hard. I've read it three times and still don't get it.
提问	tíwèn	to ask a question	有问题的同学可以举手提问。 If you have a question, put your hand up and ask.
教材	jiàocái	textbook, teaching materials	这套教材很适合自学。 This set of textbooks is great for teaching yourself.

图书	túshū	books	这家书店的图书种类很多。 This bookshop has a wide range of books.
尺子	chǐzi	ruler	你的尺子能借我用一下吗? Can I borrow your ruler for a second?
橡皮	xiàngpí	eraser, rubber	写错了没关系，用橡皮擦掉就行了。 Don't worry if you get it wrong, just rub it out.
毛笔	máobǐ	writing brush	爷爷每天早上都用毛笔写字。 Grandpa writes with a brush every morning.
幼儿园	yòuéryuán	kindergarten	我小时候上的幼儿园就在我们家旁边。 The kindergarten I went to as a child was right next to our home.
语文	yǔwén	Chinese (school subject)	她数学很好，语文就差|一点儿。 She's great at maths, but not quite as good at Chinese.
以及	yǐjí	and, as well as	考试的时间、地点以及要求都写在通知上了。 The time, the place and the rules of the exam are all in the notice.
及	jí	and (written)	本店出售各种图书及杂志。 We sell all kinds of books and magazines.
勤奋	qínfèn	hardworking, diligent	他很勤奋，每天早上六点就起来读书。 He's very hardworking: he's up at six every morning to study.
专心	zhuānxīn	focused, with full attention	上课的时候要专心，别玩手机。 Concentrate in class, and leave your phone alone.

pattern 以及 and 同: and, as well as

A、B | 以及 | C | A | 同 | B

以及 joins words or phrases, usually in front of the last item of a list: A、B以及C. It sounds written, so you meet it in notices, news and talks. 同 can join two nouns just like 和 (我同他), a bit more formal, and also means "with" (同他说话).

请准备好尺子、橡皮以及两支笔。 **qǐng zhǔnbèi hǎo chǐzi xiàngpí yǐjí liǎng zhī bǐ** Please have a ruler, an eraser and two pens ready.

本店出售各种图书及杂志。 **běn diàn chūshòu gèzhǒng túshū jí zázhì** We sell all kinds of books and magazines.

这件事我已经同王老师说过了。 **zhè jiàn shì wǒ yǐjīng tóng Wánglǎoshī shuō guò le** I've already talked to Teacher Wang about this.

dialogue exam season

anna
这么巧！你也来书店买东西？
zhème qiǎo nǐ yě lái shūdiàn mǎi dōngxi · What a coincidence! You're shopping at the bookshop too?

little sister
安娜！下个月就考试了，我来买尺子和橡皮。哦，还有毛笔！
Ānnà xià gè yuè jiù kǎoshì le wǒ lái mǎi chǐzi hé xiàngpí ò hái yǒu máobǐ · Anna! The exam is next month, so I'm buying a ruler and an eraser. Oh, and a brush!

anna
你复习得怎么样了？哪个学科最难？
nǐ fùxí de zěnmeyàng le nǎge xuékē zuì nán · How's the revision going? Which subject is hardest?

little sister
数学还行，语文最难。试卷上的题目太多了，我老是做不完。
shùxué hái xíng yǔwén zuì nán shìjuàn shàng de tímù tài duō le wǒ lǎoshì zuò bu wán · Maths is OK; Chinese is the hardest. There are so many questions on the paper that I never finish.

anna
数学、语文以及外语都要考吗？
shùxué yǔwén yǐjí wàiyǔ dōu yào kǎo ma · Do you have exams in maths, Chinese and a foreign language too?

anna
做题的时候要专心，先做会的，再做难的。
zuò tí de shíhou yào zhuānxīn xiān zuò huì de zài zuò nán de · Stay focused when you do the paper: easy ones first, then the hard ones.

little sister
我知道。我最大的愿望是被北京的大学录取，然后住宿舍！
wǒ zhīdào wǒ zuì dà de yuànwàng shì bèi Běijīng de dàxué lùqǔ ránhòu zhù sùshè · I know. My biggest wish is to get into a university in Beijing and live in a dorm!

anna
住宿舍？你在家里不舒服吗？
zhù sùshè nǐ zài jiā lǐ bù shūfu ma · A dorm? Aren't you comfortable at home?

little sister
我哥哥同我爸爸妈妈天天问我复习得怎么样，没完没了！
wǒ gēge tóng wǒ bàba māma tiān tiān wèn wǒ fùxí de zěnmeyàng méi wán méi liǎo · My brother and my mum and dad ask me every day how the revision's going. It never ends!

anna
哈哈，他们是关心你。在中国，大家都很看重学历，从幼儿园就开始了。
hā hā tāmen shì guānxīn nǐ zài Zhōngguó dàjiā dōu hěn kàn zhòng xuélì cóng yòuéryuán jiù kāishǐ le · Ha ha, they care about you. In China everyone takes education seriously, starting from kindergarten.

little sister
是啊。对了，你今天晚上不是也开始上课吗？加油！
shì a duì le nǐ jīntiān wǎnshang bú shì yě kāishǐ shàngkè ma jiāyóu · True. Oh, doesn't your class start tonight too? Good luck!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

录
lù
to record; to copy down

尺
chǐ
a Chinese foot; ruler

good to know · 以及 and 及 are for lists in writing. In everyday speech, 和 is still the word you'll use most. Chinese pupils call their Chinese lessons 语文, not 汉语: 语文课, 语文老师.

Exams, subjects and school worries: you can now chat about them with any Chinese family, and they'll have plenty to say.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 38 words, words, words

Talk about pronunciation, vocabulary and speeches, and put several adverbials in the right order.

At this level your sentences get longer: knowing where “when”, “where” and “how” go makes them sound natural, not translated.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
词汇	cíhuì	vocabulary	多看中文书，是积累词汇最好的办法。 Reading lots of Chinese books is the best way to build up your vocabulary.
读音	dúyīn	pronunciation (of a character)	这个字有两个读音，意思也不一样。 This character has two readings, with different meanings.
发音	fāyīn	pronunciation; to pronounce	你的发音很标准，像中国人似的。 Your pronunciation is so standard, you sound like a native speaker.
拼音	pīnyīn	pinyin	刚开始学汉语的时候，我每个字都要看拼音。 When I first started learning Chinese, I needed the pinyin for every character.
字母	zìmǔ	letter (of an alphabet)	汉语拼音是用字母写的，所以不难学。 Pinyin is written with letters, so it isn’t hard to learn.
语音	yǔyīn	speech sounds; voice message	我现在不方便打字，给你发语音吧。 I can’t type right now. I’ll send you a voice message.
用法	yòngfǎ	usage, how to use	这两个词意思差不多，但是用法不一样。 These two words mean about the same, but they’re used differently.
比喻	bǐyù	metaphor; to compare (to)	他用了一个很生动的比喻，大家一下子就明白了。 He used a vivid metaphor, and everyone got it at once.
念	niàn	to read aloud; to study	请你把这段课文念一遍。 Please read this passage aloud.
录音	lùyīn	to record (sound); recording	老师，上课的时候可以录音吗? Excuse me, may I record the class?
录	lù	to record; to copy down	我用手机把老师的话录了下来。 I recorded what the teacher said on my phone.
重复	chóngfù	to repeat	请你再重复一遍，我没听清楚。 Could you say that again? I didn’t catch it.
记忆	jìyì	memory; to remember	他的记忆特别好，看一遍就能记住。 He has an amazing memory: he can remember something after one look.
称	chēng	to call, to name	北京人称{cheng1-b}这种小路为{wei2}“胡同”。 People in Beijing call these little lanes “hutongs”.

名称	míngchēng	name (of a thing)	这家公司的名称很好记。 This company's name is easy to remember.
如何	rúhé	how; what (formal)	我们今天来讨论如何提高写作水平。 Today we'll talk about how to improve your writing.
如下	rúxià	as follows	这次演讲比赛的要求如下。 The rules of this speech contest are as follows.
记录	jìlù	to record, note down; record	她把每天学的生词都记录在本子上。 She writes down every new word she learns in a notebook.
参考	cānkǎo	to consult, refer to	写作文的时候，你可以参考这几本书。 When you write your essay, you can look at these books.
常识	chángshí	common sense; general knowledge	天冷了要多穿衣服，这是常识。 When it gets cold you wrap up warm. That's common sense.
请教	qǐngjiào	to ask for advice	王老师，我有个问题想请教您。 Teacher Wang, there's something I'd like to ask you.
写作	xiězuò	writing (as a skill)	她的写作水平提高得很快。 Her writing is improving fast.
演讲	yǎnjiǎng	speech; to give a speech	下个月学校有一个汉语演讲比赛。 Next month the school is holding a Chinese speech contest.
评	píng	to judge, assess	王老师请大家评一评谁讲得最好。 Teacher Wang asked everyone to judge who spoke best.
主题	zhǔtí	theme, topic	这次演讲的主题是“我的中国朋友”。 The theme of this speech is “My Chinese friend”.

pattern several adverbials: when, then where, then how

who | when | 都 / 也 / 常常 | where | how / with whom | verb

Everything that describes a verb goes in front of it, usually in this order: time → little adverbs like 都, 也, 常常 → place → manner or person (认真地, 跟/向 someone) → verb. The time can also go before the subject: 明天我们都在…

王老师常常在课上用比喻给我们解释新词。 **Wánglǎoshī chángcháng zài kè shàng yòng bǐyù gěi wǒmen jiěshì xīn cí** Teacher Wang often explains new words to us in class with metaphors.

他昨天在家一个人念了两个小时的课文。 **tā zuótiān zài jiā yí gè rén niàn le liǎng gè xiǎoshí de kèwén** Yesterday he spent two hours at home reading the text aloud by himself.

我们明天都在教室里跟王老师一起录音。 **wǒmen míngtiān dōu zài jiàoshì lǐ gēn Wánglǎoshī yìqǐ lùyīn** Tomorrow we'll all be recording with Teacher Wang in the classroom.

dialogue getting ready for the speech contest

anna 王老师，我报名参加了下个月的演讲比赛，有几个问题想请教您。
Wánglǎoshī wǒ bàomíng cānjiā le xià gè yuè de yǎnjiǎng bǐsài yǒu jǐ gè wèntí xiǎng qǐngjiào nín · Teacher Wang, I've signed up for next month's speech contest, and there are a few things I'd like to ask you.

teacher wang 好啊！比赛的要求是什么？
hǎo a bǐsài de yāoqiú shì shénme · Of course! What are the rules?

anna 要求如下：时间五分钟，主题是“如何学好汉字”。
yāoqiú rúxià shíjiān wǔ fēnzhōng zhǔtí shì rúhé xué hǎo Hànzì · They're as follows: five minutes, on the theme "How to learn characters well".

teacher wang 你的词汇没问题，要注意的是发音。很多同学只看拼音字母，不听录音，所以字老是念错。
nǐ de cíhuì méi wèntí yào zhùyì de shì fāyīn hěn duō tóngxué zhǐ kàn pīnyīn zìmǔ bù tīng lùyīn suǒyǐ zì lǎoshì niàn cuò · Your vocabulary is fine; what you need to watch is pronunciation. Lots of students only look at the pinyin letters and don't listen to recordings, so they keep misreading characters.

anna 我知道。我现在每天晚上都在家里把演讲录下来，发语音给小明听。
wǒ zhīdào wǒ xiànzài měi tiān wǎnshang dōu zài jiā lǐ bǎ yǎnjiǎng lù xialai fā yǔyīn gěi Xiǎomíng tīng · I know. Every evening I record my speech at home and send it to Xiaoming as a voice message.

teacher wang 很好。你还可以用几个比喻。很多东西的名称很有意思，比如“电脑”就是“电的大脑”。
hěn hǎo nǐ hái kěyǐ yòng jǐ gè bǐyù hěn duō dōngxi de míngchēng hěn yǒu yìsi bǐrú diànnǎo jiùshì diàn de dànǎo · Good. You could also use a few metaphors. Lots of names of things are fun: 电脑, a computer, is an "electric brain".

anna 这个比喻好！可是我练的时候，讲快了也不是，讲慢了也不是。
zhège bǐyù hǎo kěshì wǒ liàn de shíhou jiǎng kuài le yě bú shì jiǎng màn le yě bú shì · That's a great one! But when I practise, it feels wrong if I go fast and wrong if I go slowly.

teacher wang 别紧张，正常讲就行。你可以参考去年的演讲，网上都有。
bié jǐnzhāng zhèngcháng jiǎng jiù xíng nǐ kěyǐ cānkǎo qùnián de yǎnjiǎng wǎngshang dōu yǒu · Don't be nervous; just speak normally. You can look at last year's speeches; they're all online.

anna 可是我的记忆不太好，五分钟的内容，我怕记不住。
kěshì wǒ de jìyì bú tài hǎo wǔ fēnzhōng de nèiróng wǒ pà jì bu zhù · But my memory isn't great. Five minutes of material, I'm afraid I won't remember it.

teacher wang 哪怕忘了几句，也没关系。你的写作这么好，同学们都称你为“小作家”呢！
nǎpà wàng le jǐ jù yě méi guānxi nǐ de xiězuò zhème hǎo tóngxuémen dōu chēng nǐ wéi xiǎo zuòjiā ne · Even if you forget a few lines, it doesn't matter. Your writing is so good, your classmates call you "the little writer"!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

拼
pīn
to go all out; to piece together

汇
huì
to gather

good to know · Try the order on your own day: 我今天早上在地铁上用手机学了二十个词. Time, place, how, then the verb. 念 is “read aloud” (念课文); 读 can be aloud or silent. Some people also say 念大学 for “to be at university”. 重 chóng is also a verb, “to duplicate, overlap”: 这两个字重了 these two words repeat each other, 重名 to share a name. Don’t mix it up with zhòng, “heavy”.

Longer sentences with when, where and how in the right order: that’s what makes Chinese sound like Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 39 how we think

Talk about ideas, thinking and conclusions, and say “not only didn’t it…, it actually…” with 不但不……，反而……

Discussions, opinions and “what does it really mean?” are the heart of HSK 5 reading, and of any good conversation.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
思考	sīkǎo	to think (carefully)	遇到问题先别着急，认真思考一下。 When you hit a problem, don’t panic. Think it through first.
思维	sīwéi	thinking, way of thinking	学一门{=(measure word for courses)}外语，也是学一种新的思维方式。 Learning a foreign language also means learning a new way of thinking.
思想	sīxiǎng	thought, ideas	这本书的思想很深刻，我看了好几遍。 The ideas in this book are profound. I’ve read it several times.
想象	xiǎngxiàng	to imagine; imagination	我很难想象没有手机的生活。 I can hardly imagine life without a phone.
逻辑	luójí	logic	这篇文章的逻辑很清楚，很好懂。 The logic of this article is very clear, so it’s easy to follow.
分析	fēnxī	to analyse	我们来分析一下这次考试的问题。 Let’s look at what went wrong in this exam.
概念	gàiniàn	concept, idea	这个概念有点儿难，我再举个例子。 This idea is a bit hard, so let me give another example.
观察	guānchá	to observe, watch closely	孩子们在认真地观察树上的小鸟。 The children are watching the birds in the tree closely.
观念	guānniàn	idea, notion, values	年轻人和老人的观念常常不一样。 Young people and older people often see things differently.
理论	lǐlùn	theory	理论再好，也要在生活中试一试。 However good a theory is, you have to try it out in real life.
结论	jiélùn	conclusion	现在下结论还太早。 It’s too early to draw a conclusion.
本质	běnzhì	essence, nature	这两个问题看起来不同，本质上是一样的。 These two problems look different, but they’re the same at heart.
意识	yìshí	to realise; awareness	我这才意识到自己说错了。 Only then did I realise I’d said the wrong thing.
意义	yìyì	meaning, significance	这次活动很有意义。 This event is really worthwhile.

智慧	zhìhuì	wisdom	老人的经验里有很多生活的智慧。 There's a lot of everyday wisdom in what older people have learned.
深刻	shēnkè	deep, profound	这部电影给我留下了深刻的印象。 This film made a deep impression on me.
疑问	yíwèn	question, doubt	大家还有什么疑问吗? Does anyone have any more questions?
忽视	hūshì	to overlook, neglect	学语言的时候，千万别忽视发音。 When you learn a language, never neglect pronunciation.
体会	tǐhuì	to come to understand; experience	当了老师以后，我才体会到老师的辛苦。 Only after becoming a teacher did I understand how hard teachers work.
体现	tǐxiàn	to reflect, show	这个小礼物体现了他对朋友的关心。 This little gift shows how much he cares about his friends.
必然	bìrán	inevitable, certain	不复习就去考试，考不好是必然的。 If you sit an exam without revising, doing badly is a given.
必要	bìyào	necessary	没有必要为这么小的事生气。 There's no need to get upset over something so small.
必需	bìxū	to need, be essential	对今天的人来说，手机已经是必需的东西了。 For people today, a phone has become a necessity.
应当	yīngdāng	should, ought to	做错了事，就应当说“对不起”。 When you've done something wrong, you ought to say sorry.
进一步	jìnyībù	further	我们需要进一步了解学生的想法。 We need to understand the students' views better.

pattern 不但不……，反而……: not only not …, but instead …

不但不 / 不但没（有） **what you'd expect** ，反而 **the opposite**

Use it when things go the opposite way to what you'd expect. The first part says the expected thing didn't happen: 不但不 (now, habits) or 不但没（有） (in the past). 反而 then brings in the surprise: "on the contrary".

雨不但没停，反而越下越大了。 **yǔ búdàn méi tíng fǎnér yuè xià yuè dà le** Far from stopping, the rain got heavier and heavier.

老师批评了他，他不但没放弃，反而更勤奋了。 **lǎoshī pīpíng le tā tā búdàn méi fàngqì fǎnér gèng qínfèn le** The teacher criticised him, and instead of giving up he worked even harder.

担心太多不但没有必要，反而会让人更紧张。 **dānxīn tài duō búdàn méiyǒu bìyào fǎnér huì ràng rén gèng jǐnzhāng** Worrying too much doesn't just do no good; it makes you more nervous.

dialogue what are we really learning?

professor sun 今天我们来思考一个问题：学一门外语，究竟学的是什么？
jīntiān wǒmen lái sīkǎo yí gè wèntí xué yì mén wàiyǔ jiūjìng xué de shì shénme · Today let's think about a question: when we learn a foreign language, what exactly are we learning?

anna 我觉得是词汇、语法以及发音。
wǒ juéde shì cíhuì yǔfǎ yǐjí fāyīn · I'd say vocabulary, grammar and pronunciation.

professor sun 这些都很重要。但是从本质上说，学外语也是在学一种新的思维方式。
zhèxiē dōu hěn zhòngyào dànshì cóng běnzhì shàng shuō xué wàiyǔ yě shì zài xué yì zhǒng xīn de sīwéi fāngshì · Those all matter. But at heart, learning a foreign language is also learning a new way of thinking.

anna 我有个疑问：中国人和外国人的思维真的不一样吗？
wǒ yǒu gè yíwèn Zhōngguó rén hé wàiguó rén de sīwéi zhēn de bù yíyàng ma · I have a question: do Chinese people and foreigners really think differently?

professor sun 你可以自己观察。比如时间的概念，中文说“上个月”“下个月”，好像时间是从上往下走的。
nǐ kěyǐ zìjǐ guānchá bǐrú shíjiān de gàiniàn Zhōngwén shuō shàng gè yuè xià gè yuè hǎoxiàng shíjiān shì cóng shàng wǎng xià zǒu de · You can observe it yourself. Take the idea of time: Chinese says “up month” for last month and “down month” for next month, as if time ran from top to bottom.

xiaoming 我从来没想过！我们天天这么说，却忽视了里面的逻辑。
wǒ cónglái méi xiǎng guò wǒmen tiān tiān zhème shuō què hūshì le lǐmiàn de luójí · I've never thought of that! We say it every day and never notice the logic in it.

professor sun 没错。一种语言体现了人们的思想、观念以及生活的智慧。
méi cuò yì zhǒng yǔyán tǐxiàn le rénmen de sīxiǎng guānniàn yǐjí shēnghuó de zhìhuì · Exactly. A language reflects people's thoughts, their values and their everyday wisdom.

anna 原来是这样！我学了这么多年，不但没觉得汉语越来越难，反而觉得越来越有意思了。
yuánlái shì zhèyàng wǒ xué le zhème duō nián búdàn méi juéde Hànyǔ yuè lái yuè nán fǎnér juéde yuè lái yuè yǒu yìsi le · So that's it! After all these years, instead of finding Chinese harder and harder, I find it more and more interesting.

professor sun 真有你的！这就是学语言的意义。下次我们进一步讨论这个理论。
zhēn yǒu nǐ de zhè jiùshì xué yǔyán de yìyì xià cì wǒmen jìnyíbù tǎolùn zhège lǐlùn · Good for you! That's what learning a language is all about. Next time we'll go further into this theory.

xiaoming 今天的课真深刻，我回去得好好体会一下。
jīntiān de kè zhēn shēnkè wǒ huíqù děi hǎohǎo tǐhuì yíxià · That was a really thought-provoking class. I need to go home and let it sink in.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

析
xī
to split

义
yì
meaning; right

good to know · 究竟 adds “exactly, on earth” to a question, like 到底 but more written. As a noun it means “the whole story”: 我想问个究竟, I want to get to the bottom of it. 必需 (essential: 必需的东西) and 必须 (must: 你必须去) sound the same. One is a need, the other is an order.

Big ideas in Chinese: thinking, logic and meaning. You can now follow a discussion, not just a chat.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 40 a research project

Plan a small survey, talk about lectures and research, and say “it’s not just…, there’s also…” with 不是……，还……

Projects, surveys and presentations are part of study and work in China, and the words come up in every HSK 5 reading paper.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
论文	lùnwén	paper, thesis	小明大学最后一年一直在写论文。 Xiaoming spent his last year at university writing his thesis.
学术	xuéshù	academic; scholarship	孙教授下个星期要参加一个学术会议。 Professor Sun is going to an academic conference next week.
学者	xuézhě	scholar	他是一位很有名的历史学者。 He’s a well-known historian.
哲学	zhéxué	philosophy	她大学学的是哲学。 She studied philosophy at university.
问卷	wènjuàn	questionnaire	请大家花五分钟填一下这份问卷。 Please take five minutes to fill in this questionnaire.
讲座	jiǎngzuò	lecture, talk	今天晚上的讲座是关于中国历史的。 Tonight’s talk is about Chinese history.
培养	péiyǎng	to foster, train, develop	父母应当从小培养孩子读书的习惯。 Parents should help children get into the habit of reading from an early age.
系	xì	department (of a university)	我姐姐是北京大学中文系{xi4-5}的学生。 My sister studies in the Chinese department at Peking University.
对比	duìbǐ	to compare, contrast	对比一下这两张照片，你会发现很多不同。 Compare these two photos and you’ll find lots of differences.
预测	yùcè	to predict, forecast	谁也不能准确地预测明天会发生什么。 No one can say for sure what will happen tomorrow.
预计	yùjì	to expect, estimate	飞机预计晚上八点到达。 The plane is expected to land at eight this evening.
原则	yuánzé	principle	我学习的原则是：不懂就问。 My rule when studying is: if you don’t understand, ask.
针对	zhēnduì	to target, aim at	王老师针对每个学生的问题给了建议。 Teacher Wang gave advice aimed at each student’s problems.
模式	móshì	model, pattern, mode	网上上课已经是一种新的学习模式了。 Online classes have become a new way of learning.
情景	qíngjǐng	scene, situation	我还记得第一次来北京的情景。 I still remember what it was like when I first

			came to Beijing.
背景	bèijǐng	background	这张照片的背景是长城。 The Great Wall is in the background of this photo.
把握	bǎwò	to grasp, seize; confidence	这次考试我很有把握。 I feel confident about this exam.
反	fǎn	reversed, inside out; against	你的衣服穿反了！ You've got your top on inside out!
显得	xiǎnde	to look, seem	穿上这件衣服，你显得年轻多了。 You look much younger in that.
深远	shēnyuǎn	far-reaching	这件事对他的影响非常深远。 This had a lasting effect on him.
展示	zhǎnshì	to show, present	下面我给大家展示一下我们的调查结果。 Now I'll show you the results of our survey.
展现	zhǎnxiàn	to show, reveal	这部电影展现了普通北京人的生活。 This film shows the lives of ordinary people in Beijing.
包括	bāokuò	to include	一共有十个|人报名，包括我。 Ten people have signed up, including me.
包含	bāohán	to contain	这个句子包含了两层意思。 This sentence has two layers of meaning.
属于	shǔyú	to belong to	这些书属于学校图书馆，不能带回家。 These books belong to the school library, so you can't take them home.

pattern 不是……，还……: it's not just …, there's also …

不是 **the simple part** ，还 / 还是 **something more**

This pattern goes one step further: the first part says it isn't only the simple thing, and 还 adds the bigger thing that comes on top. It often appears as 不是……就完了/就行了，还要…… With a noun after it, 还是 means "is also".

写论文不是一天两天的事，还要做很多调查。 **xiě lùnwén bú shì yì tiān liǎng tiān de shì hái yào zuò hěn duō diàochá** Writing a paper isn't a matter of a day or two: you also have to do a lot of research.

孙教授不是一般的学者，还是一位有名的作家。 **Sūnjiàoshòu bú shì yìbān de xuézhě háishi yí wèi yǒumíng de zuòjiā** Professor Sun is no ordinary scholar: he's also a well-known writer.

培养一个好习惯，不是坚持一个月就行了，还要坚持好几年。 **péiyǎng yí gè hǎo xíguàn bú shì jiānchí yí gè yuè jiù xíng le hái yào jiānchí hǎo jǐ nián** Building a good habit isn't just keeping it up for a month: you have to keep going for years.

dialogue advice after the lecture

anna 孙教授，您今天的讲座太精彩了！您讲的内容包含了很多我从来没听过的故事。
Sūnjiàoshòu nín jīntiān de jiǎngzuò tài jīngcǎi le nín jiǎng de nèiróng bāohán le hěn duō wǒ cónglái méi tīng guò de gùshi · Professor Sun, your lecture today was brilliant! It was full of stories I'd never heard.

professor sun 谢谢！你们也对学术感兴趣？
xièxie nǐmen yě duì xuéshù gǎn xìngqù · Thank you! Are you interested in academic work too?

xiaoming 我们在做一个小研究，对比中国人和外国人学外语的模式。
wǒmen zài zuò yí gè xiǎo yánjiū duìbǐ Zhōngguó rén hé wàiguó rén xué wàiyǔ de móshì · We're doing a small study comparing how Chinese people and foreigners learn foreign languages.

anna 我们准备了一份问卷，包括二十个问题。可是我们没有把握，问题是不是太多了。
wǒmen zhǔnbèi le yí fèn wènjuàn bāokuò èrshí gè wèntí kěshì wǒmen méiyǒu bǎwò wèntí shì bu shì tài duō le · We've made a questionnaire with twenty questions. But we're not sure if there are too many.

professor sun 做调查有一个原则：每个问题都要有用。你们预计有多少人填？
zuò diàochá yǒu yí gè yuánzé měi gè wèntí dōu yào yǒuyòng nǐmen yùjì yǒu duōshao rén tián · There's one rule for surveys: every question has to be useful. How many people do you expect to fill it in?

anna 我们希望有一百个人以上。不过有几个问题属于哲学问题，比如“学习的意义是什么”，很难回答。
wǒmen xīwàng yǒu yìbǎi gè rén yǐshàng búguò yǒu jǐ gè wèntí shǔyú zhéxué wèntí bǐrú xuéxí de yìyì shì shénme hěn nán huídá · We hope for over a hundred. But a few of the questions are really philosophy questions, like "What is the point of learning?", which are hard to answer.

professor sun 那就把这几个问题拿掉。问卷不是写完就完了，还要先找几个人试一试。
nà jiù bǎ zhè jǐ gè wèntí ná diào wènjuàn bú shì xiě wán jiù wán le hái yào xiān zhǎo jǐ gè rén shì yi shi · Then take those out. And a questionnaire isn't done once it's written: you also need to try it on a few people first.

xiaoming 明白了。结果出来以后，我们想在班上展示一下。
míngbai le jiéguǒ chūlái yǐhòu wǒmen xiǎng zài bān shàng zhǎnshì yíxià · Got it. When the results are in, we'd like to present them to the class.

professor sun 好主意。别忘了先说明调查的背景，这样会显得更专业。
hǎo zhǔyi bié wàng le xiān shuōmíng diàochá de bèijǐng zhèyàng huì xiǎnde gèng zhuānyè · Good idea. Don't forget to explain the background of the survey first. It'll look more professional.

xiaoming 谢谢您！我们下个星期都在学校里做调查，到时候再来请教您。
xièxie nín wǒmen xià gè xīngqī dōu zài xuéxiào lǐ zuò diàochá dào shíhou zài lái qǐngjiào nín · Thank you! We'll all be doing the survey at school next week. We'll come back for more advice then.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

测
cè
to measure, test

含
hán
to contain; hold in the mouth

good to know · 预计 is for numbers and times you expect (预计八点到); 预测 is for forecasting what will happen (预测天气, 预测结果). 包括 lists members (包括我); 包含 is what's inside (包含两层意思). 属于 says what something belongs to (属于学校). 根据 "according to" is also a noun, "basis, grounds": 有什么根据? what's that based on?, 没有根据 groundless.

Surveys, lectures and research questions: you can now take part in a real project in Chinese, from the first idea to the results.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 41 exam day

Talk about results, averages and gaps, and link ideas with 从而, 可见, 假如 and 总之.

Written Chinese leans on linking words: spot 从而, 可见 and 总之 and a long paragraph suddenly makes sense.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
必	bì	must, certainly (written)	来北京，长城是必去的地方。 If you come to Beijing, the Great Wall is a must.
从不	cóngbù	never	他从不迟到，今天是怎么了？ He's never late. What's happened today?
要不是	yàobùshì	if it weren't for	要不是你提醒我，我早就忘了。 If you hadn't reminded me, I'd have forgotten.
无奈	wúnài	helpless; having no choice	听到这个消息，他无奈地笑了笑。 When he heard the news, he gave a helpless little smile.
顺	shùn	along; smooth	顺着这条路一直走，就能看到学校。 Follow this road straight on and you'll see the school.
平均	píngjūn	average; equal	我们班这次考试平均75分。 Our class averaged 75 in this test.
从而	cóngér	thus, thereby	他每天坚持练习，从而提高了口语水平。 He kept practising every day, and so his speaking improved.
可见	kějiàn	which shows that	他连这么简单的题都错了，可见没有认真复习。 He got even this easy question wrong, which shows he didn't revise properly.
假如	jiǎrú	if, supposing	假如明天下雨，我们就改天再去。 If it rains tomorrow, we'll go another day.
总之	zǒngzhī	in short, anyway	总之，多听多说才是最好的办法。 In short, listening and speaking a lot is the best way.
数	shǔ	to count	你数{shu3}一数{shu3}，一共来了多少人。 Count how many people have come.
轻易	qīngyì	easily, lightly	别轻易放弃，再试一次吧。 Don't give up so easily. Try once more.
突出	tūchū	outstanding; to highlight	她的阅读成绩特别突出。 Her reading results are outstanding.
完整	wánzhěng	complete, whole	请用完整的句子回答问题。 Please answer in full sentences.
完美	wánměi	perfect	世界上没有完美的人。 Nobody in the world is perfect.
相对	xiāngduì	relatively; opposite	听力相对容易，写作比较难。 Listening is relatively easy; writing is harder.
相关	xiāngguān	related, relevant	请准备好和这次考试相关的材料。 Please get the materials for this exam ready.

一致	yīzhì	in agreement, the same	大家的意见很一致。 Everyone is of the same opinion.
不符	bùfú	not to match	你说的情况和事实不符。 What you've described doesn't match the facts.
差别	chābié	difference	这两个词的差别不大。 There isn't much difference between these two words.
差距	chājù	gap, distance	我的口语和他比还有很大差距。 My speaking still has a long way to go compared with his.
由此	yóucǐ	from this	由此可见，每天练习非常重要。 This shows how important it is to practise every day.
以	yǐ	with, by, as; so as to	他以第一名的成绩考上了大学。 He got into university with the top score.
掌握	zhǎngwò	to master, grasp	学了半年，她已经掌握了基本的语法。 After six months she's got the hang of the basic grammar.
运用	yùnyòng	to use, apply	学过的词要多运用，才能真正记住。 Use the words you've learned a lot, and they'll really stick.

pattern 从而, 可见, 假如, 总之: thus, which shows, if, in short

fact or cause **，从而 / ，可见** **result / what it shows**

从而 adds the result an action leads to: "and so, thereby". 可见 (or 由此可见) draws a conclusion from a fact: "which shows that". 假如 is a written 如果 (often with 就), and 总之 sums up: "in short".

他每天坚持练习，从而掌握了这些用法。 **tā měi tiān jiānchí liànxí cóngér zhǎngwò le zhèxiē yòngfǎ** He practised every day and so got these usages down.

题目这么简单，大家却都错了，可见没有认真看。 **tímù zhème jiǎndān dàjiā què dōu cuò le kějiàn méiyǒu rènzhēn kàn** The question was so easy, yet everyone got it wrong. Clearly no one read it carefully.

假如你是老师，你会如何回答？ **jiǎrú nǐ shì lǎoshī nǐ huì rúhé huídá** If you were the teacher, how would you answer?

总之，和考试相关的材料都要带好。 **zǒngzhī hé kǎoshì xiāngguān de cáiliào dōu yào dài hǎo** In short, bring everything you need for the exam.

dialogue the results are in

teacher wang 安娜，上星期的考试成绩出来了。你考得相当不错！
Ānnà shàng xīngqī de kǎoshì chéngjì chūlái le nǐ kǎo de xiāngdāng búcuò · Anna, last week's exam results are out. You did really well!

anna 真的吗？考试那天一点儿也不顺。我数了数，作文只写了三百字。
zhēn de ma kǎoshì nà tiān yìdiǎnr yě bú shùn wǒ shǔ le shu zuòwén zhǐ xiě le sānbǎi zì · Really? Nothing went right that day. I counted, and my essay was only three hundred characters.

teacher wang 你的阅读成绩特别突出：全班平均70分，你考了90分。
nǐ de yuèdú chéngjì tèbié tūchū quán bān píngjūn fēn nǐ kǎo le fēn · Your reading was outstanding: the class average was 70, and you got 90.

anna 要不是您常常让我们读文章，我的阅读不会提高得这么快。
yàobúshì nín chángcháng ràng wǒmen dú wénzhāng wǒ de yuèdú bú huì tígāo de zhème kuài · If you didn't have us read so many articles, my reading wouldn't have improved so fast.

teacher wang 听力相对也不错，可是写作的差距还比较大。你的作文不太完整，最后一段太短了。
tīnglì xiāngduì yě búcuò kěshì xiězuò de chājù hái bǐjiào dà nǐ de zuòwén bú tài wánzhěng zuìhòu yí duàn tài duǎn le · Your listening is fairly good too, but your writing is still well behind. Your essay isn't complete: the last paragraph is too short.

anna 时间不够了，我也很无奈。
shíjiān búgòu le wǒ yě hěn wúnài · I ran out of time. There was nothing I could do.

teacher wang 可见安排时间很重要。下次先花五分钟想清楚要写什么，从而节省后面的时间。
kějiàn ānpái shíjiān hěn zhòngyào xià cì xiān huā wǔ fēnzhōng xiǎng qīngchu yào xiě shénme cóngér jiéshěng hòumiàn de shíjiān · Which shows how important it is to plan your time. Next time, spend five minutes deciding what to write first; that saves time later.

anna 明白了。我的问题是：学过的词都掌握了，可是写作的时候不会运用。
míngbai le wǒ de wèntí shì xué guò de cí dōu zhǎngwò le kěshì xiězuò de shíhou bú huì yùnyòng · I see. My problem is that I know all the words I've learned, but I can't use them when I write.

teacher wang 老师们的意见很一致：你得多写。每天写一篇小作文，这是必做的练习。总之，别轻易放弃！
lǎoshīmen de yìjiàn hěn yízhì nǐ děi duō xiě měi tiān xiě yì piān xiǎo zuòwén zhè shì bì zuò de liànxí zǒngzhī bié qīngyì fàngqì · All the teachers agree: you need to write more. One short piece a day: that's a must. In short, don't give up easily!

anna 好！哪怕再忙，我每天也写一篇。
hǎo nǎpà zài máng wǒ měi tiān yě xiě yì piān · OK! However busy I am, I'll write one every day.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

均
jūn
equal

致
zhì
to reach, send

good to know · 从而 keeps the same subject and adds the result: 他坚持练习，从而提高了水平. Don't start a new sentence with it. 差别 is any difference; 差距 is a gap where one side is behind: 我和他的差距还很大.

Results, averages and "which shows that…": you can now talk about how an exam went, and what to do next.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 42 mission: the class presentation

Follow a whole class project in Chinese, from the survey results to the questions after the talk.

A mission puts days 37–41 to work together: school words, speeches, ideas, research and linking words, all in one story.

chapter 1 the notice on the board

teacher wang
大家看一下这个通知，我读一读：
dàjiā kàn yíxià zhège tōngzhī wǒ dú yi du · Everyone, have a look at this notice. I'll read it out:

teacher wang
“各位同学：本学年的汉语演讲比赛下个月开始。比赛分初级和中级两个级，题目由大家自己选。比赛的时间、地点及要求，请看学校的网站。假如你想参加，请在本周五以前报名。成绩好的同学可以得到证书，还可以拿到两个学分。”
gèwèi tóngxué běn xuénián de Hànyǔ yǎnjiǎng bǐsài xià gè yuè kāishǐ bǐsài fēn chūjí hé zhōngjí liǎng gè jí tímù yóu dàjiā zìjǐ xuǎn bǐsài de shíjiān dìdiǎn jí yāoqiú qǐng kàn xuéxiào de wǎngzhàn jiǎrú nǐ xiǎng cānjiā qǐng zài běn zhōu wǔ yǐqián bàomíng chéngjì hǎo de tóngxué kěyǐ dédào zhèngshū hái kěyǐ ná dào liǎng gè xuéfēn · “Dear students: this school year's Chinese speech contest starts next month. There are two levels, elementary and intermediate, and you choose your own topic. For the time, the place and the rules, see the school website. If you'd like to take part, please sign up before this Friday. Students who do well receive a certificate and two course credits.”

anna
我想参加中级的！不过我们的研究也要在班上展示，时间够吗？
wǒ xiǎng cānjiā zhōngjí de búguò wǒmen de yánjiū yě yào zài bān shàng zhǎnshì shíjiān gòu ma · I want to enter the intermediate level! But we also have to present our research in class. Will there be time?

teacher wang
够。你们可以把研究的结果作为演讲的题目。学校图书馆里有很多图书和教材，你们可以去查。
gòu nǐmen kěyǐ bǎ yánjiū de jiéguǒ zuòwéi yǎnjiǎng de tímù xuéxiào túshūguǎn lǐ yǒu hěn duō túshū hé jiàocái nǐmen kěyǐ qù chá · Yes. You can make the results of your research the topic of your speech. The school library has lots of books and textbooks you can look things up in.

little sister
安娜姐姐，我也在准备考试。试卷上的题目太多了，我得专心。
Ānnà jiějie wǒ yě zài zhǔnbèi kǎoshì shìjuàn shàng de tímù tài duō le wǒ děi zhuānxīn · Anna, I'm getting ready for exams too. There are so many questions on the paper: I have to concentrate.

anna
上次你买的尺子、橡皮以及毛笔都用上了吗？
shàng cì nǐ mǎi de chǐzi xiàngpí yǐjí máobǐ dōu yòng shàng le ma · Did you use the ruler, the eraser and the brush you bought last time?

little sister
都用上了！我希望被北京的大学录取，住宿舍，学一个新学科。我们语文老师说，现在的人学历越来越高。
dōu yòng shàng le wǒ xīwàng bèi Běijīng de dàxué lùqǔ zhù sùshè xué yí gè xīn xuékē wǒmen yǔwén lǎoshī shuō xiànzài de rén xuélì yuè lái yuè gāo · All of them! I hope to get into a university in Beijing, live in a dorm and study a new subject. Our Chinese teacher says people's qualifications keep getting higher.

teacher wang
是啊，很多孩子从幼儿园就开始学外语了。
shì a hěn duō háizi cóng yòuéryuán jiù kāishǐ xué wàiyǔ le · That's right: lots of children start learning a foreign language at kindergarten.

chapter 2 what the numbers say

xiaoming 问卷都收回来了，一共一百二十份，包括四十份外国人填的。
wènjuàn dōu shōu huilai le yígòng yìbǎièrshí fèn bāokuò sìshí fèn wàiguó rén tián de · All the questionnaires are back: a hundred and twenty, including forty filled in by foreigners.

anna 太好了！我们先对比一下：中国人和外国人每天平均学多长时间外语?
tài hǎo le wǒmen xiān duìbǐ yíxià Zhōngguó rén hé wàiguó rén měi tiān píngjūn xué duō cháng shíjiān wàiyǔ · Great! Let's compare first: on average, how long do Chinese people and foreigners spend on a foreign language each day?

xiaoming 中国人平均四十分钟，外国人只有二十五分钟。
Zhōngguó rén píngjūn sìshí fēnzhōng wàiguó rén zhǐ yǒu èrshíwǔ fēnzhōng · Chinese people forty minutes on average; foreigners only twenty-five.

anna 可是外国人的口语成绩反而更好。可见时间不是最重要的。
kěshì wàiguó rén de kǒuyǔ chéngjì fǎnér gèng hǎo kějiàn shíjiān bú shì zuì zhòngyào de · And yet the foreigners do better at speaking. Which shows time isn't the most important thing.

xiaoming 我数了数：问卷里包含二十个问题，有三个问题的结果跟我们的预计不符。
wǒ shǔ le shu wènjuàn lǐ bāohán èrshí gè wèntí yǒu sān gè wèntí de jiéguǒ gēn wǒmen de yùjì bùfú · I counted: the questionnaire had twenty questions, and the results of three didn't match what we'd expected.

anna 我们原来预测中国人的口语会更好，结果正好反了。这说明两种人的学习观念有很大的差别。
wǒmen yuánlái yùcè Zhōngguó rén de kǒuyǔ huì gèng hǎo jiéguǒ zhènghǎo fǎn le zhè shuōmíng liǎng zhǒng rén de xuéxí guānniàn yǒu hěn dà de chābié · We predicted Chinese people would speak better, and it turned out exactly the other way round. That shows there's a big difference in how the two groups think about learning.

xiaoming 别急着下结论。我们得再分析一下他们是如何学的。
bié jí zhe xià jiélùn wǒmen děi zài fēnxī yíxià tāmen shì rúhé xué de · Don't jump to conclusions. We need to look at how they learn first.

anna 我们应当把这些数字写进论文吗?
wǒmen yīngdāng bǎ zhèxiē shùzì xiě jìn lùnwén ma · Should we put these numbers in the paper?

xiaoming 有必要。不过别轻易下结论，要先观察更多的情景。
yǒu bìyào búguò bié qīngyì xià jiélùn yào xiān guānchá gèng duō de qíngjǐng · We need to. But let's not jump to conclusions: we should look at more situations first.

anna 你看这个问题：外国人一般说“跟朋友聊天”，中国人一般说“做题”。
nǐ kàn zhège wèntí wàiguó rén yìbān shuō gēn péngyou liáotiān Zhōngguó rén yìbān shuō zuò tí · Look at this question: foreigners mostly said “chatting with friends”, Chinese people mostly said “doing exercises”.

xiaoming 这就是两种不同的学习模式！总之，结果很有意思。
zhè jiùshì liǎng zhǒng bù tóng de xuéxí móshì zǒngzhī jiéguǒ hěn yǒu yìsi · So that's two different ways of learning! In short, the results are really interesting.

anna 那我们的主题就叫“学外语：做题还是聊天？”
nà wǒmen de zhǔtí jiù jiào xué wàiyǔ zuò tí háishi liáotiān · Then let's call our talk “Learning a language: exercises or chatting?”

chapter 3 the rehearsal

anna 王老师，我们想请您听一下我们的演讲，可以吗？
Wánglǎoshī wǒmen xiǎng qǐng nín tīng yíxià wǒmen de yǎnjiǎng kěyǐ ma · Teacher Wang, could you listen to our talk for us?

teacher wang 当然可以。开始吧，我把它录下来，你们回去可以自己听。
dāngrán kěyǐ kāishǐ ba wǒ bǎ tā lù xialai nǐmen huíqù kěyǐ zìjǐ tīng · Of course. Go ahead. I'll record it so you can listen to it yourselves later.

anna 大家好！今天我们想跟大家展示一下我们的调查结果……
dàjiā hǎo jīntiān wǒmen xiǎng gēn dàjiā zhǎnshì yíxià wǒmen de diàochá jiéguǒ · Hello, everyone! Today we'd like to show you the results of our survey…

teacher wang 停一下。“展示”这个词，你的发音不太对，请你再重复一遍。
tíng yíxià zhǎnshì zhège cí nǐ de fāyīn bú tài duì qǐng nǐ zài chóngfù yí biàn · Stop for a second. Your pronunciation of 展示 isn't quite right. Say it again, please.

anna 展示……展示。这样对吗？
zhǎnshì zhǎnshì zhèyàng duì ma · 展示… 展示. Is that right?

teacher wang 对了！还有，别一直看手机念，要看着大家讲。
duì le hái yǒu bié yìzhí kàn shǒujī niàn yào kàn zhe dàjiā jiǎng · That's it! And don't just read off your phone: look at the audience while you talk.

anna 有的字的读音我老是忘，只能看拼音字母。
yǒude zì de dúyīn wǒ lǎoshì wàng zhǐ néng kàn pīnyīn zìmǔ · I keep forgetting how some characters are pronounced, so I can only look at the pinyin letters.

teacher wang 多听录音，记忆就会好一些。你的词汇已经很丰富了，写作也不错。
duō tīng lùyīn jìyì jiù huì hǎo yìxiē nǐ de cíhuì yǐjīng hěn fēngfù le xiězuò yě búcuò · Listen to recordings a lot and your memory will get better. Your vocabulary is already rich, and your writing is good too.

teacher wang 还有，你这一页的两个“展示”重了，拿掉一个吧。
hái yǒu nǐ zhè yí yè de liǎng gè zhǎnshì chóng le ná diào yí gè ba · And on this page the word 展示 is repeated: take one of them out.

anna 好，我把您的意见都记录下来了。我还想请教一下：我用“电脑是电的大脑”这个比喻，合适吗？
hǎo wǒ bǎ nín de yìjiàn dōu jìlù xialai le wǒ hái xiǎng qǐngjiào yíxià wǒ yòng diànnǎo shì diàn de dànǎo zhège bǐyù héshì ma · OK, I've noted down all your comments. Can I ask you one more thing: is it all right to use the metaphor “a computer is an electric brain”?

teacher wang 很合适，大家都会觉得很生动。很多东西的名称都很有意思，这是常识，可是很多人忽视了。
hěn héshì dàjiā dōu huì juéde hěn shēngdòng hěn duō dōngxi de míngchēng dōu hěn yǒu yìsi zhè shì chángshí kěshì hěn duō rén hūshì le · It's fine: everyone will find it vivid. The names of lots of things are interesting: it's common knowledge, but many people overlook it.

xiaoming 我每天晚上给安娜发语音，帮她练习这些词的用法。
wǒ měi tiān wǎnshang gěi Ānnà fā yǔyīn bāng tā liànxí zhèxiē cí de yòngfǎ · Every evening I send Anna voice messages to help her practise how these words are used.

teacher wang 很好。比赛的时候，老师们会评你的发音和内容。
hěn hǎo bǐsài de shíhou lǎoshīmen huì píng nǐ de fāyīn hé nèiróng · Good. In the contest, the teachers will judge your pronunciation and your content.

xiaoming 我讲的那一部分，时间是不是太长了？
wǒ jiǎng de nà yí bùfen shíjiān shì bu shì tài cháng le · Is my part too long?

teacher wang 有一点儿。你的内容很完整，但是有些例子跟主题不太相关，可以拿掉。
yǒuyìdiǎnr nǐ de nèiróng hěn wánzhěng dànshì yǒuxiē lìzi gēn zhǔtí bú tài xiāngguān kěyǐ ná diào · A little. Your content is complete, but some of your examples aren't really on topic, so you can cut them.

chapter 4 presentation day

teacher wang 今天孙教授也来了，欢迎！下面请安娜和小明给大家展示他们的研究。
jīntiān Sūnjiàoshòu yě lái le huānyíng xiàmiàn qǐng Ānnà hé Xiǎomíng gěi dàjiā zhǎnshì tāmen de yánjiū · Professor Sun is here with us today. Welcome! And now Anna and Xiaoming will present their research.

anna 谢谢王老师！首先介绍一下背景：很多人每天都很勤奋地学外语，可是口语还是不好。
xièxie Wánglǎoshī shǒuxiān jièshào yíxià bèijǐng hěn duō rén měi tiān dōu hěn qínfèn de xué wàiyǔ kěshì kǒuyǔ háishi bù hǎo · Thank you, Teacher Wang! First, the background: lots of people study a foreign language hard every day, and their speaking is still weak.

xiaoming 所以我们发了一份问卷，一共收回一百二十份。结果如下。
suǒyǐ wǒmen fā le yí fèn wènjuàn yígòng shōu huí yìbǎièrshí fèn jiéguǒ rúxià · So we sent out a questionnaire and got a hundred and twenty back. Here are the results.

anna 我们同四十个外国学生以及八十个中国学生都聊了聊。
wǒmen tóng sìshí gè wàiguó xuéshēng yǐjí bāshí gè Zhōngguó xuéshēng dōu liáo le liao · We talked with the forty foreign students and the eighty Chinese students as well.

anna 做题多的人，语法相对好一些；聊天多的人，口语更好。
zuò tí duō de rén yǔfǎ xiāngduì hǎo yìxiē liáotiān duō de rén kǒuyǔ gèng hǎo · People who do lots of exercises have relatively better grammar; people who chat a lot speak better.

xiaoming 有的人每天做两个小时题，口语不但没有提高，反而越来越不敢说了。
yǒude rén měi tiān zuò liǎng gè xiǎoshí tí kǒuyǔ búdàn méiyǒu tígāo fǎnér yuè lái yuè bù gǎn shuō le · Some people do two hours of exercises a day, and instead of improving, they get more and more afraid to speak.

anna 假如你每天只做题，不说话，口语必然不会好。
jiǎrú nǐ měi tiān zhǐ zuò tí bù shuōhuà kǒuyǔ bìrán bú huì hǎo · If all you do every day is exercises and you never speak, your speaking is bound not to improve.

xiaoming 学外语，从本质上说，是学一种新的思维。语言体现了人们的思想和智慧。我们必须掌握语法，也要在生活中运用。
xué wàiyǔ cóng běnzhì shàng shuō shì xué yì zhǒng xīn de sīwéi yǔyán tǐxiàn le rénmen de sīxiǎng hé zhìhuì wǒmen bìxū zhǎngwò yǔfǎ yě yào zài shēnghuó zhōng yùnyòng · Learning a language is, at heart, learning a new way of thinking. A language reflects people's ideas and their wisdom. We have to master the grammar, and we also have to use it in daily life.

anna 由此可见，学外语不是做完题就行了，还要多跟人交流。
yóu cǐ kějiàn xué wàiyǔ bú shì zuò wán tí jiù xíng le hái yào duō gēn rén jiāoliú · This shows that learning a language isn't just doing exercises: you also need to talk with people a lot.

xiaoming 总之，我们的建议是：做题和聊天都要有，从而让语法和口语一起提高。
zǒngzhī wǒmen de jiànyì shì zuò tí hé liáotiān dōu yào yǒu cóngér ràng yǔfǎ hé kǒuyǔ yìqǐ tígāo · In short, our advice is: do both exercises and chatting, so that grammar and speaking improve together.

teacher wang 讲得很清楚！大家有什么疑问，可以提问。
jiǎng de hěn qīngchu dàjiā yǒu shénme yíwèn kěyǐ tíwèn · Very clear! If anyone has questions, go ahead and ask.

chapter 5 a question from the professor

professor sun 你们的研究很有意义。我想问个究竟：一百二十个人，这个结论有什么根据？你们的问卷是针对什么人的？
nǐmen de yánjiū hěn yǒu yìyì wǒ xiǎng wèn gè jiūjìng yìbǎièrshí gè rén zhège jiélùn yǒu shénme gēnjù nǐmen de wènjuàn shì zhēnduì shénme rén de · Your research is very worthwhile. I'd like to get to the bottom of it: with a hundred and twenty people, what is this conclusion based on? Who was your questionnaire aimed at?

anna 主要针对大学生，包括中文系的学生。
zhǔyào zhēnduì dàxuéshēng bāokuò Zhōngwén xì de xuéshēng · Mainly university students, including students from the Chinese department.

xiaoming 您说得对，人数不太多。我们的结论还不完整，只能参考。
nín shuō de duì rénshù bú tài duō wǒmen de jiélùn hái bù wánzhěng zhǐ néng cānkǎo · You're right, it isn't many people. Our conclusion isn't complete yet; it's only a pointer.

anna 所以我们打算进一步调查，下个学年再找三百个人填问卷。
suǒyǐ wǒmen dǎsuàn jìnyíbù diàochá xià gè xuénián zài zhǎo sānbǎi gè rén tián wènjuàn · So we're planning to look further: next school year we'll get three hundred more people to fill in the questionnaire.

professor sun 很好。做研究有一个原则：有多少根据，就说多少。
hěn hǎo zuò yánjiū yǒu yí gè yuánzé yǒu duōshao gēnjù jiù shuō duōshao · Good. Research has one rule: claim only as much as your evidence supports.

professor sun 不过你们的逻辑很清楚，概念也很明确，显得很专业。下个月我有一个讲座，讲语言的理论，你们可以来听。
búguò nǐmen de luójí hěn qīngchu gàiniàn yě hěn míngquè xiǎnde hěn zhuānyè xià gè yuè wǒ yǒu yí gè jiǎngzuò jiǎng yǔyán de lǐlùn nǐmen kěyǐ lái tīng · But your logic is clear and your ideas are well defined: it all looks very professional. Next month I'm giving a lecture on the theory of language: come and listen.

anna 太好了！我从来没想象过自己能跟学者讨论学术问题，就像哲学家似的！
tài hǎo le wǒ cónglái méi xiǎngxiàng guo zìjǐ néng gēn xuézhě tǎolùn xuéshù wèntí jiù xiàng zhéxué jiā shìde · Brilliant! I never imagined I'd be discussing academic questions with a scholar, like a philosopher!

professor sun 学校应当培养这样的学生。好的研究，意义很深远。
xuéxiào yīngdāng péiyǎng zhèyàng de xuéshēng hǎo de yánjiū yìyì hěn shēnyuǎn · Schools should train students like you. Good research has far-reaching value.

teacher wang 孙教授，您觉得他们的演讲能及格吗？
Sūnjiàoshòu nín juéde tāmen de yǎnjiǎng néng jígé ma · Professor Sun, do you think their presentation gets a pass?

professor sun 哪怕是我的大学生，也很少有人讲得这么好。真有你们的！
nǎpà shì wǒ de dàxuéshēng yě hěn shǎo yǒu rén jiǎng de zhème hǎo zhēn yǒu nǐmen de · Even among my university students, few could present this well. You two are something else!

teacher wang 老师们的意见很一致：你们讲得很顺，展现了大家的努力。
lǎoshīmen de yìjiàn hěn yízhì nǐmen jiǎng de hěn shùn zhǎnxiàn le dàjiā de nǔlì · All the teachers agree: your talk went smoothly and showed how hard everyone worked.

anna 谢谢！不过我的演讲还不完美，跟孙教授的学生比，还有差距。
xièxie búguò wǒ de yǎnjiǎng hái bù wánměi gēn Sūnjiàoshòu de xuéshēng bǐ hái yǒu chājù · Thank you! But my talk isn't perfect yet: compared with Professor Sun's students, I'm still behind.

professor sun 你从不放弃，以这样的速度，明年必能通过考试。
nǐ cóng bú fàngqì yǐ zhèyàng de sùdù míngnián bì néng tōngguò kǎoshì · You never give up. At this rate, you're sure to pass the exam next year.

anna 今天的体会很深刻。我意识到，研究也可以很有意思。
jīntiān de tǐhuì hěn shēnkè wǒ yìshí dào yánjiū yě kěyǐ hěn yǒu yìsi · Today taught me a lot. I've realised research can be really interesting.

anna 谢谢孙教授！要不是王老师帮我们练了那么多遍，我们一定会很紧张。
xièxie Sūnjiàoshòu yàobúshì Wánglǎoshī bāng wǒmen liàn le nàme duō biàn wǒmen yídìng huì hěn jǐnzhāng ·

Thank you, Professor Sun! If Teacher Wang hadn't rehearsed with us so many times, we'd have been really nervous.

xiaoming 今天回家，我要把这个好消息告诉我妹妹，她一定也想做研究！

jīntiān huí jiā wǒ yào bǎ zhège hǎo xiāoxi gàosu wǒ mèimei tā yídìng yě xiǎng zuò yánjiū · When I get home I'm telling my little sister the good news. She'll want to do research too!

You just followed a whole project in Chinese: data, a rehearsal, a talk and tough questions. That's real academic Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 43 finding a job

Talk about jobs, skills and CVs, and say “as far as possible” and “in person” with 尽量 and 亲自.

Job hunting in Chinese means talking about your skills with confidence, and polishing a CV that a Chinese manager will read.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
就业	jiùyè	to get a job; employment	今年大学生就业的压力很大。 Graduates are under a lot of pressure to find jobs this year.
失业	shīyè	to be out of work	他失业半年了，最近才找到新工作。 He was out of work for six months and has only just found a new job.
简历	jiǎnlì	CV, résumé	我已经把简历发给那家公司了。 I’ve already sent my CV to that company.
聘请	pìnqǐng	to hire, engage	公司聘请了一位很有经验的经理。 The company has hired a very experienced manager.
人才	réncái	talent, talented person	现在很多公司都在抢人才。 These days lots of companies are competing for talent.
人力	rénlì	manpower, staff	我们公司人力不够，需要再找两个|人。 We’re short-staffed and need two more people.
资格	zīgé	qualifications, eligibility	没有教师证书，就没有资格当老师。 Without a teaching certificate, you can’t be a teacher.
本领	běnlǐng	skill, ability	他的本领很大，家里的东西坏了都是他修。 He’s very handy: whenever anything breaks at home, he fixes it.
才	cái	talent, ability	她很有才{cai2-5}，画画、写作都很好。 She’s very talented: great at both drawing and writing.
技能	jìnéng	skill (technical)	学一门{=(measure word for courses)}新技能，对找工作很有帮助。 Learning a new skill really helps when you’re looking for a job.
擅长	shàncháng	to be good at	安娜擅长画画，小明擅长电脑。 Anna is good at drawing, and Xiaoming is good with computers.
善于	shànyú	to be good at (doing)	她很善于跟人沟通。 She’s very good at communicating with people.
熟练	shúliàn	skilled, practised	他电脑用得非常熟练。 He’s very skilled with computers.
能干	nénggàn	capable, able	林经理是一个非常能干的人。 Manager Lin is extremely capable.
实习	shíxí	to do an internship	大学最后一年，我在一家公司实习了三个月。 In my final year at university, I did a three-month internship at a company.

新人	xīnrén	newcomer, new person	公司来了几个新人，大家要多帮助他们。 A few new people have joined the company. Let's all help them out.
培训	péixùn	to train; training	新人上班以前要先参加一个星期的培训。 Newcomers have a week of training before they start.
报到	bàodào	to report for duty, check in	请新同学明天早上九点到学校报到。 New students, please report to the school at nine tomorrow morning.
前途	qiántú	prospects, future	这个行业很有前途。 This industry has great prospects.
各行各业	gèhánggèyè	every trade and profession	各行各业都需要会外语的人。 Every kind of work needs people who speak foreign languages.
行业	hángyè	industry, line of business	你以后想去哪个行业工作? Which industry would you like to work in?
从事	cóngshì	to work in, be engaged in	我爸爸从事医疗工作三十年了。 My dad has worked in healthcare for thirty years.
尽量	jǐnliàng	as far as possible	明天我会尽量早一点儿到。 I'll try to get there as early as I can tomorrow.
亲自	qīnzì	in person, personally	这件事我要亲自跟他说。 I want to tell him about this myself.
失误	shīwù	mistake, slip; to slip up	这次的失误是我的责任。 This mistake is my responsibility.

pattern 尽量 (as far as possible) and 亲自 (in person)

who | 尽量 / 亲自 | verb ...

Both go straight before the verb. 尽量 means "as much as you can, as far as possible": 尽量早一点儿来, 尽量别迟到. 亲自 means "in person, yourself", often for someone important who doesn't leave it to others: 经理亲自面试.

明天的培训很重要，大家尽量别迟到。 **míngtiān de péixùn hěn zhòngyào dàjiā jǐnliàng bié chídào**
Tomorrow's training is important, so try not to be late, everyone.

这么重要的事，你应该亲自去一趟。 **zhème zhòngyào de shì nǐ yīnggāi qīnzì qù yí tàng** Something this important, you should go in person.

我会尽量把简历写得简单清楚。 **wǒ huì jǐnliàng bǎ jiǎnlì xiě de jiǎndān qīngchu** I'll try to keep my CV as clear and simple as possible.

dialogue polishing the cv

xiaoming 安娜，我想换工作了。我在现在的公司干了三年，学不到新东西了。
Ānnà wǒ xiǎng huàn gōngzuò le wǒ zài xiànzài de gōngsī gàn le sān nián xué bu dào xīn dōngxi le · Anna, I want to change jobs. I've been at my company for three years, and I'm not learning anything new.

anna 你想从事哪个行业？还是做电脑方面的工作吗？
nǐ xiǎng cóngshì nǎge hángyè háishi zuò diànnǎo fāngmiàn de gōngzuò ma · Which industry do you want to work in? Still something with computers?

xiaoming 对。听说你们公司想聘请懂电脑的人才？
duì tīngshuō nǐmen gōngsī xiǎng pìnqǐng dǒng diànnǎo de réncái · Yes. I heard your company wants to hire someone who really knows computers?

anna 是啊，我们人力不够。不过林经理要亲自面试，要求很高。
shì a wǒmen rénlì búgòu búguò Línjīnglǐ yào qīnzì miànshì yāoqiú hěn gāo · That's right, we're short-staffed. But Manager Lin does the interviews herself, and she's demanding.

xiaoming 我有没有资格啊？我擅长做网站，电脑也用得很熟练。
wǒ yǒu méiyǒu zīgé a wǒ shàncháng zuò wǎngzhàn diànnǎo yě yòng de hěn shúliàn · Am I even qualified? I'm good at building websites, and I'm very skilled with computers.

anna 你当然有资格！你又能干，又善于跟人沟通。把简历给我看看。
nǐ dāngrán yǒu zīgé nǐ yòu nénggàn yòu shànyú gēn rén gōutōng bǎ jiǎnlì gěi wǒ kàn kan · Of course you are! You're capable, and you're good with people. Let me see your CV.

xiaoming 给你。我大学的时候在两家公司实习过。
gěi nǐ wǒ dàxué de shíhou zài liǎng jiā gōngsī shíxí guò · Here. I did internships at two companies when I was at university.

anna 写得太长了，尽量写在一页纸上。还有，这儿有个错字。这种小失误，林经理最不喜欢。
xiě de tài cháng le jǐnliàng xiě zài yí yè zhǐ shàng hái yǒu zhèr yǒu gè cuò zì zhè zhǒng xiǎo shīwù Línjīnglǐ zuì bù xǐhuan · It's too long. Try to keep it to one page. And there's a typo here. Manager Lin hates little slips like that.

xiaoming 谢谢！你帮人改简历的本领真大！
xièxie nǐ bāng rén gǎi jiǎnlì de běnlǐng zhēn dà · Thanks! You're really good at fixing people's CVs!

anna 别客气。要是林经理同意，你下个月就能来我们公司报到了！
bié kèqi yàoshi Línjīnglǐ tóngyì nǐ xià gè yuè jiù néng lái wǒmen gōngsī bàodào le · Don't mention it. If Manager Lin says yes, you could be starting at our company next month!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

训
xùn
to instruct

擅
shàn
to be expert in

good to know · Chinese CVs often include a photo, your date of birth and sometimes your hometown. Ask what the company expects. 擅长 takes a skill or field (擅长电脑); 善于 takes a verb (善于沟通).

Skills, CVs and interviews: you can now talk about your own career in Chinese, and help a friend with theirs.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 44 at the office

Follow an office meeting, talk about projects, reports and bosses, and say “no sooner said than done” with 说A就A.

Meetings, proposals and deadlines are the daily language of Chinese offices, and 说干就干 is how a decisive boss talks.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
职场	zhíchǎng	the workplace, working world	刚进入职场的年轻人，常常觉得压力很大。 Young people who’ve just started work often feel a lot of pressure.
职工	zhígōng	staff, workers	这家工厂有两千多名职工。 This factory has over two thousand workers.
员工	yuángōng	employee	公司每年都带员工去旅行。 Every year the company takes its staff on a trip.
老板	lǎobǎn	boss, owner	这家饭馆的老板是我的老同学。 The owner of this restaurant is an old classmate of mine.
领导	lǐngdǎo	leader, boss; to lead	有问题可以直接找领导。 If there’s a problem, you can go straight to the boss.
主任	zhǔrèn	director, head (of an office)	他是我们办公室的主任。 He’s the head of our office.
秘书	mìshū	secretary	林经理的秘书帮我们订了会议室。 Manager Lin’s secretary booked the meeting room for us.
总部	zǒngbù	headquarters	我们公司的总部在上海。 Our company’s headquarters are in Shanghai.
名片	míngpiàn	business card	这是我的名片，有事请给我打电话。 Here’s my card. Give me a call if you need anything.
业务	yèwù	business, professional work	他的业务能力很强。 He’s very good at his job.
项目	xiàngmù	project; item	这个项目下个月必须完成。 This project has to be finished next month.
方案	fāngàn	plan, proposal	我们准备了两个方案，请您看一下。 We’ve prepared two proposals. Please take a look.
报告	bàogào	report; to report	这份报告我明天交给你。 I’ll give you this report tomorrow.
提交	tíjiāo	to submit, hand in	请在星期五以前提交你的报告。 Please hand in your report before Friday.
发言	fāyán	to speak (at a meeting)	开会的时候，每个人都可以发言。 Everyone can speak at the meeting.
主持	zhǔchí	to host, chair	今天的会议由林经理主持。 Today’s meeting is chaired by Manager Lin.

召开	zhàokāi	to convene, hold (a meeting)	公司明天上午召开员工会议。 The company is holding a staff meeting tomorrow morning.
出席	chūxí	to attend (formally)	经理明天要出席一个重要的会议。 The manager is attending an important meeting tomorrow.
接待	jiēdài	to receive (guests)	下午有客人来，请你帮忙接待一下。 Some visitors are coming this afternoon. Could you help look after them?
忙碌	mánglù	busy, bustling	忙碌了一天，终于可以休息了。 After a busy day, I can finally rest.
效率	xiàolǜ	efficiency	我早上工作的效率最高。 I work best in the morning.
高效	gāoxiào	efficient	这个办法又简单又高效。 This method is simple and efficient.
拼	pīn	to go all out; to piece together	他工作太拼了，常常加班到半夜。 He works himself too hard, often until midnight.
搞	gǎo	to do, make, sort out (casual)	这件事你搞清楚了吗? Have you got to the bottom of this?
动手	dòngshǒu	to get to work, start doing	别光说了，我们动手吧! Enough talk. Let's get to work!

pattern 说a就a: no sooner said than done

说 A 就 A

Put the same verb in both A slots: the moment it's said, it happens. 说走就走 off we go, 说干就干 straight to work. It describes decisive people, and also sudden things: 雨说来就来, the rain comes out of nowhere.

我们来一次说走就走的旅行吧！ **wǒmen lái yí cì shuō zǒu jiù zǒu de lǚxíng ba** Let's just pack up and go on a trip!

北京夏天的雨说来就来。 **Běijīng xiàtiān de yǔ shuō lái jiù lái** In Beijing in summer, the rain comes out of nowhere.

她说买就买，一下子买了三件衣服。 **tā shuō mǎi jiù mǎi yíxià zi mǎi le sān jiàn yīfu** She buys things on the spot: three tops in one go.

dialogue monday morning meeting

manager lin 大家早！今天的会我来主持。先说一个好消息：总部给了我们一个大项目。
dàjiā zǎo jīntiān de huì wǒ lái zhǔchí xiān shuō yí gè hǎo xiāoxi zǒngbù gěi le wǒmen yí gè dà xiàngmù · Morning, everyone! I'll chair today's meeting. Good news first: head office has given us a big project.

anna 太好了！是什么业务？
tài hǎo le shì shénme yèwù · Brilliant! What kind of work?

manager lin 给一家有三千多名职工的大公司做新网站。下个星期他们的领导要来，我们得好好接待。
gěi yì jiā yǒu sānqiān duō míng zhígōng de dà gōngsī zuò xīn wǎngzhàn xià gè xīngqī tāmen de lǐngdǎo yào lái wǒmen děi hǎohǎo jiēdài · A new website for a big company with over three thousand staff. Their bosses are coming next week, so we need to look after them well.

anna 那我们先准备几个方案吧？
nà wǒmen xiān zhǔnbèi jǐ gè fāngàn ba · Shall we prepare a few proposals first, then?

manager lin 对。每个人都要发言，说说自己的想法。安娜，你先来。
duì měi gè rén dōu yào fāyán shuō shuo zìjǐ de xiǎngfǎ Ānnà nǐ xiān lái · Yes. Everyone will speak and share their ideas. Anna, you start.

anna 我觉得网站要简单、高效，让员工用起来很方便。
wǒ juéde wǎngzhàn yào jiǎndān gāoxiào ràng yuángōng yòng qǐlai hěn fāngbiàn · I think the website should be simple and efficient, easy for their staff to use.

manager lin 好主意。那就这么定了，说干就干，今天下午就动手！
hǎo zhǔyi nà jiù zhème dìng le shuō gàn jiù gàn jīntiān xiàwǔ jiù dòngshǒu · Good idea. That's settled, then. No time like the present: we start this afternoon!

anna 今天下午？林经理，您真是说干就干啊！
jīntiān xiàwǔ Línjīnglǐ nín zhēn shì shuō gàn jiù gàn a · This afternoon? Manager Lin, you really don't waste any time!

manager lin 职场就是这样，忙碌是正常的。我的秘书已经订好了会议室。
zhíchǎng jiùshì zhèyàng mánglù shì zhèngcháng de wǒ de mìshū yǐjīng dìng hǎo le huìyì shì · That's working life: busy is normal. My secretary has already booked the meeting room.

anna 好吧，那我先去把他们的要求搞清楚。
hǎo ba nà wǒ xiān qù bǎ tāmen de yāoqiú gǎo qīngchu · All right, then I'll go and get clear on exactly what they want.

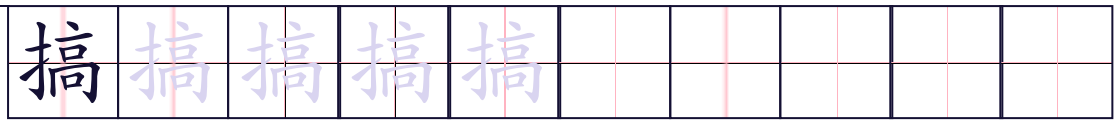
write it trace the grey, then write your own

召
zhào
to summon

席
xí
seat, mat



搞
gǎo
to do, make, sort out (casual)



good to know · 老板 is the owner or boss in everyday speech; in an office people often say 领导 for “the management”, or use the title: 林经理, 王主任. Chinese work chats run on WeChat groups: expect messages, voice notes and files late into the evening. 总 isn’t only “always”: it also means “overall, general, chief”: 总部 headquarters, 总经理 general manager, 总的来说 all in all.

Meetings, proposals and deadlines: you can now follow a Chinese office from the Monday meeting to the last report.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 45 team work

Talk about teamwork, roles and effort, and give the purpose behind an action with ……，为的是……

Chinese workplaces put a lot of weight on the team: who takes on what, how you work together, and why you do it.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
团队	tuánduì	team	我们团队一共有六个人。 There are six people in our team.
队伍	duìwu	line, queue; ranks	买咖啡的队伍排得太长了！ The queue for coffee is far too long!
合作	hézuò	to work together, cooperate	很高兴跟您合作！ It's a pleasure working with you!
配合	pèihé	to work in step, coordinate	他们俩配合得非常好。 The two of them work together really well.
分配	fēnpèi	to assign, share out	经理把工作分配给了大家。 The manager shared out the work among everyone.
环节	huánjié	stage, link (in a process)	每个环节都不能出问题。 Nothing can go wrong at any stage.
承担	chéngdān	to take on, bear	这个责任我来承担。 I'll take responsibility for this.
负担	fùdān	burden, load	孩子上学的费用是家里很大的负担。 School fees are a big burden for the family.
担任	dānrèn	to hold (a post), serve as	她在公司担任经理已经五年了。 She's been a manager at the company for five years.
执行	zhíxíng	to carry out	计划已经定了，现在就看大家如何执行。 The plan is set. Now it's about how we carry it out.
指导	zhǐdǎo	to guide, coach	谢谢您的指导，我学到了很多。 Thank you for your guidance. I've learned a lot.
注重	zhùzhòng	to pay attention to, value	我们公司很注重团队合作。 Our company really values teamwork.
尽力	jìnlì	to do your best	放心吧，我会尽力的。 Don't worry, I'll do my best.
付出	fùchū	to put in, give (effort, time)	为了这个项目，大家付出了很多。 Everyone has put a lot into this project.
奋斗	fèndòu	to strive, work hard for	他奋斗了十年，终于有了自己的公司。 After ten years of hard work, he finally has his own company.

发挥	fāhuī	to bring into play, make the most of	在这个团队里，每个|人都能发挥自己的长处。 In this team, everyone can make the most of their strengths.
结合	jiéhé	to combine	学习要和实际结合起来。 Study has to be combined with practice.
依靠	yīkào	to rely on	这件事我一个|人做不了{liao3-4}，得{dei3}依靠大家。 I can't do this on my own. I have to rely on all of you.
投入	tóurù	to put in; absorbed	她工作的时候非常投入。 She's completely absorbed when she works.
行动	xíngdòng	action; to act	光说不做没有用，要马上行动。 Talk without action is useless. We need to act now.
作出	zuòchū	to make (a decision, effort)	经理很快作出了决定。 The manager made a decision quickly.
开展	kāizhǎn	to launch, carry out (an activity)	学校每年都开展读书活动。 Every year the school runs a reading campaign.
展开	zhǎnkāi	to unfold, spread out; to get going	他把地图展开，放在桌子上。 He spread the map out on the table.
争取	zhēngqǔ	to strive for, aim to	我们要争取下个月完成。 We're aiming to finish next month.
领先	lǐngxiān	to lead, be ahead	比赛还有十分钟，我们还领先两分。 With ten minutes left, we're still two points ahead.

pattern ……，为的是……: all so that, the reason is

what someone does ，为的是 the purpose

First say what someone does, then add 为的是 and the purpose behind it: "the reason is..., all so that...". It puts the stress on the goal, and it's common in both speech and writing.

我们提前开会，为的是让大家都有时间准备。 **wǒmen tíqián kāihuì wèi de shì ràng dàjiā dōu yǒu shíjiān zhǔnbèi** We're meeting early so that everyone has time to prepare.

他每天早上六点起床，为的是多学一个小时。 **tā měi tiān zǎoshang liù diǎn qǐchuáng wèi de shì duō xué yí gè xiǎoshí** He gets up at six every morning, all to get an extra hour of study.

经理很快作出了决定，为的是不让大家再等。 **jīnglǐ hěn kuài zuòchū le juédìng wèi de shì bú ràng dàjiā zài děng** The manager made a quick decision so no one would have to wait any longer.

dialogue anna leads the team

manager lin 安娜，这个项目我想请你担任团队的负责人。你愿意承担吗？
Ānnà zhège xiàngmù wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐ dānrèn tuánduì de fùzérén nǐ yuànyì chéngdān ma · Anna, I'd like you to be the team leader on this project. Are you willing to take it on?

anna 我愿意！不过我是第一次，还需要您多指导。
wǒ yuànyì búguò wǒ shì dì yī cì hái xūyào nín duō zhǐdǎo · Yes! But it's my first time, so I'll need plenty of guidance from you.

manager lin 放心，我会亲自帮你。先把工作分为几个环节，再分配给每个人。
fàngxīn wǒ huì qīnzì bāng nǐ xiān bǎ gōngzuò fēn wéi jǐ gè huánjié zài fēnpèi gěi měi gè rén · Don't worry, I'll help you myself. First split the work into stages, then hand them out.

anna 好。我想结合每个人的长处，让大家都能发挥自己的本领。
hǎo wǒ xiǎng jiéhé měi gè rén de chángchù ràng dàjiā dōu néng fāhuī zìjǐ de běnlǐng · OK. I want to match the work to everyone's strengths so they can all make the most of their skills.

manager lin 很好。我们公司一直很注重团队合作。不过时间不多了，我们要争取两个月完成。
hěn hǎo wǒmen gōngsī yìzhí hěn zhùzhòng tuánduì hézuò búguò shíjiān bù duō le wǒmen yào zhēngqǔ liǎng gè yuè wánchéng · Good. Our company has always valued teamwork. But there isn't much time: we're aiming to finish in two months.

anna 两个月？那大家的负担会不会太重？
liǎng gè yuè nà dàjiā de fùdān huì bu huì tài zhòng · Two months? Won't that be too much for everyone?

manager lin 我知道大家付出了很多。项目完成以后，公司给大家放一个星期假，为的是让大家好好休息。
wǒ zhīdào dàjiā fùchū le hěn duō xiàngmù wánchéng yǐhòu gōngsī gěi dàjiā fàng yí gè xīngqī jià wèi de shì ràng dàjiā hǎohǎo xiūxi · I know everyone gives a lot. When the project's done, the company will give everyone a week off, so you can all have a proper rest.

anna 太好了！那我们今天就开始行动，先开展第一个环节的工作。
tài hǎo le nà wǒmen jīntiān jiù kāishǐ xíngdòng xiān kāizhǎn dì yī gè huánjié de gōngzuò · Brilliant! Then we'll get going today and start on the first stage.

manager lin 好。工作一展开，大家就会很忙。执行的时候有问题，随时找我。
hǎo gōngzuò yì zhǎnkāi dàjiā jiù huì hěn máng zhíxíng de shíhou yǒu wèntí suíshí zhǎo wǒ · Good. Once things get going, everyone will be busy. If anything comes up while you're at it, come to me any time.

anna 明白！我们一定尽力，争取在行业里领先！
míngbai wǒmen yídìng jìnlì zhēngqǔ zài hángyè lǐ lǐngxiān · Understood! We'll do our best and aim to lead the field!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

斗
dòu
to fight

伍
wu
group of five (old army unit)

good to know · 开展 starts an activity (开展活动); 展开 is for something unfolding or getting fully under way (工作展开了, 把地图展开). 承担 is taking on a responsibility (承担责任); 担任 is holding a post (担任经理). 队 “team” is also a measure word for a line or group of people: 一队学生 a line of students. 排队 is to queue up.

Roles, stages and “all so that…”: you can now plan and lead a team in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 46 deals & promotions

Talk about contracts, approvals and promotions, and say “whatever you say goes” with V什么就是什么.

Signing, approving and getting promoted come with their own words, and they show up in every business story and HSK reading.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
合同	hétóng	contract	签合同以前，一定要看清楚每一条。 Before you sign a contract, read every clause carefully.
协议	xiéyì	agreement	两家公司终于达成了协议。 The two companies finally reached an agreement.
签	qiān	to sign	请在这儿签一下你的名字。 Please sign your name here.
签订	qiāndìng	to sign (a contract)	我们下个星期跟他们签订合同。 We’re signing the contract with them next week.
签名	qiānmíng	signature; to sign your name	这本书上有作者的签名。 This book has the author’s signature in it.
签字	qiānzì	to sign (a document)	这份文件需要经理签字。 This document needs the manager’s signature.
批准	pīzhǔn	to approve	领导批准了我们的计划。 The management approved our plan.
批	pī	to approve; to comment on	你的报告经理已经批{pi1-b}了。 The manager has already approved your report.
制订	zhìdìng	to draw up (a plan)	我们先制订一个学习计划吧。 Let’s draw up a study plan first.
制定	zhìdìng	to lay down (rules, policy)	公司制定了新的规定，下个月开始执行。 The company has laid down new rules, which take effect next month.
达成	dáchéng	to reach (an agreement)	我们和对方很快就达成了一致。 We and the other side quickly came to an agreement.
采用	cǎiyòng	to adopt, use	经理采用了安娜的方案。 The manager went with Anna’s proposal.
代替	dàitì	to replace, stand in for	王老师生病了，今天由别的老师代替她上课。 Teacher Wang is ill, so another teacher is taking her class today.
利用	lìyòng	to make use of	我常常利用坐地铁的时间学习。 I often use my time on the underground to study.
专家	zhuānjiā	expert	他是电脑方面的专家。 He’s a computer expert.
领域	lǐngyù	field, area	在这个领域，她是最有名的专家之一。 She’s one of the best-known experts in this

			field.
升	shēng	to rise; to be promoted	她工作三年就升了经理。 She was promoted to manager after just three years.
升级	shēngjí	to upgrade	我的手机该升级了。 My phone needs an update.
提升	tíshēng	to improve; to promote	这次培训提升了大家的业务水平。 The training has raised everyone's professional skills.
调	diào	to transfer (to a post)	他下个月要调到上海工作。 He's being transferred to Shanghai next month.
成果	chéngguǒ	result, achievement	这是我们团队三个月的成果。 This is three months of our team's work.
成就	chéngjiù	achievement	他在医学上取得了很大的成就。 He has achieved a great deal in medicine.
收获	shōuhuò	gains, what you get out of it	这次培训让我收获很大。 I got a lot out of this training.
奖励	jiǎnglì	to reward; reward	公司奖励了每个参加项目的员工。 The company rewarded every employee who worked on the project.
待遇	dàiyù	pay and benefits; treatment	这家公司的待遇很好。 This company offers very good pay and benefits.

pattern v什么（就）是什么: whatever you v, that's it

who | **verb + 什么** | **（就）是什么**

The same 什么 appears twice: whatever is said, chosen or thought of, that's how it will be. 你说什么就是什么 means "whatever you say goes". It can show trust, easy-going agreement, or someone who does things without a plan.

我不挑，你点什么就是什么。 **wǒ bù tiāo nǐ diǎn shénme jiùshì shénme** I'm not fussy. Whatever you order is fine.

电脑要不要升级，你是专家，你说什么就是什么。 **diànnǎo yào búyào shēngjí nǐ shì zhuānjiā nǐ shuō shénme jiùshì shénme** Whether to upgrade the computers is your call: you're the expert, so whatever you say goes.

这个领域她最懂，她定什么就是什么。 **zhège lǐngyù tā zuì dǒng tā dìng shénme jiùshì shénme** She knows this field best, so whatever she decides goes.

dialogue two surprises

manager lin 安娜，坐。合同签了！对方的领导在协议上签字的时候特别高兴。
Ānnà zuò hétóng qiān le duìfāng de lǐngdǎo zài xiéyì shàng qiānzì de shíhou tèbié gāoxìng · Anna, have a seat. The contract's signed! Their boss looked delighted when he signed the agreement.

anna 太好了！这是我们团队三个月的成果。
tài hǎo le zhè shì wǒmen tuánduì sān gè yuè de chéngguǒ · Brilliant! That's three months of the team's work.

manager lin 是啊。总部已经批准了，公司要奖励你们团队。
shì a zǒngbù yǐjīng pīzhǔn le gōngsī yào jiǎnglì nǐmen tuánduì · It is. Head office has approved it: the company is rewarding your team.

anna 真的吗？大家一定很高兴！
zhēn de ma dàjiā yídìng hěn gāoxìng · Really? Everyone will be thrilled!

manager lin 还有一个消息：我们的主任下个月要调到上海总部了。
hái yǒu yí gè xiāoxi wǒmen de zhǔrèn xià gè yuè yào diào dào Shànghǎi zǒngbù le · There's something else: next month our office head is being transferred to head office in Shanghai.

anna 是吗？那谁来当主任？
shì ma nà shéi lái dāng zhǔrèn · Really? So who's going to be the new head?

manager lin 我推荐你代替他，总部也批了。你升主任了！你的待遇也会提升。
wǒ tuījiàn nǐ dàitì tā zǒngbù yě pī le nǐ shēng zhǔrèn le nǐ de dàiyù yě huì tíshēng · I've put you forward to replace him, and head office has approved it. You're the new office head! Your pay and benefits go up too.

anna 我？在这个领域我还不是专家，怕做不好。
wǒ zài zhège lǐngyù wǒ hái bú shì zhuānjiā pà zuò bu hǎo · Me? I'm not an expert in this field yet. I'm afraid I won't be good enough.

manager lin 别担心，你很善于利用每个人的长处。这三年你的收获和成就，大家都看到了。
bié dānxīn nǐ hěn shànyú lìyòng měi gè rén de chángchù zhè sān nián nǐ de shōuhuò hé chéngjiù dàjiā dōu kàn dào le · Don't worry. You're great at making the most of everyone's strengths. Everyone has seen how much you've learned and achieved in three years.

anna 谢谢林经理！那我听您的，您说什么就是什么！
xièxie Línjīnglǐ nà wǒ tīng nín de nín shuō shénme jiùshì shénme · Thank you, Manager Lin! Then I'll do as you say. Whatever you say goes!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

协
xié
to cooperate

good to know · 签 is the everyday verb: 签合同, 签个字. 签订 is formal, for contracts and agreements. 签名 and 签字 are both your signature. 制订 is for plans you draw up; 制定 for rules and policies. In real life people often mix them up. 奖 "prize" is also a verb, "to award, reward": 公司奖了她一万块 the company gave her a 10,000-yuan bonus. 奖励 is the two-character word.

Contracts, approvals and a promotion: you can now follow the business side of work in Chinese, and celebrate it.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 47 moving on

Talk about quitting, retiring and new careers, and tell what happened next with the written ……，便……

Big life changes are a favourite topic at Chinese family dinners, and 便 is how stories and news say “and then”.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
辞职	cízhí	to resign, quit	他上个月辞职了，想自己开公司。 He resigned last month. He wants to start his own company.
离职	lízhí	to leave your job	离职以前，要把工作交给新同事。 Before you leave, hand your work over to your new colleague.
退休	tuìxiū	to retire	我爷爷退休以后，每天去公园散步。 Since he retired, my grandpa walks in the park every day.
劳动	láodòng	labour, work	每个人的劳动都应当被尊重。 Everyone’s work deserves respect.
挣	zhèng	to earn	他现在挣的钱比以前多一倍。 He earns twice as much as he used to.
事业	shìyè	career; cause	她的事业越来越好。 Her career is going from strength to strength.
公务员	gōngwùyuán	civil servant	她大学毕业以后考上了公务员。 After university she passed the exam to become a civil servant.
工程师	gōngchéngshī	engineer	小明是一名电脑工程师。 Xiaoming is a computer engineer.
退出	tuìchū	to withdraw, quit	他因为身体不好，退出了比赛。 He pulled out of the competition because of his health.
寻找	xúnzhǎo	to look for, seek	很多年轻人来北京寻找机会。 Lots of young people come to Beijing looking for opportunities.
应对	yìngduì	to cope with, deal with	遇到变化，我们要学会冷静应对。 When things change, we have to learn to deal with it calmly.
具备	jùbèi	to have, possess (what’s needed)	你已经具备了当经理的能力。 You already have what it takes to be a manager.
手段	shǒuduàn	means, method	手机是现在人们了解新闻的主要手段。 Phones are now the main way people follow the news.
实践	shíjiàn	practice; to put into practice	学到的东西要在实践中运用。 What you learn has to be used in practice.
接触	jiēchù	to come into contact with	我第一次接触汉语，是在十八岁。 I first came across Chinese when I was eighteen.

接近	jiējìn	to get close to, near	时间已经接近半夜了。 It's nearly midnight.
深入	shēnrù	to go deep into; in-depth	我们需要深入了解这个问题。 We need to look into this problem in depth.
吸收	xīshōu	to absorb, take in	孩子吸收新知识特别快。 Children take in new knowledge really fast.
综合	zōnghé	to put together; overall	综合大家的意见，我们决定下个月开始。 Taking everyone's views together, we've decided to start next month.
令	lìng	to make, cause (written)	这个消息令人很吃惊。 This news is quite a surprise.
赏	shǎng	to enjoy (a view); to reward	春天大家都喜欢去公园赏花。 In spring everyone loves going to the park to see the flowers.
随	suí	to follow; to let (as you like)	你想去哪儿都行，随你。 We can go wherever you like. It's up to you.
止	zhǐ	to stop; up to, until	报名到这个星期五为{wei2}止。 Registration closes this Friday.
造	zào	to make, build	这座桥是一百年前造的。 This bridge was built a hundred years ago.
破坏	pòhuài	to damage, destroy	别破坏公园里的花草。 Don't damage the plants in the park.

pattern ……，便……: and then, and so

first event ，便 what follows

便 is the written 就: it links what happens next, often straight after, or as a natural result. You meet it in stories, news and essays: 他吃完饭，便出门了. In speech, 就 is more usual.

综合大家的意见以后，经理便作出了决定。 **zōnghé dàjiā de yìjiàn yǐhòu jīnglǐ biàn zuòchū le juédìng** After weighing up everyone's views, the manager made a decision.

房子造好以后，他们便搬了进去。 **fángzi zào hǎo yǐhòu tāmen biàn bān le jinqu** Once the house was built, they moved in.

春天花一开，人们便去公园赏花。 **chūntiān huā yì kāi rénmen biàn qù gōngyuán shǎng huā** In spring, as soon as the flowers open, people head to the parks to see them.

dialogue two announcements

ms zhang 我有一件事要告诉大家：我决定离职了。
wǒ yǒu yí jiàn shì yào gàosu dàjiā wǒ juédìng lízhí le · I've got something to tell you all: I've decided to leave my job.

dr li 离职？你在公司干了二十多年，已经接近退休的年纪了！
lízhí nǐ zài gōngsī gàn le èrshí duō nián yǐjīng jiējìn tuìxiū de niánjì le · Leave? You've been at that company for over twenty years. You're nearly at retirement age!

ms zhang 我想开一家小茶叶店。我接触茶已经很多年了，一直想试一试。
wǒ xiǎng kāi yì jiā xiǎo cháyè diàn wǒ jiēchù chá yǐjīng hěn duō nián le yìzhí xiǎng shì yi shi · I want to open a little tea shop. I've been around tea for years, and I've always wanted to give it a go.

xiaoming 妈妈，太好了！我支持你。其实我也想辞职，去寻找新的机会：安娜的公司需要一位工程师。
māma tài hǎo le wǒ zhīchí nǐ qíshí wǒ yě xiǎng cízhí qù xúnzhǎo xīn de jīhuì Ānnà de gōngsī xūyào yí wèi gōngchéngshī · Mum, that's great! I'm behind you. Actually, I want to quit too and look for something new: Anna's company needs an engineer.

dr li 你们俩说辞职就辞职啊！
nǐmen liǎ shuō cízhí jiù cízhí a · The two of you just quit, like that!

ms zhang 我们都想了很久。这是我的新事业。我在朋友的茶叶店实践了半年，便下了决心。
wǒmen dōu xiǎng le hěn jiǔ zhè shì wǒ de xīn shìyè wǒ zài péngyou de cháyè diàn shíjiàn le bàn nián biàn xià le juéxīn · We've both thought about it for a long time. This is my new career. I spent six months learning the ropes at a friend's tea shop, and then I made up my mind.

dr li 开店不是挣钱那么简单，还要应对很多问题。
kāi diàn bú shì zhèng qián nàme jiǎndān hái yào yìngduì hěn duō wèntí · Running a shop isn't as simple as making money. There are lots of problems to deal with too.

ms zhang 我知道。我已经具备了一些经验，开店以前还会深入了解这个行业，多吸收别人的好办法。
wǒ zhīdào wǒ yǐjīng jùbèi le yìxiē jīngyàn kāi diàn yǐqián hái huì shēnrù liǎojiě zhège hángyè duō xīshōu biérén de hǎo bànfǎ · I know. I've got some experience already, and before I open I'll look into the trade in depth and learn from other people's good ideas.

little sister 我也可以帮忙！我在网上给妈妈的店做广告，现在这是最好的手段。
wǒ yě kěyǐ bāngmáng wǒ zài wǎngshang gěi māma de diàn zuò guǎnggào xiànzài zhè shì zuìhǎo de shǒuduàn · I can help too! I'll advertise Mum's shop online. That's the best way to do it these days.

dr li 好吧，随你们。等我退休了，也去你的店里喝茶！
hǎo ba suí nǐmen děng wǒ tuìxiū le yě qù nǐ de diàn lǐ hē chá · All right, have it your way. When I retire, I'll come and drink tea in your shop too!

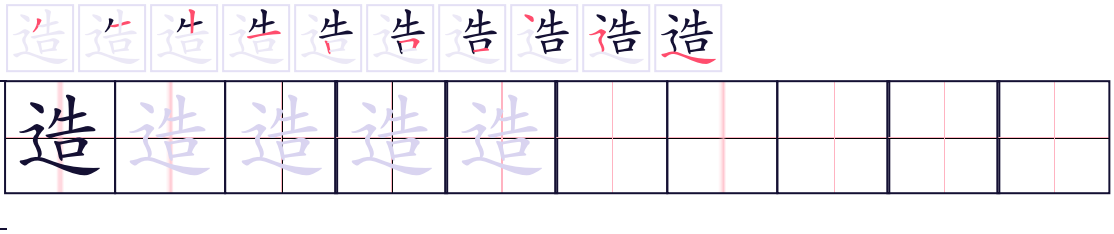
write it trace the grey, then write your own

劳
láo
to toil

寻
xún
to seek



令
lìng
to make, cause (written)



造
zào
to make, build

good to know · 辞职 is resigning by choice; 离职 is leaving a job for any reason; 退休 is retiring. All three end a job, in very different moods. In China the usual retirement age has long been 60 for men and 50 or 55 for women, and it is now being raised step by step.

Quitting, retiring and starting again: you can now talk through a big life change in Chinese, at the dinner table.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

wishyou.today learning

day 48 mission: the job interview

Chinese HSK 5 in 80 days
unit 8 · work & careers

Follow a whole job interview in Chinese, from getting ready the night before to the phone call with the offer.

A mission puts days 43–47 to work together: jobs, the office, teamwork, contracts and big decisions, all in one story.

chapter 1 the night before

xiaoming 安娜，明天就面试了，我有点儿紧张。
Ānnà míngtiān jiù miànshì le wǒ yǒudiǎnr jǐnzhāng · Anna, the interview's tomorrow and I'm a bit nervous.

anna 放心，你又能干，又有本领。我们公司人力不够，林经理说她最需要的是人才。
fàngxīn nǐ yòu nénggàn yòu yǒu běnlǐng wǒmen gōngsī rénlì búgòu Línjīnglǐ shuō tā zuì xūyào de shì réncái · Don't worry: you're capable and skilled. Our company is short-staffed, and Manager Lin says what she needs most is talent.

xiaoming 现在就业这么难，很多人都失业了。我真的有资格吗？
xiànzài jiùyè zhème nán hěn duō rén dōu shīyè le wǒ zhēn de yǒu zīgé ma · Finding a job is so hard these days: lots of people are out of work. Am I really qualified?

anna 当然有。各行各业都需要会做网站的人，你的能力，在我们这个行业能发挥得最好。
dāngrán yǒu gèháng gèyè dōu xūyào huì zuò wǎngzhàn de rén nǐ de nénglì zài wǒmen zhège hángyè néng fāhuī de zuìhǎo · Of course you are. Every trade needs people who can build websites, and your skills fit our line of work best.

anna 别紧张。林经理会亲自面试你，我不能在场，为的是不影响她的决定。
bié jǐnzhāng Línjīnglǐ huì qīnzì miànshì nǐ wǒ bù néng zàichǎng wèi de shì bù yǐngxiǎng tā de juédìng · Don't be. Manager Lin will interview you herself. I can't be there, so I don't sway her decision.

xiaoming 明白。她一般会问什么问题？
míngbai tā yìbān huì wèn shénme wèntí · I understand. What does she usually ask?

anna 你曾经做过的网站，都写进简历了吗？
nǐ céngjīng zuò guo de wǎngzhàn dōu xiě jìn jiǎnlì le ma · Have you put all the websites you've built into your CV?

anna 她会问你擅长什么，以前从事过什么工作，以及为什么想换工作。
tā huì wèn nǐ shàncháng shénme yǐqián cóngshì guò shénme gōngzuò yǐjí wèi shénme xiǎng huàn gōngzuò · She'll ask what you're good at, what work you've done before, and why you want to change jobs.

xiaoming 我的简历上写了我在两家公司实习过，还有我做过的几个网站。
wǒ de jiǎnlì shàng xiě le wǒ zài liǎng jiā gōngsī shíxí guò hái yǒu wǒ zuò guò de jǐ gè wǎngzhàn · My CV mentions my two internships and a few websites I've built.

anna 很好。回答问题的时候尽量多举例子，别说得太长。
hěn hǎo huídá wèntí de shíhou jǐnliàng duō jǔ lìzi bié shuō de tài cháng · Good. When you answer, give examples where you can, and don't go on too long.

xiaoming 还有什么要注意的吗？
hái yǒu shénme yào zhùyì de ma · Anything else I should watch out for?

anna 明天来面试的人很多，门口可能排着一队人。你早一点儿出发，别排在队伍后面。
míngtiān lái miànshì de rén hěn duō ménkǒu kěnéng pái zhe yí duì rén nǐ zǎo yìdiǎnr chūfā bié pái zài duìwu hòumiàn · Lots of people are coming for interviews tomorrow: there may be a whole line of them at the door. Set off early so you're not at the back of the queue.

anna 别迟到！林经理从不迟到，也最不喜欢别人迟到。
bié chídào Línjīnglǐ cóng bù chídào yě zuì bù xǐhuan biérén chídào · Don't be late! Manager Lin is never late, and she can't stand people who are.

chapter 2 the interview

manager lin 请坐。先介绍一下你自己吧。
qǐng zuò xiān jièshào yíxià nǐ zìjǐ ba · Have a seat. Tell me a bit about yourself first.

manager lin 这是我的名片。我是这个部门的负责人，我们的总部在上海，公司一共有三百名员工。
zhè shì wǒ de míngpiàn wǒ shì zhège bùmén de fùzérén wǒmen de zǒngbù zài Shànghǎi gōngsī yígòng yǒu sānbǎi míng yuángōng · Here's my card. I'm head of this department. Our headquarters are in Shanghai, and the company has three hundred employees.

xiaoming 您好！我叫李小明，是一名工程师，从事电脑工作三年了，擅长做网站。
nín hǎo wǒ jiào Lǐ Xiǎomíng shì yì míng gōngchéngshī cóngshì diànnǎo gōngzuò sān nián le shàncháng zuò wǎngzhàn · Hello! I'm Li Xiaoming, an engineer. I've worked with computers for three years, and building websites is my strength.

manager lin 你现在的公司不错，为什么想辞职?
nǐ xiànzài de gōngsī búcuò wèi shénme xiǎng cízhí · Your current company is a good one. Why do you want to leave?

xiaoming 公司很好，可是我想接触新的领域，学习新的技能，为的是让自己的事业更有前途。
gōngsī hěn hǎo kěshì wǒ xiǎng jiēchù xīn de lǐngyù xuéxí xīn de jìnéng wèi de shì ràng zìjǐ de shìyè gèng yǒu qiántú · It is a good company, but I want to get into a new field and learn new skills, so that my career has better prospects.

manager lin 我们公司很注重团队合作。你善于跟别人配合吗?
wǒmen gōngsī hěn zhùzhòng tuánduì hézuò nǐ shànyú gēn biérén pèihé ma · We put a lot of weight on teamwork here. Are you good at working with others?

manager lin 我们的工作很忙碌，有时候大家要拼一下。每周一我们召开团队会议，主任和领导都会出席，每个人都要发言，提交报告。你能接受吗?
wǒmen de gōngzuò hěn mánglù yǒu shíhou dàjiā yào pīn yíxià měi zhōu yī wǒmen zhàokāi tuánduì huìyì zhǔrèn hé lǐngdǎo dōu huì chūxí měi gè rén dōu yào fāyán tíjiāo bàogào nǐ néng jiēshòu ma · Our work is hectic, and sometimes everyone has to go all out. Every Monday we hold a team meeting: the office head and the management attend, and everyone speaks and hands in a report. Can you handle that?

xiaoming 没问题。我以前也常常主持会议，准备方案。我觉得工作要高效，不能搞得太复杂。
méi wèntí wǒ yǐqián yě chángcháng zhǔchí huìyì zhǔnbèi fāngàn wǒ juéde gōngzuò yào gāoxiào bù néng gǎo de tài fùzá · No problem. I often chaired meetings and drew up proposals before. I think work should be efficient, not made too complicated.

xiaoming 我觉得我很善于沟通。在上一个项目里，我担任过团队的负责人。
wǒ juéde wǒ hěn shànyú gōutōng zài shàng yí gè xiàngmù lǐ wǒ dānrèn guò tuánduì de fùzérén · I think I communicate well. On my last project, I was the team leader.

manager lin 如果项目里出现了失误，你会怎么应对?
rúguǒ xiàngmù lǐ chūxiàn le shīwù nǐ huì zěnme yìngduì · If a mistake is made on a project, how would you handle it?

xiaoming 我会先承担自己的责任，再跟团队一起分析问题，尽快解决。
wǒ huì xiān chéngdān zìjǐ de zérèn zài gēn tuánduì yìqǐ fēnxī wèntí jǐnkuài jiějué · First I'd take responsibility for my part, then analyse the problem with the team and fix it as fast as possible.

manager lin 很好。我们要结合每个人的长处，让大家都能发挥本领，争取在行业里领先。年轻人就应该为自己的事业奋斗。
hěn hǎo wǒmen yào jiéhé měi gè rén de chángchù ràng dàjiā dōu néng fāhuī běnlǐng zhēngqǔ zài hángyè lǐ lǐngxiān niánqīng rén jiù yīnggāi wèi zìjǐ de shìyè fèndòu · Good. We match the work to everyone's strengths so they can all make the most of their skills, and we aim to lead the field. Young people should strive for their careers.

chapter 3 a little test

manager lin 下个月我们要开展一个新项目。工作展开以后，每个人的负担都会很重，我们要依靠彼此。
xià gè yuè wǒmen yào kāizhǎn yí gè xīn xiàngmù gōngzuò zhǎnkāi yǐhòu měi gè rén de fùdān dōu huì hěn zhòng wǒmen yào yīkào bǐcǐ · Next month we're starting a new project. Once the work gets going, everyone's load will be heavy, and we'll have to rely on each other.

xiaoming 我会尽力，也愿意付出时间。您分配的工作，我一定认真执行。
wǒ huì jìnlì yě yuànyì fùchū shíjiān nín fēnpèi de gōngzuò wǒ yídìng rènzhēn zhíxíng · I'll do my best, and I'm willing to put the time in. Whatever work you assign me, I'll carry it out properly.

manager lin 最后还有一个小任务。这是我们网站的一个问题，你能在半个小时内解决吗?
zuìhòu hái yǒu yí gè xiǎo rènwu zhè shì wǒmen wǎngzhàn de yí gè wèntí nǐ néng zài bàn gè xiǎoshí nèi jiějué ma · There's one last thing: a little task. This is a problem on our website. Can you fix it within half an hour?

xiaoming 我试试。说干就干，我现在就动手。
wǒ shì shi shuō gàn jiù gàn wǒ xiànzài jiù dòngshǒu · I'll give it a try. No time like the present: I'll start right now.

manager lin 不着急，你可以利用这台电脑，也可以参考这些资料。
bù zháojí nǐ kěyǐ lìyòng zhè tái diànnǎo yě kěyǐ cānkǎo zhèxiē zīliào · No rush. You can use this computer, and you can look at these documents too.

xiaoming 我找到了！问题出在这个环节，改一下就好了。
wǒ zhǎo dào le wèntí chū zài zhège huánjié gǎi yíxià jiù hǎo le · Found it! The problem is at this stage. A quick change and it's fixed.

manager lin 你工作的时候真投入。我们这里说干就干，不喜欢只说不行动。
nǐ gōngzuò de shíhou zhēn tóurù wǒmen zhèlǐ shuō gàn jiù gàn bù xǐhuan zhǐ shuō bù xíngdòng · You really throw yourself into your work. Here we act the moment we decide: we don't like all talk and no action.

manager lin 才十五分钟？你的效率真高！
cái shíwǔ fēnzhōng nǐ de xiàolǜ zhēn gāo · Only fifteen minutes? That's really efficient!

xiaoming 这种问题我以前在实习的时候遇到过，所以比较熟练。
zhè zhǒng wèntí wǒ yǐqián zài shíxí de shíhou yùdào guò suǒyǐ bǐjiào shúliàn · I came across this kind of problem during my internship, so I know it well.

manager lin 总的来说，你的面试很好。我的秘书会接待你，带你去看看我们的职工餐厅。职场的生活很忙，吃饭可不能随便。
zǒng de lái shuō nǐ de miànshì hěn hǎo wǒ de mìshū huì jiēdài nǐ dài nǐ qù kàn kan wǒmen de zhígōng cāntīng zhíchǎng de shēnghuó hěn máng chī fàn kě bù néng suíbiàn · All in all, your interview went very well. My secretary will look after you and show you our staff canteen. Working life is busy, but you mustn't skimp on meals.

manager lin 很好。今天的面试就到这儿为止。我们综合考虑以后，会尽快通知你。
hěn hǎo jīntiān de miànshì jiù dào zhèr wéi zhǐ wǒmen zōnghé kǎolǜ yǐhòu huì jǐnkuài tōngzhī nǐ · Good. That's all for today's interview. We'll weigh everything up and let you know as soon as we can.

xiaoming 谢谢林经理！我等您的消息。
xièxie Línjīnglǐ wǒ děng nín de xiāoxi · Thank you, Manager Lin! I look forward to hearing from you.

chapter 4 the phone call

manager lin 小明，你好！我们决定聘请你，欢迎加入我们的团队！
Xiǎomíng nǐhǎo wǒmen juédìng pìnqǐng nǐ huānyíng jiārù wǒmen de tuánduì · Hello, Xiaoming! We've decided to offer you the job. Welcome to the team!

xiaoming 谢谢！我刚收到邮件，我读一下，看看有没有问题：
xièxie wǒ gāng shōudào yóujiàn wǒ dú yíxià kàn kan yǒu méiyǒu wèntí · Thank you! I've just got the email. Let me read it through and check there's nothing wrong:

xiaoming "李小明先生：您好！本公司决定聘请您担任网站工程师，工作包括网站的升级以及日常的问题处理。前三个月每个月工资一万五千元，以后再提升。表现好的员工，年底还有奖励。请在下周一来总部签订合同，带上身份证以及学历证书。欢迎加入我们的团队！"
Lǐ Xiǎomíng xiānsheng nín hǎo běn gōngsī juédìng pìnqǐng nín dānrèn wǎngzhàn gōngchéngshī gōngzuò bāokuò wǎngzhàn de shēngjí yǐjí rìcháng de wèntí chǔlǐ qián sān gè yuè měi gè yuè gōngzī yí wàn wǔqiān yuán yǐhòu zài tíshēng biǎoxiàn hǎo de yuángōng niándǐ hái yǒu jiǎnglì qǐng zài xià zhōu yī lái zǒngbù qiāndìng hétóng dài shàng shēnfènzhèng yǐjí xuélì zhèngshū huānyíng jiārù wǒmen de tuánduì · "Dear Mr Li Xiaoming: the company has decided to hire you as a website engineer. Your work includes upgrading the website and handling day-to-day problems. For the first three months your salary is fifteen thousand yuan a month, rising after that. Employees who do well also get a reward at the end of the year. Please come to headquarters next Monday to sign the contract, and bring your ID card and your degree certificate. Welcome to the team!"

xiaoming 真的吗？太好了！谢谢林经理！
zhēn de ma tài hǎo le xièxie Línjīnglǐ · Really? That's fantastic! Thank you, Manager Lin!

manager lin 待遇我们已经发到你的邮箱了。没问题的话，下个星期一来公司签合同。
dàiyù wǒmen yǐjīng fā dào nǐ de yóuxiāng le méi wèntí dehuà xià gè xīngqīyī lái gōngsī qiān hétóng · We've emailed you the pay and benefits. If that's all fine, come in next Monday to sign the contract.

xiaoming 好的。我什么时候报到？
hǎo de wǒ shénme shíhou bàodào · Great. When do I start?

manager lin 下个月一号。新人上班以前要参加三天培训，安娜会指导你。
xià gè yuè yī hào xīnrén shàngbān yǐqián yào cānjiā sān tiān péixùn Ānnà huì zhǐdǎo nǐ · The first of next month. New starters do three days of training first, and Anna will show you the ropes.

manager lin 你来了以后，要代替一位调到上海的同事。我们会采用你的方案，给网站升级。去年公司还奖了安娜一万块钱，表现好的员工升得也快。
nǐ lái le yǐhòu yào dàitì yí wèi diào dào Shànghǎi de tóngshì wǒmen huì cǎiyòng nǐ de fāngàn gěi wǎngzhàn shēngjí qùnián gōngsī hái jiǎng le Ānnà yí wàn kuài qián biǎoxiàn hǎo de yuángōng shēng de yě kuài · When you arrive, you'll be replacing a colleague who's been transferred to Shanghai. We'll use your proposals to upgrade the website. Last year the company gave Anna a ten-thousand-yuan award, and people who do well get promoted fast too.

xiaoming 总部已经批准了吗？合同上每一页都要签名吗？
zǒngbù yǐjīng pīzhǔn le ma hétóng shàng měi yí yè dōu yào qiānmíng ma · Has headquarters approved it already? Do I have to sign every page of the contract?

manager lin 批了。签字以后，我们就达成协议了。你的成果和成就，就是你最大的收获。
pī le qiānzì yǐhòu wǒmen jiù dáchéng xiéyì le nǐ de chéngguǒ hé chéngjiù jiùshì nǐ zuì dà de shōuhuò · Approved. Once you sign, we have an agreement. Your results and achievements will be your biggest reward.

xiaoming 我一定努力，先制订一个学习计划。
wǒ yídìng nǔlì xiān zhìdìng yí gè xuéxí jìhuà · I'll work hard. First I'll draw up a study plan.

ms zhang 怎么样？是不是好消息？看你高兴得像个孩子似的！
zěnmeyàng shì bu shì hǎo xiāoxi kàn nǐ gāoxìng de xiàng gè háizi shìde · Well? Is it good news? Look at you, as happy as a child!

xiaoming 妈妈，公司要我了！下个月就去安娜的公司上班。
māma gōngsī yào wǒ le xià gè yuè jiù qù Ānnà de gōngsī shàngbān · Mum, I got the job! I start at Anna's company next month.

ms zhang 太好了！今天晚上妈妈给你做好吃的，随你点！
tài hǎo le jīntiān wǎnshang māma gěi nǐ zuò hǎochī de suí nǐ diǎn · Wonderful! I'll cook you something special tonight. You choose!

chapter 5 dinner with the family

xiaoming 我一收到邮件，便给安娜打了电话。她说公司的规定是林经理制定的，很严格，但是很合理。
wǒ yì shōudào yóujiàn biàn gěi Ānnà dǎ le diànhuà tā shuō gōngsī de guīdìng shì Línjīnglǐ zhìdìng de hěn yángé dànshì hěn hélǐ · The moment I got the email, I called Anna. She says Manager Lin lays down the company rules: strict, but reasonable.

dr li 你妈妈刚离职开茶叶店，你又换了工作，我们家真热闹！
nǐ māma gāng lízhí kāi cháyè diàn nǐ yòu huàn le gōngzuò wǒmen jiā zhēn rènao · Your mum has just left her job to open a tea shop, and now you've changed jobs too. What a lively family!

ms zhang 我当年想当公务员，后来还是进了公司。现在退休以前，我想做自己喜欢的事。
wǒ dāngnián xiǎng dāng gōngwùyuán hòulái háishi jìn le gōngsī xiànzài tuìxiū yǐqián wǒ xiǎng zuò zìjǐ xǐhuan de shì · Back then I wanted to be a civil servant, but I ended up in a company. Now, before I retire, I want to do something I love.

xiaoming 我得先退出现在公司的项目，再离职。以前在实践中学了很多，所以我具备了这些能力。
wǒ děi xiān tuìchū xiànzài gōngsī de xiàngmù zài lízhí yǐqián zài shíjiàn zhōng xué le hěn duō suǒyǐ wǒ jùbèi le zhèxiē nénglì · I have to pull out of the project at my current company first, then leave. I learnt a lot on the job before, so I've got the skills they need.

dr li 好好干。劳动最重要，挣多少钱没那么重要。
hǎohǎo gàn láodòng zuì zhòngyào zhèng duōshao qián méi nàme zhòngyào · Do a good job. The work itself matters most: how much you earn matters less.

little sister 这个消息真令人高兴！哥哥，你的新老板对你满意吗？
zhège xiāoxi zhēn lìng rén gāoxìng gēge nǐ de xīn lǎobǎn duì nǐ mǎnyì ma · This news makes me so happy! Bro, is your new boss happy with you?

xiaoming 满意！她让我深入了解公司的业务，多吸收别人的经验。离开现在的公司，我也在寻找新的手段做网站。
mǎnyì tā ràng wǒ shēnrù liǎojiě gōngsī de yèwù duō xīshōu biérén de jīngyàn líkāi xiànzài de gōngsī wǒ yě zài xúnzhǎo xīn de shǒuduàn zuò wǎngzhàn · Yes! She wants me to get to know the company's business in depth and learn from other people's experience. Leaving my current company, I'm also looking for new ways to build websites.

ms zhang 今天晚上你想吃什么就是什么！
jīntiān wǎnshang nǐ xiǎng chī shénme jiùshì shénme · Tonight, whatever you want to eat, you've got it!

dr li 等我退休了，你们可要用挣的钱请我吃饭！
děng wǒ tuìxiū le nǐmen kě yào yòng zhèng de qián qǐng wǒ chī fàn · When I retire, you two had better treat me to dinner with what you earn!

You just followed a whole job interview in Chinese, from nerves to the offer. You could sit one yourself.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 49 starting a business

Talk about starting a business: costs, risks, profit and clients, and say “by, on the strength of” with 凭.

Small businesses are everywhere in China, and everyone has an opinion on rent, profit and risk.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
创业	chuàngyè	to start a business	很多年轻人大学毕业以后选择创业。 Lots of young people start their own businesses after university.
开业	kāiyè	to open (for business)	这家饭馆下个月开业。 This restaurant opens next month.
企业	qǐyè	company, enterprise	这是一家有一百多年历史的企业。 This is a company with over a hundred years of history.
经营	jīngyíng	to run, manage (a business)	这家店经营得很好。 This shop is very well run.
营业	yíngyè	to be open, do business	这家超市24小时营业。 This supermarket is open 24 hours.
商家	shāngjiā	shop, merchant	节日的时候，很多商家都有优惠。 At festival time, lots of shops have special offers.
商人	shāngrén	businessman, merchant	他爷爷是一个茶叶商人。 His grandfather was a tea merchant.
商务	shāngwù	business (affairs)	这家酒店的客人很多是来谈商务的。 Many of this hotel’s guests are here on business.
商业	shāngyè	commerce, business	这里是北京的商业中心。 This is Beijing’s business district.
客户	kèhù	client, customer	我们要尽量满足客户的要求。 We should do our best to meet our clients’ needs.
资金	zījīn	funds, capital	开一家小店需要多少资金? How much money do you need to open a small shop?
成本	chéngběn	cost	房租太贵了，成本太高。 The rent is too high, so costs are too high.
风险	fēngxiǎn	risk	创业有风险，你要想清楚。 Starting a business is risky. Think it through.
利润	lìrùn	profit	这家店一个月的利润有两万块。 This shop makes twenty thousand yuan profit a month.
利益	lìyì	interest(s), benefit	做生意不能只{zhi3}想着自己的利益。 In business you can’t think only of your own interests.

亏	kuī	to lose (money)	开店第一年，他亏了不少钱。 In the shop's first year, he lost quite a lot of money.
损失	sǔnshī	loss; to lose	这次大雨让很多商家损失了不少钱。 The heavy rain cost lots of shops a fair amount of money.
凭	píng	by, on the strength of	凭这张票，可以免费喝一杯茶。 With this ticket you get a free cup of tea.
凭借	píngjiè	to rely on, by means of	他凭借自己的努力，开了三家店。 Through his own hard work, he opened three shops.
优势	yōushì	advantage	会说两种语言是你的优势。 Speaking two languages is your advantage.
实力	shílì	strength, capability	这家公司很有实力。 This company is very strong.
欠	qiàn	to owe	我还欠你一百块钱，明天还{huan2}你。 I still owe you a hundred yuan. I'll pay you back tomorrow.
规模	guīmó	scale, size	这家企业的规模越来越大。 This company keeps getting bigger.
大力	dàlì	vigorously, strongly	这个城市正在大力发展旅游。 This city is putting a lot into developing tourism.
发达	fādá	developed, well-developed	这里的交通很发达。 The transport here is excellent.

pattern 凭: by, on the strength of

凭 | a ticket / experience / proof | what you can do or get

凭 says what something is based on: a ticket, a card, experience, ability. 凭票入场 means entry with a ticket; 凭经验 means going by experience. In an argument, 你凭什么……? asks "what right do you have to…?"

凭这张会员卡，买茶有优惠。 **píng zhè zhāng huìyuán kǎ mǎi chá yǒu yōuhuì** With this membership card, you get a discount on tea.

他凭多年的经验，一眼就看出了问题。 **tā píng duō nián de jīngyàn yì yǎn jiù kàn chū le wèntí** Going by years of experience, he spotted the problem at a glance.

你凭什么说我错了？ **nǐ píng shénme shuō wǒ cuò le** What makes you think you can say I'm wrong?

dialogue ms zhang's business plan

ms zhang 安娜，你帮我看看我的创业计划。我爷爷以前就是茶叶商人呢。
Ānnà nǐ bāng wǒ kàn kan wǒ de chuàngyè jìhuà wǒ yéye yǐqián jiùshì cháyè shāngrén ne · Anna, have a look at my business plan for me. My grandfather was a tea merchant, you know.

anna 阿姨，您打算在哪儿开业?
āyí nín dǎsuàn zài nǎr kāiyè · Where are you planning to open, Auntie?

ms zhang 学校旁边。那里的商家不多，房租也不太贵，成本比较低。
xuéxiào pángbiān nàlǐ de shāngjiā bù duō fángzū yě bú tài guì chéngběn bǐjiào dī · Next to the school. There aren't many shops there, the rent isn't too high, so costs are fairly low.

xiaoming 可是学生钱不多，利润会不会太低?
kěshì xuéshēng qián bù duō lìrùn huì bu huì tài dī · But students don't have much money. Won't the profit be too low?

ms zhang 我不光卖茶叶，还经营一个小茶室，大家可以来喝茶、看书。
wǒ bùguāng mài cháyè hái jīngyíng yí gè xiǎo chá shì dàjiā kěyǐ lái hē chá kàn shū · I won't just sell tea leaves. I'll run a little tea room too, where people can come to drink tea and read.

anna 好主意！附近还有很多企业，他们的客户也需要谈商务的地方。
hǎo zhǔyi fùjìn hái yǒu hěn duō qǐyè tāmen de kèhù yě xūyào tán shāngwù de dìfang · Great idea! There are lots of companies nearby too, and their clients need somewhere to talk business.

ms zhang 对，我凭这么多年的经验，觉得这个地方有优势。
duì wǒ píng zhème duō nián de jīngyàn juéde zhège dìfang yǒu yōushì · Exactly. Going by all my years of experience, I think this spot has an advantage.

xiaoming 资金够吗？别为了开店欠银行很多钱。
zījīn gòu ma bié wèile kāi diàn qiàn yínháng hěn duō qián · Do you have enough money? Don't get into lots of debt with the bank just to open a shop.

ms zhang 放心，我的店规模不大，即使亏了，损失也不会太大。
fàngxīn wǒ de diàn guīmó bú dà jíshǐ kuī le sǔnshī yě bú huì tài dà · Don't worry. It's a small shop, so even if I make a loss, it won't be a big one.

anna 阿姨，您真有实力！开业那天我一定亲自来，大力支持您！
āyí nín zhēn yǒu shílì kāiyè nà tiān wǒ yídìng qīnzì lái dàlì zhīchí nín · Auntie, you've got it all worked out! I'll definitely come in person on opening day to cheer you on!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

创
chuàng
to create, found

亏
kuī
to lose (money)

欠
qiàn
to owe

good to know · 亏 is to lose money (亏了五万); 赚 is to make money. 不亏 is a modest way to say a business is doing fine. 凭 is often on signs: 凭票入场 (entry with a ticket), 凭小票退换 (returns with a receipt).

Rent, costs, profit and risk: you can now talk through a business plan in Chinese, and ask the hard questions kindly.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 50 made in china

Talk about factories, products, sales and demand, and give a result in writing with ……，因而……

"Made in China" is everywhere, and so are the numbers behind it: output, sales and demand come up in every business news story.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
生产	shēngchǎn	to produce, manufacture	这家工厂生产手机。 This factory makes mobile phones.
产	chǎn	to produce (crops, goods)	这个地方产茶，也产大米。 This area produces tea, and rice too.
产量	chǎnliàng	output, yield	今年的茶叶产量比去年高。 This year's tea harvest is bigger than last year's.
产品	chǎnpǐn	product	这家公司的产品质量很好。 This company's products are very good quality.
产业	chǎnyè	industry	茶叶是这里最重要的产业。 Tea is the most important industry here.
工业	gōngyè	industry (manufacturing)	这个城市的工业很发达。 This city has a lot of industry.
制造	zhìzào	to manufacture, make	这件衣服是中国制造的。 This top was made in China.
制作	zhìzuò	to make, produce	这些点心都是她自己制作的。 She made all these pastries herself.
加工	jiāgōng	to process	新鲜的茶叶要马上加工。 Fresh tea leaves have to be processed straight away.
货物	huòwù	goods, cargo	这些货物明天运到上海。 These goods are being shipped to Shanghai tomorrow.
库	kù	storehouse, warehouse	新到的茶叶都放在这个库里。 All the newly arrived tea is kept in this storeroom.
进口	jìnkǒu	to import	这种咖啡是从国外进口的。 This coffee is imported.
交易	jiāoyì	trade, deal	网上交易越来越方便了。 Buying and selling online is getting easier and easier.
销售	xiāoshòu	to sell; sales	她在一家公司做销售。 She works in sales at a company.
销量	xiāoliàng	sales (volume)	这种手机的销量非常好。 This phone is selling very well.
需求	xūqiú	demand, need	市场对绿茶的需求越来越大。 Demand for green tea keeps growing.
因而	yīnér	therefore, as a result	他每天坚持锻炼，因而身体很好。 He exercises every day, and as a result he's

			very healthy.
大批	dàpī	large numbers of	每年春天，大批游客来这里看花。 Every spring, crowds of visitors come here to see the flowers.
巨大	jùdà	huge, enormous	这几年城市发生了巨大的变化。 The city has changed enormously in the last few years.
众多	zhòngduō	numerous, many	中国有众多的茶叶品种。 China has a great many kinds of tea.
大多	dàduō	mostly, for the most part	来这儿喝茶的大多是年轻人。 Most of the people who come here for tea are young.
将近	jiāngjìn	nearly, close to	他在这家工厂工作了将近二十年。 He's worked at this factory for nearly twenty years.
亿	yì	hundred million	中国有14亿多人。 China has over 1.4 billion people.
总体	zǒngtǐ	overall, as a whole	总体来说，今年的生意还不错。 Overall, business has been quite good this year.
比例	bǐlì	proportion, ratio	我们公司女员工的比例很高。 A high proportion of our staff are women.

pattern ……，因而……: and therefore

cause ，因而 result

因而 links a cause to its result, like 所以 but more written: you read it in reports, news and essays. The cause comes first, then 因而 and what follows from it.

这个城市的工业很发达，因而吸引了大批年轻人。 **zhège chéngshì de gōngyè hěn fādá yīnér xīyǐn le dàpī niánqīng rén** This city has a lot of industry, so it attracts crowds of young people.

这种茶需求很大，因而价格也比较高。 **zhè zhǒng chá xūqiú hěn dà yīnér jiàgé yě bǐjiào gāo** There's a lot of demand for this tea, so the price is fairly high too.

新鲜的茶叶一送到，工人们便开始加工。 **xīnxiān de cháyè yí sòng dào gōngrénmen biàn kāishǐ jiāgōng** As soon as the fresh tea leaves arrive, the workers start processing them.

dialogue at the tea factory

zhao yang 大家好！我现在在一家茶叶工厂，今天带大家看看茶是如何制作的。
dàjiā hǎo wǒ xiànzài zài yì jiā cháyè gōngchǎng jīntiān dài dàjiā kàn kan chá shì rúhé zhìzuò de · Hi, everyone! I'm at a tea factory, and today I'll show you how tea is made.

ms zhang 赵阳，你说拍就拍啊，我还没准备好呢！
ZhàoYáng nǐ shuō pāi jiù pāi a wǒ hái méi zhǔnbèi hǎo ne · Zhao Yang, you just start filming, just like that! I'm not ready yet!

zhao yang 阿姨，没关系！您看，新鲜的茶叶一送进来，工人们便开始加工。
āyí méi guānxi nín kàn xīnxiān de cháyè yí sòng jinlai gōngrénmen biàn kāishǐ jiāgōng · Don't worry, Auntie! Look: as soon as the fresh leaves come in, the workers start processing them.

ms zhang 原来要经过这么多环节。这里一年能产多少茶？
yuánlái yào jīngguò zhème duō huánjié zhèlǐ yì nián néng chǎn duōshao chá · So there are all these stages. How much tea does this place produce a year?

zhao yang 工厂的人告诉我，每年生产将近一千吨，大多在国内销售，也有一定的比例出口。
gōngchǎng de rén gàosu wǒ měi nián shēngchǎn jiāngjìn yìqiān dūn dàduō zài guó nèi xiāoshòu yě yǒu yídìng de bǐlì chūkǒu · The factory told me it's nearly a thousand tons a year. Most is sold in China, and a certain share is exported.

ms zhang 这么多！这几年喝茶的人越来越多，需求巨大。
zhème duō zhè jǐ nián hē chá de rén yuè lái yuè duō xūqiú jùdà · That much! More and more people are drinking tea these days. The demand is huge.

zhao yang 是啊，众多年轻人也开始喝茶了，因而茶叶产业发展得很快。
shì a zhòngduō niánqīng rén yě kāishǐ hē chá le yīnér cháyè chǎnyè fāzhǎn de hěn kuài · Yes, lots of young people have started drinking tea too, so the tea industry is growing fast.

ms zhang 我这次来，就是想买一批货物，开业的时候用。
wǒ zhè cì lái jiùshì xiǎng mǎi yì pī huòwù kāiyè de shíhou yòng · That's why I'm here: I want to buy a batch of stock for the opening.

zhao yang 您看，那边的库里都是今年的新茶。网上交易也很方便，下个月就能送到店里。
nín kàn nàbiān de kù lǐ dōu shì jīnnián de xīn chá wǎngshang jiāoyì yě hěn fāngbiàn xià gè yuè jiù néng sòng dào diàn lǐ · Look, the storeroom over there is full of this year's new tea. You can order online too, and it'll be delivered to the shop next month.

ms zhang 太好了！总体来说，这里的茶又好又不贵。
tài hǎo le zǒngtǐ lái shuō zhèlǐ de chá yòu hǎo yòu bú guì · Great! All in all, the tea here is good and not expensive.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

巨
jù
giant

亿
yì
hundred million

good to know · Big numbers: 万 is 10,000 and 亿 is 100,000,000. So a million is 一百万, and a billion is 十亿. 制造 is manufacturing (中国制造, made in China); 制作 is making with care, by hand or for a film: 制作点心, 制作视频. 出口 is the exit you know, and also a verb, “to export”: 出口到欧洲 export to Europe. Its opposite is 进口, to import.

Factories, output and demand: you can now follow a business report in Chinese, numbers and all.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 51 prices & money

Talk about prices, money, budgets and value, and make “if, supposing” plans with 假如……, 就……

Prices, budgets and “what if?” come up every time you plan something, from a shop to a holiday.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
人民币	rénmínbì	renminbi, Chinese yuan	这件衣服两百块人民币，不贵。 This top is two hundred yuan. That’s not expensive.
汇率	huìlǜ	exchange rate	今天的汇率是多少? What’s the exchange rate today?
黄金	huángjīn	gold	最近黄金的价格上涨了很多。 The price of gold has gone up a lot recently.
价值	jiàzhí	value, worth	这幅画的价值很高。 This painting is worth a great deal.
税	shuì	tax	这个价格已经包括税了。 This price already includes tax.
上涨	shàngzhǎng	to rise, go up	最近菜的价格上涨了不少。 Vegetable prices have gone up quite a bit recently.
富	fù	rich, wealthy	这个地方以前很不发达，现在大家都富了。 This place used to be very poor; now everyone is well off.
富有	fùyǒu	rich; full of	他不太富有，可是很快乐。 He isn’t rich, but he’s very happy.
繁荣	fánróng	prosperous, booming	这条街以前很安静，现在非常繁荣。 This street used to be quiet; now it’s booming.
大于	dàyú	greater than	假如成本大于收入，这家店就会亏钱。 If costs are higher than income, the shop will lose money.
小于	xiǎoyú	less than	第一年的成本最好小于收入。 In the first year, costs should ideally be lower than income.
等于	děngyú	to equal, be the same as	三加五等于八。 Three plus five equals eight.
超	chāo	to exceed; super-	这个月花的钱又超了。 I’ve overspent again this month.
超出	chāochū	to exceed, go beyond	这个价格超出了我能接受的范围。 That price is more than I can accept.
不足	bùzú	not enough; shortcoming	资金不足是开店最大的问题。 Not having enough money is the biggest problem in opening a shop.
充分	chōngfèn	full, ample	考试以前要做好充分的准备。 Prepare thoroughly before an exam.

度	dù	degree (temperature, angle)	今天最高35度，太热了！ It's 35 degrees today. Far too hot!
范围	fànwéi	range, scope	这个问题不在考试范围里。 This question isn't covered by the exam.
无数	wúshù	countless	每年有无数的人来这里旅游。 Countless people come here on holiday every year.
无限	wúxiàn	unlimited, infinite	年轻人有无限的可能。 Young people have endless possibilities.
单一	dānyī	single, one-sided, uniform	这家店的东西太单一了。 This shop doesn't have enough variety.
个别	gèbié	a few, isolated; individual	大部分同学都来了，只{zhi3}有个别人没来。 Most of the class came; only one or two didn't.
其余	qíyú	the rest, the others	这些茶我留两盒，其余的都卖了。 I'll keep two boxes of this tea and sell the rest.
全体	quántǐ	all, the whole (group)	全体员工都参加了这次活动。 All the staff took part in this event.
需	xū	to need (written)	办会员卡需交一百块押金。 A membership card needs a 100-yuan deposit.

pattern 假如……，（就）……: if, supposing

假如 **condition** ，（就） **result**

假如 sets up a condition or an imagined situation, and the result follows, often with 就. It works like 如果 but sounds a little more written, and it's good for plans and "what if?" questions.

假如明天35度，开业活动就改在店里。 **jiǎrú míngtiān dù kāiyè huódòng jiù gǎi zài diàn lǐ** If it's 35 degrees tomorrow, the opening event will be held indoors.

假如成本大于收入，这家店就会亏钱。 **jiǎrú chéngběn dàyú shōurù zhè jiā diàn jiù huì kuī qián** If costs are higher than income, the shop will lose money.

假如价格超出了我们能接受的范围，我们就换一家。 **jiǎrú jiàgé chāochū le wǒmen néng jiēshòu de fànwéi wǒmen jiù huàn yì jiā** If the price is more than we can accept, we'll try somewhere else.

dialogue doing the sums

ms zhang 安娜，你帮我看看这些茶的价格，定得合理吗？
Ānnà nǐ bāng wǒ kàn kan zhèxiē chá de jiàgé dìng de hélǐ ma · Anna, have a look at these tea prices for me. Are they reasonable?

anna 这种茶两百块一斤？假如学生来买，可能觉得有点儿贵。
zhè zhǒng chá liǎngbǎi kuài yì jīn jiǎrú xuéshēng lái mǎi kěnéng juéde yǒudiǎnr guì · Two hundred yuan a jin for this one? If students come to buy, they might find it a bit expensive.

ms zhang 这是好茶，价值很高。不过你说得对，我的茶不能太单一，也要有便宜的。
zhè shì hǎo chá jiàzhí hěn gāo búguò nǐ shuō de duì wǒ de chá bù néng tài dānyī yě yào yǒu piányi de · It's good tea, it's worth it. But you're right: I can't just have one kind. I need some cheaper ones too.

anna 对。个别好茶可以贵一点儿，其余的价格要让大家都能接受，不是每个人都那么富。
duì gèbié hǎo chá kěyǐ guì yìdiǎnr qíyú de jiàgé yào ràng dàjiā dōu néng jiēshòu bú shì měi gè rén dōu nàme fù · Exactly. A few top teas can cost more, but the rest should be priced so everyone can afford them. Not everyone is that well off.

ms zhang 我算了一下，房租、装修以及税，一共二十万，已经超了。
wǒ suàn le yíxià fángzū zhuāngxiū yǐjí shuì yígòng èrshí wàn yǐjīng chāo le · I've done the sums: rent, the decorating and tax come to two hundred thousand. I'm already over budget.

anna 超出多少？
chāochū duōshao · Over by how much?

ms zhang 两万多块人民币。资金有点儿不足。
liǎng wàn duō kuài rénmínbì zījīn yǒudiǎnr bùzú · A bit more than twenty thousand yuan. I'm a little short of money.

anna 假如资金不够，就先少进一些货。第一年的成本最好小于收入。
jiǎrú zījīn búgòu jiù xiān shǎo jìn yìxiē huò dì yī nián de chéngběn zuìhǎo xiǎoyú shōurù · If the money isn't enough, buy in less stock at first. In the first year, you want costs lower than income.

ms zhang 好主意。我要做好充分的准备，为的是开业以后少出问题。
hǎo zhǔyi wǒ yào zuò hǎo chōngfèn de zhǔnbèi wèi de shì kāiyè yǐhòu shǎo chū wèntí · Good idea. I want to be fully prepared, so there are fewer problems after we open.

anna 阿姨，您放心，开业那天，我们公司全体同事都来喝茶！
āyí nín fàngxīn kāiyè nà tiān wǒmen gōngsī quántǐ tóngshì dōu lái hē chá · Don't worry, Auntie. On opening day, everyone from my office is coming for tea!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

币
bì
currency

范
fàn
pattern, limit

余
yú
remaining

good to know · A 斤 is half a kilo. Tea, fruit and vegetables in China are usually priced per 斤. 大于, 小于 and 等于 are “greater than”, “less than” and “equals”. You’ll see them in maths and in reports: 成本大于收入. You met 假如 on day 41. Here is its full frame, 假如……，就……: the result after 就 can be a plan, a guess or advice.

Prices, budgets and “what if…”: you can now help a friend do the sums in Chinese, and keep the dream on track.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 52 how big? how much?

Talk about size, amount, depth and difficulty, and brush something aside with 什么X不X的.

How big, how much, how hard: these "-degree" words are everywhere in Chinese, and 什么钱不钱的 is how friends wave away fuss.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
高度	gāodù	height, altitude; high degree	这座山的高度是一千多米。 This mountain is over a thousand metres high.
高级	gāojí	advanced, high-level, top-grade	她现在上高级汉语班。 She's in an advanced Chinese class now.
超级	chāojí	super	这部电影超级好看！ This film is super good!
广	guǎng	wide, broad	他的知识面很广。 He knows about a wide range of things.
广大	guǎngdà	vast; the broad mass of	这本书受到了广大读者的欢迎。 This book has been popular with readers everywhere.
广泛	guǎngfàn	wide-ranging, widespread	手机支付在中国已经被广泛使用。 Mobile payment is now widely used in China.
集中	jízhōng	to concentrate, focus; concentrated	上课的时候要集中注意力。 Concentrate in class.
急需	jíxū	to urgently need	这个地方急需医生。 This place badly needs doctors.
具体	jùtǐ	specific, concrete	你能说得具体一点儿吗? Could you be a bit more specific?
力	lì	strength, force; power	他的演讲很有说服力。 His speech was very convincing.
量	liàng	amount, capacity	他的饭量{liang4-5}很大。 He eats a lot.
难度	nándù	difficulty (level)	这次考试的难度比上次大。 This exam is harder than the last one.
排列	páiliè	to arrange, put in order	书架上的书是按大小排列的。 The books on the shelf are arranged by size.
齐	qí	neat, even; all present	人都到齐了，我们开始吧。 Everyone's here. Let's begin.
强度	qiángdù	intensity, strength	这份工作的强度太大了。 This job is far too demanding.
轻重	qīngzhòng	weight; relative importance	做事要知道轻重。 You need to know what matters most.
全力	quánlì	all-out effort; with all your strength	我们会全力支持你。 We'll back you all the way.

全面	quánmiàn	comprehensive, all-round	我们需要全面了解这个问题。 We need a full picture of this problem.
深度	shēndù	depth	这条河的深度有三米。 This river is three metres deep.
含量	hánliàng	content (amount in something)	这种饮料的糖含量很高。 This drink has a lot of sugar in it.
彻底	chèdǐ	thorough, complete	我们把房间彻底打扫了一遍。 We gave the room a thorough clean.
充满	chōngmǎn	to be full of	房间里充满了茶的香味。 The room was full of the smell of tea.
农民	nóngmín	farmer	这里的农民大多种{zhong4}茶。 Most of the farmers here grow tea.
农业	nóngyè	agriculture, farming	这个地区主要发展农业。 This area mainly focuses on farming.
纷纷	fēnfēn	one after another; in large numbers	下课了，同学们纷纷走出教室。 Class was over, and the students streamed out of the room.

pattern 什么x不x（的）: never mind x

什么 X 不 X（的），what really matters

Repeat a word with 什么…不…的 to brush it aside: it doesn't matter, let's not fuss about it. 什么钱不钱的 means "forget the money". It's friendly and spoken, and usually followed by what really matters.

什么难度不难度的，试试就知道了。 **shénme nándù bù nándù de shì shi jiù zhīdào le** Never mind how hard it is. Try it and you'll see.

什么深度不深度的，大家看得懂就行。 **shénme shēndù bù shēndù de dàjiā kàn de dǒng jiù xíng** Forget about depth. As long as people can understand it, that's fine.

什么彻底不彻底的，差不多干净就行了。 **shénme chèdǐ bú chèdǐ de chàbuduō gānjìng jiù xíng le** Never mind "thorough". Clean enough will do.

dialogue up at the tea farm

zhao yang 大家看，我们现在在山上的茶园，这里的茶树排列得非常整齐。
dàjiā kàn wǒmen xiànzài zài shān shàng de chá yuán zhèlǐ de chá shù páiliè de fēicháng zhěngqí · Look, everyone, we're at a tea farm up in the hills. The tea bushes are planted in perfectly neat rows.

anna 好美啊！空气里充满了茶的香味。
hǎo měi a kōngqì lǐ chōngmǎn le chá de xiāng wèi · It's beautiful! The air is full of the smell of tea.

ms zhang 这里的农业主要是种茶。这份工作的强度很大，农民们早上五点就上山了。
zhèlǐ de nóngyè zhǔyào shì zhòng chá zhè fèn gōngzuò de qiángdù hěn dà nóngmínmen zǎoshang wǔ diǎn jiù shàng shān le · Farming here is mainly tea. It's hard work: the farmers head up the hill at five in the morning.

zhao yang 阿姨，买以前要全面了解一下。您要多少？具体的价格我帮您问问。
āyí mǎi yǐqián yào quánmiàn liǎojiě yíxià nín yào duōshao jùtǐ de jiàgé wǒ bāng nín wèn wen · Auntie, get the full picture before you buy. How much do you want? I'll ask about the exact price for you.

ms zhang 我的店不大，量不用太多，先买五十斤。
wǒ de diàn bú dà liàng búyòng tài duō xiān mǎi wǔshí jīn · My shop is small, so I don't need much. Fifty jin to start with.

anna 这么好的茶，是不是很贵？
zhème hǎo de chá shì bu shì hěn guì · Tea this good must be expensive, isn't it?

ms zhang 不贵。这里的茶不是什么高级茶，可是很好喝。
bú guì zhèlǐ de chá bú shì shénme gāojí chá kěshì hěn hǎo hē · Not at all. It's not some top-grade tea, but it tastes great.

zhao yang 什么高级不高级的，好喝就行！我要把这个茶园介绍给广大观众，我的视频很有说服力！
shénme gāojí bù gāojí de hǎo hē jiù xíng wǒ yào bǎ zhège chá yuán jièshào gěi guǎngdà guānzhòng wǒ de shìpín hěn yǒu shuōfú lì · Never mind top-grade: if it tastes good, that's what counts! I'll show this farm to all my viewers. My videos are very convincing!

anna 你的视频一发，大家一定纷纷来买。这里的农民急需更多客户。
nǐ de shìpín yì fā dàjiā yídìng fēnfēn lái mǎi zhèlǐ de nóngmín jíxū gèng duō kèhù · Once your video's out, people will come flocking to buy. The farmers here really need more customers.

ms zhang 那我们就全力帮他们！不过做事要知道轻重，先把我的店开好。
nà wǒmen jiù quánlì bāng tāmen búguò zuò shì yào zhīdào qīngzhòng xiān bǎ wǒ de diàn kāi hǎo · Then we'll help them all we can! But first things first: let's get my shop open.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

泛
fàn
to float; broad

彻
chè
to go through

good to know · 度 turns an adjective into a "how much" noun: 高度 height, 深度 depth, 难度 difficulty, 强度 intensity. 量 does the same for amounts: 产量 output, 销量 sales, 含量 content, 饭量 how much you eat.

Height, depth, amount and “never mind…”: you can now describe, measure and joke your way through a day out in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 53 a changing economy

Talk about change, trends, causes and results, and say “without X there would be no Y” with 没有……就没有……

China has changed fast, and talking about why and how things change is a core skill for HSK 5 reading and for real conversations.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
趋势	qūshì	trend	网上购物是一个大趋势。 Online shopping is a big trend.
上升	shàngshēng	to rise, go up	今年的销量上升了很多。 Sales have risen a lot this year.
扩大	kuòdà	to expand, enlarge	公司打算明年扩大规模。 The company plans to expand next year.
缩小	suōxiǎo	to shrink, narrow	城市和农村的差距正在缩小。 The gap between town and country is narrowing.
增	zēng	to increase, add (written)	今年的游客比去年增了三万人。 There were thirty thousand more visitors this year than last.
增强	zēngqiáng	to strengthen	这次比赛增强了我们的信心。 This match boosted our confidence.
增进	zēngjìn	to enhance, deepen (understanding)	多交流可以增进了解。 Talking more helps people understand each other better.
加速	jiāsù	to speed up	汽车开始加速了。 The car started to speed up.
促进	cùjìn	to promote, boost	旅游促进了当地的经济发展。 Tourism has boosted the local economy.
推动	tuīdòng	to drive, push forward	新技术推动了社会的发展。 New technology has driven society forward.
带动	dàidòng	to drive, bring along	一家大工厂带动了整个小城的发展。 One big factory has driven the growth of the whole town.
导致	dǎozhì	to lead to, cause	熬夜会导致睡眠不足。 Staying up late leads to lack of sleep.
造成	zàochéng	to cause, create	这场大雨造成了严重的堵车。 The heavy rain caused terrible traffic jams.
因素	yīnsù	factor	价格是很重要的因素。 Price is a very important factor.
后果	hòuguǒ	consequence	你想过这样做的后果吗? Have you thought about the consequences of doing this?
面临	miànlín	to face, be up against	很多小店面临很大的压力。 Lots of small shops are under a lot of pressure.

进步	jìnbù	to make progress; progress	你的汉语进步得真快！ Your Chinese is improving so fast!
前进	qiánjìn	to move forward, advance	遇到困难也要继续前进。 Even when things get hard, keep moving forward.
实现	shíxiàn	to realise, achieve	她终于实现了自己的梦想。 She finally made her dream come true.
使得	shǐde	to make, cause	地铁的发展使得出门更方便了。 The growth of the underground has made getting around easier.
促使	cùshǐ	to prompt, push (someone to)	这次生病促使他开始锻炼身体。 Falling ill made him start exercising.
转变	zhuǎnbiàn	to change, transform	这几年人们的观念发生了很大的转变。 People's ideas have changed a lot in recent years.
推广	tuīguǎng	to promote, spread	这种新方法正在全国推广。 This new method is being rolled out across the country.
推进	tuījìn	to push ahead, advance	项目正在顺利推进。 The project is moving ahead smoothly.
变动	biàndòng	change; to change	计划有变动，会议改到明天了。 There's been a change of plan: the meeting has moved to tomorrow.

pattern 没有……就没有……: without x, there's no y

没有 X ，就没有 Y

This tight pattern says X is the condition for Y: take X away and Y can't exist. It often gives credit or states a principle: 没有付出，就没有收获, no pain, no gain.

没有付出，就没有收获。 **méiyǒu fùchū jiù méiyǒu shōuhuò** No effort, no reward.

没有交通的发展，就没有这里今天的繁荣。 **méiyǒu jiāotōng de fāzhǎn jiù méiyǒu zhèlǐ jīntiān de fánróng** Without better transport, this place wouldn't be booming as it is today.

没有你的帮助，就没有我的今天。 **méiyǒu nǐ de bāngzhù jiù méiyǒu wǒ de jīntiān** I wouldn't be where I am today without your help.

dialogue forty years of change

zhao yang 孙教授，您好！今天想请您谈谈这四十年来北京的变化。
Sūnjiàoshòu nín hǎo jīntiān xiǎng qǐng nín tán tan zhè sìshí nián lái Běijīng de biànhuà · Hello, Professor Sun! Today I'd like you to talk about how Beijing has changed over the last forty years.

professor sun 变化非常大。住在城里的人比四十年前增了一倍多，交通的发展也使得出门方便多了。
biànhuà fēicháng dà zhù zài chéng lǐ de rén bǐ sìshí nián qián zēng le yí bèi duō jiāotōng de fāzhǎn yě shǐde chūmén fāngbiàn duō le · It has changed enormously. More than twice as many people live in the city as forty years ago, and better transport has made getting around much easier.

zhao yang 是什么因素推动了这些变化?
shì shénme yīnsù tuīdòng le zhèxiē biànhuà · What factors have driven these changes?

professor sun 因素有很多。比如地铁，它带动了很多地区的发展，也使城市不断扩大。没有交通的发展，就没有今天的繁荣。
yīnsù yǒu hěn duō bǐrú dìtiě tā dàidòng le hěn duō dìqū de fāzhǎn yě shǐ chéngshì búduàn kuòdà méiyǒu jiāotōng de fāzhǎn jiù méiyǒu jīntiān de fánróng · There are many. Take the underground: it has driven growth in lots of areas and helped the city keep expanding. Without better transport, there'd be no boom today.

zhao yang 发展得这么快，有没有带来一些问题?
fāzhǎn de zhème kuài yǒu méiyǒu dài lái yìxiē wèntí · Has such fast growth brought any problems?

professor sun 当然有。车太多导致堵车，也造成了空气问题。不过这些年情况在转变，空气比以前好多了。
dāngrán yǒu chē tài duō dǎozhì dǔchē yě zàochéng le kōngqì wèntí búguò zhèxiē nián qíngkuàng zài zhuǎnbiàn kōngqì bǐ yǐqián hǎo duō le · Of course. Too many cars led to traffic jams and air problems. But things have been changing in recent years, and the air is much better than before.

zhao yang 那现在城市面临的最大问题是什么?
nà xiànzài chéngshì miànlín de zuì dà wèntí shì shénme · So what's the biggest challenge the city faces now?

professor sun 城市在加速发展，老人的需求也在上升，因而很多为老人提供的新服务正在推广。
chéngshì zài jiāsù fāzhǎn lǎorén de xūqiú yě zài shàngshēng yīnér hěn duō wèi lǎorén tígōng de xīn fúwù zhèngzài tuīguǎng · The city is developing faster and faster, and older people's needs are growing too, so lots of new services for the elderly are being rolled out.

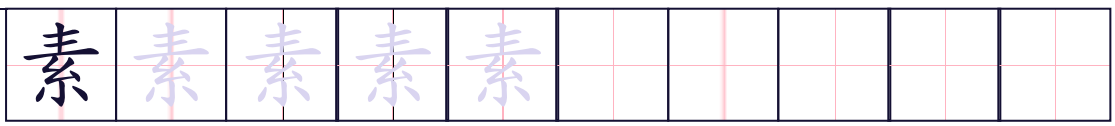
anna 我来北京这几年，也看到了很多进步。这些变化也促使我留在了北京。不过，城市和农村的差距在缩小吗?
wǒ lái Běijīng zhè jǐ nián yě kàn dào le hěn duō jìnbù zhèxiē biànhuà yě cùshǐ wǒ liú zài le Běijīng búguò chéngshì hé nóngcūn de chājù zài suōxiǎo ma · In my years in Beijing I've seen a lot of progress too. These changes are part of why I stayed. But is the gap between town and country narrowing?

professor sun 在缩小。旅游和网上购物促进了很多农村的发展，这方面的工作还在推进，我们要继续前进。
zài suōxiǎo lǚyóu hé wǎngshang gòuwù cùjìn le hěn duō nóngcūn de fāzhǎn zhè fāngmiàn de gōngzuò hái zài tuījìn wǒmen yào jìxù qiánjìn · It is narrowing. Tourism and online shopping have boosted many rural areas, and that work is still going on. We have to keep moving forward.

write it trace the grey, then write your own



素
sù
element





趋
qū
to hasten towards

good to know · 导致 and 造成 usually lead to bad results (导致堵车, 造成损失); 促进 and 推动 to good ones (促进发展). 增 words: 增强 strengthen (信心, 体力), 增进 deepen (了解, 友谊). The object tells you which one to use. 经济 “economy” is also an adjective, “economical, good value”: 又好吃又经济 tasty and cheap, 经济舱 economy class.

Trends, causes and results: you can now discuss how a city changes in Chinese, carefully and fairly. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 54 mission: the little tea shop

Follow a small business from the night before it opens to its first month, all in Chinese.

A mission puts days 49–53 to work together: starting up, products, prices, amounts and change, in one story.

chapter 1 the night before

ms zhang 小明，明天就开业了。货物都到了吗?
Xiǎomíng míngtiān jiù kāiyè le huòwù dōu dào le ma · Xiaoming, we open tomorrow. Has all the stock arrived?

xiaoming 都到了。茶叶都放在库里了，一共五十斤。
dōu dào le cháyè dōu fàng zài kù lǐ le yígòng wǔshí jīn · It all came. The tea's in the storeroom: fifty jin in all.

ms zhang 创业真不容易。经营一家店，资金、风险、客户，什么都要考虑。
chuàngyè zhēn bù róngyì jīngyíng yì jiā diàn zījīn fēngxiǎn kèhù shénme dōu yào kǎolǜ · Starting a business really isn't easy. Running a shop, you have to think about everything: money, risk, customers.

xiaoming 您别担心损失。凭借您的实力，一定没问题。这条街上的商家越来越多，商业很发达，附近的企业也有很多谈商务的客人。
nín bié dānxīn sǔnshī píngjiè nín de shílì yídìng méi wèntí zhè tiáo jiē shàng de shāngjiā yuè lái yuè duō shāngyè hěn fādá fùjìn de qǐyè yě yǒu hěn duō tán shāngwù de kèrén · Don't worry about losing money. With your ability, it'll be fine. There are more and more shops on this street, business is thriving, and the companies nearby have lots of clients coming for business meetings.

ms zhang 我爷爷是茶叶商人，他常说：做生意不能只看自己的利益。我欠银行的钱不多，营业以后很快就能还。
wǒ yéye shì cháyè shāngrén tā cháng shuō zuò shēngyi bù néng zhǐ kàn zìjǐ de lìyì wǒ qiàn yínháng de qián bù duō yíngyè yǐhòu hěn kuài jiù néng huán · My grandfather was a tea merchant. He always said: in business you can't look only at your own interests. I don't owe the bank much, and once we're open I can soon pay it back.

ms zhang 假如明天下雨，客人会不会很少?
jiǎrú míngtiān xià yǔ kèrén huì bu huì hěn shǎo · If it rains tomorrow, will there be hardly any customers?

xiaoming 别担心。我在网上发了一千张票，凭票可以免费喝一杯茶。
bié dānxīn wǒ zài wǎngshang fā le yìqiān zhāng piào píng piào kěyǐ miǎnfèi hē yì bēi chá · Don't worry. I've sent out a thousand vouchers online: with a voucher you get a free cup of tea.

xiaoming 我已经在网上大力推广了。
wǒ yǐjīng zài wǎngshang dàlì tuīguǎng le · I've already promoted it hard online.

ms zhang 一千张？成本会不会太高了?
yìqiān zhāng chéngběn huì bu huì tài gāo le · A thousand? Won't that cost too much?

xiaoming 一杯茶的成本不高。第一天让大家了解我们，比什么都重要。
yì bēi chá de chéngběn bù gāo dì yī tiān ràng dàjiā liǎojiě wǒmen bǐ shénme dōu zhòngyào · A cup of tea doesn't cost much. On day one, getting people to know us matters more than anything.

ms zhang 你说得对。我要尽量让每位客人都满意。
nǐ shuō de duì wǒ yào jǐnliàng ràng měi wèi kèrén dōu mǎnyì · You're right. I want every customer to leave happy, as far as I can.

xiaoming 早一点儿休息吧，明天会很忙!
zǎo yìdiǎnr xiūxi ba míngtiān huì hěn máng · Get some rest, Mum. Tomorrow's going to be busy!

zhao yang 各位，我们的节目即将开始！
gèwèi wǒmen de jiémù jíjiāng kāishǐ · Everyone, our show is about to start!

zhao yang 大家好！今天我在一家新开的茶叶店，老板就是我的阿姨！
dàjiā hǎo jīntiān wǒ zài yì jiā xīn kāi de cháyè diàn lǎobǎn jiùshì wǒ de āyí · Hi, everyone! Today I'm at a brand-new tea shop, and the owner is my aunt!

ms zhang 欢迎光临！今天开业，凭票免费喝茶。
huānyíng guānglín jīntiān kāiyè píng piào miǎnfèi hē chá · Welcome! It's our opening day: free tea with a voucher.

anna 阿姨，恭喜开业！我们公司来了十几个人，大家都来支持您。
āyí gōngxǐ kāiyè wǒmen gōngsī lái le shí jǐ gè rén dàjiā dōu lái zhīchí nín · Auntie, congratulations on the opening! More than ten of us have come from my office to support you.

manager lin 张女士，您好！听安娜说今天开业，我下了班就来了。
Zhāngnǚshì nín hǎo tīng Ānnà shuō jīntiān kāiyè wǒ xià le bān jiù lái le · Hello, Ms Zhang! Anna told me you were opening today, so I came straight after work.

ms zhang 林经理，太感谢了！请坐，尝尝我们的新茶。
Línjīnglǐ tài gǎnxiè le qǐng zuò cháng chang wǒmen de xīn chá · Manager Lin, thank you so much! Please have a seat and try our new tea.

manager lin 好香！这么好的茶，价格却不贵，您的优势很明显。
hǎo xiāng zhème hǎo de chá jiàgé què bú guì nín de yōushì hěn míngxiǎn · What a lovely smell! Tea this good, and not expensive. That's a clear advantage.

manager lin 这些茶是哪儿产的？
zhèxiē chá shì nǎr chǎn de · Where does this tea come from?

ms zhang 都是南方一个茶园生产的，我亲自去看过他们怎么加工。
dōu shì nánfāng yí gè chá yuán shēngchǎn de wǒ qīnzì qù kàn guo tāmen zěnme jiāgōng · It's all grown at a tea farm in the south. I went myself to see how they process it.

zhao yang 这个茶园的产量不大，可是产品质量很好，有一部分还出口到欧洲呢。
zhège chá yuán de chǎnliàng bú dà kěshì chǎnpǐn zhìliàng hěn hǎo yǒu yí bùfen hái chūkǒu dào Ōuzhōu ne · That farm doesn't produce much, but the quality is excellent: some of it is even exported to Europe.

manager lin 中国的茶叶产业真大，听说每天有好几亿人喝茶。
Zhōngguó de cháyè chǎnyè zhēn dà tīngshuō měi tiān yǒu hǎo jǐ yì rén hē chá · China's tea industry is so big: I hear several hundred million people drink tea every day.

anna 来喝茶的大多是年轻人，需求巨大。阿姨，这些茶杯是您自己制作的吗？
lái hē chá de dàduō shì niánqīng rén xūqiú jùdà āyí zhèxiē chá bēi shì nín zìjǐ zhìzuò de ma · Most of the people coming in for tea are young: the demand is huge. Auntie, did you make these cups yourself?

ms zhang 不是，是一家工厂制造的，那里是一个工业区。我店里也有几种进口的咖啡，不过销售的比例很小。
bú shì shì yì jiā gōngchǎng zhìzào de nàlǐ shì yí gè gōngyè qū wǒ diàn lǐ yě yǒu jǐ zhǒng jìnkǒu de kāfēi búguò xiāoshòu de bǐlì hěn xiǎo · No, a factory made them: it's in an industrial area. I also sell a few imported coffees, but they're only a small share of sales.

zhao yang 开业半天，就有将近两百位客人，网上的交易也有三十多笔。众多年轻人在看我的视频呢！
kāiyè bàntiān jiù yǒu jiāngjìn liǎngbǎi wèi kèrén wǎngshang de jiāoyì yě yǒu sānshí duō bǐ zhòngduō niánqīng rén zài kàn wǒ de shìpín ne · Half a day since opening, and nearly two hundred customers already, plus over thirty sales online. Loads of young people are watching my video!

zhao yang 你们看，门口的队伍越来越长，客人们纷纷进来了！
nǐmen kàn ménkǒu de duìwu yuè lái yuè cháng kèrénmen fēnfēn jinlai le · Look, the queue at the door keeps getting longer. The customers are pouring in!

ms zhang 没有大家的帮助，就没有今天这么热闹的开业！

méiyǒu dàjiā de bāngzhù jiù méiyǒu jīntiān zhème rènao de kāiyè · Without everyone's help, we'd never have had such a lively opening!

chapter 3 the tea runs out

xiaoming 妈妈，不好了！客人太多，因而茶叶快卖完了。
māma bù hǎo le kèrén tài duō yīnér cháyè kuài mài wán le · Mum, we've got a problem! There are so many customers that the tea is almost gone.

ms zhang 这么快？库里还有多少？
zhème kuài kù lǐ hái yǒu duōshao · Already? How much is left in the storeroom?

xiaoming 只剩下五斤了。我们急需再进一批货。
zhǐ shèng xià wǔ jīn le wǒmen jíxū zài jìn yì pī huò · Only five jin. We urgently need another batch.

anna 客人一多，小明就连忙去库里拿茶叶，我也急忙去帮忙。
kèrén yì duō Xiǎomíng jiù liánmáng qù kù lǐ ná cháyè wǒ yě jímáng qù bāngmáng · As soon as the customers piled in, Xiaoming dashed to the storeroom for tea, and I hurried to help.

ms zhang 今天的客人超出了我的想象。准备得不充分，茶叶不足了。
jīntiān de kèrén chāochū le wǒ de xiǎngxiàng zhǔnbèi de bù chōngfèn cháyè bùzú le · Today's customers went beyond anything I imagined. I didn't prepare enough, and we're short of tea.

xiaoming 进货的时候，我以为一百杯就等于一斤茶，结果算错了。
jìn huò de shíhou wǒ yǐwéi yìbǎi bēi jiù děngyú yì jīn chá jiéguǒ suàn cuò le · When we bought the stock, I thought a hundred cups equalled one jin of tea, but I got the sums wrong.

anna 我给茶园的农民打个电话吧，上次赵阳给了我他们的电话。
wǒ gěi chá yuán de nóngmín dǎ gè diànhuà ba shàng cì ZhàoYáng gěi le wǒ tāmen de diànhuà · I'll call the farmers at the tea farm. Zhao Yang gave me their number last time.

ms zhang 太好了！问问他们明天能不能送一大批过来。
tài hǎo le wèn wen tāmen míngtiān néng bu néng sòng yí dàpī guolai · Great! Ask them if they can bring a big batch over tomorrow.

anna 他们说没问题，明天一早就送到！
tāmen shuō méi wèntí míngtiān yì zǎo jiù sòng dào · They say no problem: it'll be here first thing tomorrow!

manager lin 张女士，我有一位外国客户也想买茶，他只有外国钱，汇率怎么算？
Zhāngnǚshì wǒ yǒu yí wèi wàiguó kèhù yě xiǎng mǎi chá tā zhǐ yǒu wàiguó qián huìlǜ zěnme suàn · Ms Zhang, a foreign client of mine wants to buy some tea too. He only has foreign money: how does the exchange rate work?

xiaoming 我们只收人民币。附近有银行可以换钱，今天的汇率还不错。
wǒmen zhǐ shōu rénmínbì fùjìn yǒu yínháng kěyǐ huàn qián jīntiān de huìlǜ hái búcuò · We only take renminbi. There's a bank nearby where he can change money, and the rate's good today.

anna 这种茶的价值很高，价格最近也上涨了。好茶像黄金一样，越来越贵。
zhè zhǒng chá de jiàzhí hěn gāo jiàgé zuìjìn yě shàngzhǎng le hǎo chá xiàng huángjīn yíyàng yuè lái yuè guì · This tea is worth a lot, and its price has gone up lately. Good tea is like gold: dearer all the time.

xiaoming 妈妈，今天的收入已经大于成本了！
māma jīntiān de shōurù yǐjīng dàyú chéngběn le · Mum, today's takings are already more than our costs!

ms zhang 别高兴得太早，还要交税呢。如果收入小于成本，就是亏了。
bié gāoxìng de tài zǎo hái yào jiāo shuì ne rúguǒ shōurù xiǎoyú chéngběn jiùshì kuī le · Don't celebrate too soon: there's tax to pay. If takings are less than costs, it's a loss.

anna 个别客人想买整盒的茶，其余的喝完就走了。我们公司全体同事都来过了！
gèbié kèrén xiǎng mǎi zhěng hé de chá qíyú de hē wán jiù zǒu le wǒmen gōngsī quántǐ tóngshì dōu lái guo le · A few customers wanted whole boxes of tea; the rest drank theirs and left. Every single colleague from my office has been in!

ms zhang 这条街以前很安静，现在很繁荣，大家的生活都好了，我们这一代人也比以前富有了。
zhè tiáo jiē yǐqián hěn ānjìng xiànzài hěn fánróng dàjiā de shēnghuó dōu hǎo le wǒmen zhè yídài rén yě bǐ yǐqián fùyǒu le · This street used to be quiet; now it's booming. Life is better for everyone, and our generation is better off than before.

ms zhang 安娜，今天你帮了这么多忙，我得给你钱。
Ānnà jīntiān nǐ bāng le zhème duō máng wǒ děi gěi nǐ qián · Anna, you've helped so much today. I have to pay you.

anna 什么钱不钱的！您请我喝茶就行了。
shénme qián bu qián de nín qǐng wǒ hē chá jiù xíng le · Forget the money! Just treat me to some tea.

chapter 4 the newspaper

dr li 你看，报纸上有一篇文章，我读给你听：
nǐ kàn bàozhǐ shàng yǒu yì piān wénzhāng wǒ dú gěi nǐ tīng · Look, there's an article in the paper. Let me read it to you:

dr li “近年来，喝茶的年轻人越来越多，茶叶的需求不断上升，这个趋势带动了农业和小商店的发展。专家认为，网上购物和视频推广促进了茶叶销售，也使得城市和农村的差距逐渐缩小。不过，很多小店也面临房租上涨的问题，需全面考虑风险。”
jìnnián lái hē chá de niánqīng rén yuè lái yuè duō cháyè de xūqiú búduàn shàngshēng zhège qūshì dàidòng le nóngyè hé xiǎo shāngdiàn de fāzhǎn zhuānjiā rènwéi wǎngshang gòuwù hé shìpín tuīguǎng cùjìn le cháyè xiāoshòu yě shǐde chéngshì hé nóngcūn de chājù zhújiàn suōxiǎo búguò hěn duō xiǎo diàn yě miànlín fángzū shàngzhǎng de wèntí xū quánmiàn kǎolǜ fēngxiǎn · “In recent years more and more young people drink tea, and demand keeps rising. This trend is driving the growth of farming and of small shops. Experts believe online shopping and video promotion have boosted tea sales, and helped the gap between town and countryside narrow. But many small shops also face rising rents, and need to weigh the risks carefully.”

ms zhang 报纸说得对，网上推广的力量真大。
bàozhǐ shuō de duì wǎngshang tuīguǎng de lìliàng zhēn dà · The paper's right: online promotion is so powerful.

dr li 你的店也赶上了这个趋势。是什么因素促使你开店的?
nǐ de diàn yě gǎnshàng le zhège qūshì shì shénme yīnsù cùshǐ nǐ kāi diàn de · Your shop has caught the trend too. What made you decide to open it?

ms zhang 我一直想实现自己的梦想。离职以后，我的生活彻底转变了。
wǒ yìzhí xiǎng shíxiàn zìjǐ de mèngxiǎng lízhí yǐhòu wǒ de shēnghuó chèdǐ zhuǎnbiàn le · I'd always wanted to make my dream come true. Since I left my job, my life has changed completely.

chapter 5 the first month's figures

dr li 店开了一个月了，怎么样？亏了还是挣了？
diàn kāi le yí gè yuè le zěnmeyàng kuī le háishi zhèng le · The shop's been open a month. How's it going? Losing money or making it?

ms zhang 没亏！总体来说还不错，这个月的利润有一万多块。
méi kuī zǒngtǐ lái shuō hái búcuò zhège yuè de lìrùn yǒu yí wàn duō kuài · No losses! On the whole it's going well: over ten thousand yuan profit this month.

dr li 真的？比我想象的好多了！
zhēn de bǐ wǒ xiǎngxiàng de hǎo duō le · Really? That's much better than I imagined!

ms zhang 赵阳的视频一发，客人越来越多，销量每个星期都在上升。
ZhàoYáng de shìpín yì fā kèrén yuè lái yuè duō xiāoliàng měi gè xīngqī dōu zài shàngshēng · Once Zhao Yang's video went out, we got more and more customers. Sales go up every week.

dr li 那你打算扩大规模吗？
nà nǐ dǎsuàn kuòdà guīmó ma · So are you planning to expand?

ms zhang 先不急。房租要是上涨，可能导致利润下降，造成损失。我得想好后果。
xiān bù jí fángzū yàoshi shàngzhǎng kěnéng dǎozhì lìrùn xiàjiàng zàochéng sǔnshī wǒ děi xiǎng hǎo hòuguǒ · No rush. If the rent goes up, the profit could drop and we could lose money. I have to think through the consequences.

xiaoming 没关系，我们一步一步推进，慢慢前进。下个月先增两个员工，增强服务。
méi guānxi wǒmen yí bù yí bù tuījìn màn màn qiánjìn xià gè yuè xiān zēng liǎng gè yuángōng zēngqiáng fúwù · Never mind: we'll push on step by step and move forward slowly. Next month we add two staff to strengthen the service.

dr li 开店的强度很大，你要知道轻重，别累坏了。
kāi diàn de qiángdù hěn dà nǐ yào zhīdào qīngzhòng bié lèi huài le · Running a shop is tough work: keep your priorities straight and don't wear yourself out.

ms zhang 放心。我现在集中力量做好服务，具体的事情小明会帮我。我们的茶叶排列得整整齐齐，客人都说很高级。
fàngxīn wǒ xiànzài jízhōng lìliàng zuò hǎo fúwù jùtǐ de shìqing Xiǎomíng huì bāng wǒ wǒmen de cháyè páiliè de zhěngzhěngqíqí kèrén dōu shuō hěn gāojí · Don't worry. I'm putting all my effort into good service, and Xiaoming will help with the details. Our tea is set out beautifully, and customers say it looks really high-class.

dr li 而且你的茶很经济，学生也买得起。喝茶还能增进朋友之间的了解，这也是一种进步。
érqiě nǐ de chá hěn jīngjì xuéshēng yě mǎidéiqǐ hē chá hái néng zēngjìn péngyou zhījiān de liǎojiě zhè yě shì yì zhǒng jìnbù · And your tea is good value: even students can afford it. Drinking tea together brings friends closer, too: that's progress of a kind.

zhao yang 阿姨，我的视频被广泛分享了，广大观众都说您的店超级好！
āyí wǒ de shìpín bèi guǎngfàn fēnxiǎng le guǎngdà guānzhòng dōu shuō nín de diàn chāojí hǎo · Auntie, my video has been shared everywhere: viewers all say your shop is super!

ms zhang 先不急。我想先把服务做好，再慢慢发展。
xiān bù jí wǒ xiǎng xiān bǎ fúwù zuò hǎo zài màn màn fāzhǎn · No rush. I want to get the service right first, then grow slowly.

dr li 说得好。等我退休了，就去你店里帮忙，凭我的经验，可以教客人怎么喝茶对身体好！
shuō de hǎo děng wǒ tuìxiū le jiù qù nǐ diàn lǐ bāngmáng píng wǒ de jīngyàn kěyǐ jiāo kèrén zěnme hē chá duì shēntǐ hǎo · Well said. When I retire, I'll come and help in the shop. With my experience, I can teach customers how to drink tea the healthy way!

ms zhang 好啊！你说什么就是什么，李医生！
hǎo a nǐ shuō shénme jiùshì shénme Lǐyīshēng · Deal! Whatever you say, Doctor Li!

From the night before to the first month's profit: you've followed a whole small business in Chinese. Maybe one day it'll be yours.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 55 the big match

Follow a big match: the score, the referee, the records and the crowd, and say things go back and forth with A来A去.

Sport is everyday small talk in China, from the office lift to the evening news.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
比分	bǐfēn	score (in a match)	现在的比分是2比1，我们领先。 The score is now 2–1, and we're ahead.
裁判	cáipàn	referee; to judge	裁判认为这个球不算。 The referee ruled that the goal didn't count.
对手	duìshǒu	opponent, rival	这次的对手很强，我们必须认真准备。 Our opponents are strong this time, so we have to prepare properly.
冠军	guànjūn	champion; first place	她十六岁就拿到了全国冠军。 She was national champion at just sixteen.
决赛	juésài	final (of a contest)	中国队进入了决赛。 The Chinese team has reached the final.
赛场	sàichǎng	arena, field (of play)	选手们已经来到了赛场。 The competitors have already arrived at the arena.
选手	xuǎnshǒu	competitor, player	这位选手是第一次参加国际比赛。 This is the first international competition for this athlete.
胜	shèng	to win, beat	我们队以3比1胜了对手。 Our team beat their opponents 3–1.
胜利	shènglì	victory; to win	大家都为这次胜利鼓掌。 Everyone applauded the victory.
跳高	tiàogāo	high jump	他跳高能跳过两米。 He can clear two metres in the high jump.
跳远	tiàoyuǎn	long jump	我上中学的时候参加过{guo}跳远比赛。 I did the long jump in competitions when I was at secondary school.
跑道	pǎodào	running track; runway	每天早上，学校的跑道上都有很多人在跑步。 Every morning there are lots of people running on the school track.
训练	xùnliàn	to train; training	运动员们每天训练六个小时。 The athletes train six hours a day.
挑战	tiǎozhàn	challenge; to challenge	对我来说，跑十公里是一个很大的挑战。 For me, running ten kilometres is a big challenge.
激烈	jīliè	fierce, intense	决赛进行得非常激烈。 The final was hard-fought.
纪录	jìlù	record (best result)	她保持这个世界纪录已经五年了。 She has held this world record for five years.
掌声	zhǎngshēng	applause	演出结束后，掌声很久都没停。 After the show, the applause went on for a long time.

鼓掌	gǔzhǎng	to clap, applaud	冠军走上台的时候，大家都站起来鼓掌。 When the champion walked up on stage, everyone stood and clapped.
开幕	kāimù	to open (an event)	运动会明天上午九点开幕。 The sports meet opens at nine tomorrow morning.
开幕式	kāimùshì	opening ceremony	开幕式上有很多精彩的表演。 There were lots of wonderful performances at the opening ceremony.
闭幕式	bìmùshì	closing ceremony	闭幕式结束以后，选手们就回国了。 After the closing ceremony, the athletes went home.
武术	wǔshù	martial arts, wushu	很多外国人来中国学习武术。 Lots of people from abroad come to China to learn martial arts.
刺激	cìjī	exciting; to stimulate	最后一分钟进了一个球，太刺激了！ A goal in the last minute: what a thrill!
迷	mí	to be crazy about; fan	我弟弟迷上了足球，每天都在看比赛。 My little brother is crazy about football; he watches matches every day.
鼓	gǔ	drum; to beat (a drum)	比赛开始前，球迷们敲起了鼓。 Before the match began, the fans started beating drums.

pattern a来a去: back and forth, over and over

verb A | 来 | verb A | 去

Put the same verb before 来 and before 去 to show an action going back and forth or round and round: 走来走去 pace up and down, 飞来飞去 fly about. With thinking or talking verbs it means “over and over”: 想来想去 think it over and over.

选手们在跑道上跑来跑去，准备比赛。 **xuǎnshǒumen zài pǎodào shàng pǎo lái pǎo qù zhǔnbèi bǐsài** The athletes are running up and down the track, getting ready to compete.

我想来想去，还是决定参加跳远比赛。 **wǒ xiǎng lái xiǎng qù háishi juédìng cānjiā tiàoyuǎn bǐsài** I thought it over and over, and in the end decided to enter the long jump.

比赛前，教练紧张得在场边走来走去。 **bǐsài qián jiàoliàn jǐnzhāng de zài chǎng biān zǒu lái zǒu qù** Before the match, the coach was so nervous he paced up and down the touchline.

dialogue opening day

xiaoming 安娜，快一点儿！运动会九点开幕，开幕式可不能错过。
Ānnà kuài yìdiǎnr yùndònghuì jiǔ diǎn kāimù kāimùshì kě bù néng cuòguò · Anna, hurry up! The games open at nine, and we can't miss the opening ceremony.

anna 来了来了！我找票找了半天，在家走来走去，最后发现就在包里。
lái le lai le wǒ zhǎo piào zhǎo le bàntiān zài jiā zǒu lái zǒu qù zuìhòu fāxiàn jiù zài bāo lǐ · Coming! I spent ages looking for the tickets, walking round and round the flat, and they were in my bag all along.

xiaoming 哈哈。今天上午是跳高和跳远，下午是足球决赛。
hā hā jīntiān shàngwǔ shì tiàogāo hé tiàoyuǎn xiàwǔ shì zúqiú juésài · Ha ha. This morning it's the high jump and the long jump, and this afternoon the football final.

anna 听说有一位跳高选手要挑战世界纪录。
tīngshuō yǒu yí wèi tiàogāo xuǎnshǒu yào tiǎozhàn shìjiè jìlù · I heard one of the high jumpers is going for the world record.

xiaoming 对，她最近训练得特别好。凭她的水平，很有希望。
duì tā zuìjìn xùnliàn de tèbié hǎo píng tā de shuǐpíng hěn yǒu xīwàng · Yes, her training has gone really well lately. At her level, she's got a real chance.

anna 你听，掌声！球迷们还敲起鼓来了，好刺激啊！
nǐ tīng zhǎngshēng qiúmímen hái qiāo qǐ gǔ lái le hǎo cìjī a · Listen, applause! The fans have started beating drums too. How exciting!

xiaoming 下午的对手很强，不过我觉得我们队能胜。
xiàwǔ de duìshǒu hěn qiáng búguò wǒ juéde wǒmen duì néng shèng · This afternoon's opponents are strong, but I think our team can beat them.

anna 要是胜利了，大家一定都会站起来鼓掌。对了，票多少钱？我给你。
yàoshi shènglì le dàjiā yídìng dōu huì zhàn qǐlái gǔzhǎng duì le piào duōshao qián wǒ gěi nǐ · If they win, everyone will be on their feet clapping. Oh, how much were the tickets? Let me pay you back.

xiaoming 什么钱不钱的！闭幕式的票你来买，就行了。
shénme qián bu qián de bìmùshì de piào nǐ lái mǎi jiù xíng le · Forget the money! You buy the tickets for the closing ceremony, and we're even.

anna 好，就这么定了！
hǎo jiù zhème dìng le · Deal!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

军
jūn
army

胜
shèng
to win, beat

武
wǔ
martial, military

good to know · 胜 is the written “win, beat”, the word of sports headlines: 中国队3比1胜对手. In conversation people say 赢. 棒 isn’t only “great”: it’s also a noun, a stick or a club (木棒 a wooden stick). 牛 “cow” is also slang for “awesome, amazing”: 太牛了！, 真牛！ Keep it for friends; it’s very casual.

Now you can follow a match in Chinese: the score, the referee’s call and the roar of the crowd.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 56 free time

Talk about hobbies and free time, say “we might as well…” with X着也是X着, and say what’s worth seeing with 看头.

“What do you do in your free time?” is one of the first questions new friends and colleagues ask.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
休闲	xiūxián	leisure; casual	周末我一般穿休闲一点儿的衣服。 At weekends I usually wear something a bit more casual.
闲	xián	idle, not busy	我最近比较闲，可以帮你。 I’m not very busy at the moment, so I can help you.
业余	yèyú	spare-time; amateur	他业余时间喜欢摄影。 In his spare time he likes photography.
娱乐	yúlè	entertainment; to have fun	下班以后，你一般有什么娱乐活动? What do you usually do for fun after work?
户外	hùwài	outdoor(s)	天气好的时候，孩子们应该多参加户外活动。 When the weather is good, children should do more outdoor activities.
划	huá	to row, paddle	我们在公园里划船，玩了一下午。 We rowed boats in the park and had fun all afternoon.
气球	qìqiú	balloon	孩子手里拿着一个红色的气球。 The child is holding a red balloon.
手工	shǒugōng	handmade; handicraft	这个包是手工做的，所以有点儿贵。 This bag is handmade, so it’s a bit expensive.
摄影	shèyǐng	photography; to photograph	他是摄影爱好者，走到哪儿都带着相机。 He’s a keen photographer and takes his camera everywhere.
拍摄	pāishè	to shoot, film	这部电影是在北京拍摄的。 This film was shot in Beijing.
图画	túhuà	picture, drawing	这本书里有很多可爱的图画。 This book has lots of lovely pictures.
美术	měishù	fine art, art (subject)	她从小喜欢画画，大学学的是美术。 She loved drawing as a child and studied art at university.
享受	xiǎngshòu	to enjoy	退休以后，爷爷开始享受自己的生活。 After he retired, Grandpa began to enjoy his own life.
体验	tǐyàn	to experience (first-hand)	我想去农村体验一下那里的生活。 I’d like to go to the countryside and experience life there.
欣赏	xīnshǎng	to admire, appreciate	我们坐在山上，欣赏远处的风景。 We sat on the hill, admiring the view in the distance.

五颜六色	wǔyánliùsè	colourful, of every colour	花园里开满了五颜六色的花。 The garden is full of flowers of every colour.
丰富多彩	fēngfùduōcǎi	rich and varied	大学生活丰富多彩。 University life is rich and varied.
风格	fēnggé	style	我很喜欢这位画家的风格。 I really like this painter's style.
动画	dònghuà	animation, cartoon	孩子们都喜欢看动画片。 Children all love watching cartoons.
头	tou	(something) worth doing	这部电影没什么看头{tou}。 This film isn't really worth watching.
优美	yōuměi	graceful, beautiful	这首歌的音乐很优美。 This song has a beautiful melody.
神秘	shénmì	mysterious	他笑得很神秘，好像有什么秘密。 He gave a mysterious smile, as if he had a secret.
特殊	tèshū	special, unusual	今天对我来说是一个特殊的日子。 Today is a special day for me.
音量	yīnliàng	volume (of sound)	电视的音量太大了，关小一点儿吧。 The TV's too loud. Turn it down a bit.
灯光	dēngguāng	lighting, lights	晚上公园里的灯光特别美。 The lights in the park are really beautiful at night.

pattern x着也是x着: might as well; and 头: worth doing

verb | 着也是 | verb | 着 | so let's do something

闲着也是闲着 is literally "being idle is being idle": you're doing nothing anyway, so you might as well do something useful. The verb is usually 闲, 坐, 等 or 待. Also today: a light 头 after a verb makes a noun, "something worth doing": 有看头 worth watching, 没什么玩头 not much fun.

等着也是等着，我们先去喝杯咖啡吧。 **děng zhe yě shì děng zhe wǒmen xiān qù hē bēi kāfēi ba** We're only waiting, so let's go and have a coffee first.

反正待着也是待着，我来帮你吧。 **fǎnzhèng dāi zhe yě shì dāi zhe wǒ lái bāng nǐ ba** I'm not doing anything anyway, so let me help you.

这个地方没什么玩头，我们去别的地方吧。 **zhège dìfang méi shénme wán tou wǒmen qù biéde dìfang ba** There's not much to do here. Let's go somewhere else.

dialogue a free saturday

little sister 安娜，你周末一般有什么娱乐活动？
Ānnà nǐ zhōumò yìbān yǒu shénme yúlè huódòng · Anna, what do you usually do for fun at the weekend?

anna 我喜欢户外活动，比如爬山、划船。有时候也去欣赏一下别人的摄影作品。
wǒ xǐhuan hùwài huódòng bǐrú pá shān huá chuán yǒu shíhou yě qù xīnshǎng yíxià biérén de shèyǐng zuòpǐn · I like being outdoors: hiking, rowing. Sometimes I go and look at other people's photography too.

little sister 我们美术课下周有手工比赛，我想用气球做一个大熊猫。
wǒmen měishù kè xià zhōu yǒu shǒugōng bǐsài wǒ xiǎng yòng qìqiú zuò yí gè dàxióngmāo · We've got a craft contest in art class next week. I want to make a giant panda out of balloons.

anna 好主意！反正我坐着也是坐着，来帮你吧。
hǎo zhǔyi fǎnzhèng wǒ zuò zhe yě shì zuò zhe lái bāng nǐ ba · Great idea! I'm only sitting around anyway, so let me help.

little sister 太好了！我还想画几张图画，风格要特殊一点儿，有点儿神秘的感觉。
tài hǎo le wǒ hái xiǎng huà jǐ zhāng túhuà fēnggé yào tèshū yìdiǎnr yǒudiǎnr shénmì de gǎnjué · Brilliant! I also want to draw a few pictures in an unusual style, with a slightly mysterious feel.

anna 那你可以参考一下动画片，颜色五颜六色的，很好看。
nà nǐ kěyǐ cānkǎo yíxià dònghuà piàn yánsè wǔyán liùsè de hěn hǎokàn · Then you could look at cartoons for ideas. They use every colour, and they look great.

little sister 对，最近那部动画片很有看头！
duì zuìjìn nà bù dònghuà piàn hěn yǒu kàn tou · Yes, that new cartoon is really worth watching!

little sister 我哥哥说，周末就应该休闲，不应该忙这些。
wǒ gēge shuō zhōumò jiù yīnggāi xiūxián bù yīnggāi máng zhèxiē · My brother says weekends are for relaxing, not for keeping busy with stuff like this.

anna 每个人享受周末的方式不一样。自己动手做东西，也是一种体验。
měi gè rén xiǎngshòu zhōumò de fāngshì bù yíyàng zìjǐ dòngshǒu zuò dōngxi yě shì yì zhǒng tǐyàn · Everyone enjoys the weekend in their own way. Making things with your own hands is an experience too.

little sister 安娜，把音乐的音量开大一点儿吧，这首歌很优美。
Ānnà bǎ yīnyuè de yīnliàng kāi dà yìdiǎnr ba zhè shǒu gē hěn yōuměi · Anna, turn the music up a bit. This song is beautiful.

anna 好！有音乐、有手工，我们的业余生活真是丰富多彩。
hǎo yǒu yīnyuè yǒu shǒugōng wǒmen de yèyú shēnghuó zhēn shì fēngfù duōcǎi · Sure! Music and crafts: our free time is so full of variety.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

闲
xián
idle, not busy

娱
yú
to amuse

good to know · 头 here is light (tou) and comes after a verb: 看头, 想头, 吃头, 玩头, usually with 有 or 没（什么）. 头 tóu "head" is a different word. 休闲 is everywhere on signs and in shops: 休闲服装 casual wear, 休闲区 a lounge or rest area.

Hobbies are the easiest door into a friendship. Now you can open it in Chinese.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 57 on stage

Talk about plays, films, songs and exhibitions, and say how strong a feeling is with 得 + a set phrase.

Films, songs and shows are what people share and talk about, and the easiest way into a culture.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
舞台	wǔtái	stage	她第一次站在舞台上的时候非常紧张。 The first time she stood on a stage, she was very nervous.
舞蹈	wǔdǎo	dance (as an art)	这个舞蹈表演得太美了。 That dance was beautifully performed.
戏	xì	play, opera, show	爷爷最喜欢听戏。 Grandpa loves going to the opera more than anything.
戏剧	xìjù	drama, theatre	他在大学学的是戏剧。 He studied drama at university.
剧场	jùchǎng	theatre (building)	剧场里坐满了观众。 The theatre was full.
导演	dǎoyǎn	director; to direct	这位导演拍了很多有名的电影。 This director has made lots of famous films.
角色	juésè	role, part	她在这部电视剧里演一个医生的角色。 She plays a doctor in this TV series.
明星	míngxīng	star, celebrity	很多年轻人都想成为明星。 Lots of young people want to become stars.
嘉宾	jiābīn	(honoured) guest	今天节目|的嘉宾是一位著名作家。 Today's guest on the show is a famous writer.
歌曲	gēqǔ	song	这首歌曲在年轻人中很流行。 This song is very popular with young people.
歌词	gēcí	lyrics	这首歌的歌词写得特别动人。 The lyrics of this song are really moving.
诗	shī	poem, poetry	小时候，妈妈每天晚上给我念一首诗。 When I was little, Mum read me a poem every night.
诗人	shīrén	poet	她不但|是作家，也是一位诗人。 She's not only a novelist but a poet too.
文学	wénxué	literature	我对中国文学很感兴趣。 I'm very interested in Chinese literature.
创作	chuàngzuò	to create, write; a work	这首歌是他二十岁的时候创作的。 He wrote this song when he was twenty.
动人	dòngrén	moving, touching	这个故事很动人，很多读者都哭了。 The story is so moving that lots of readers cried.
影片	yǐngpiàn	film, movie	这部影片获得了很多奖。 This film has won lots of awards.

影视	yǐngshì	film and television	他大学毕业以后进了一家影视公司。 After university he joined a film and TV company.
展出	zhǎnchū	to be on show, exhibit	这位画家的作品将在北京展出。 This painter's work will go on show in Beijing.
展览	zhǎnlǎn	exhibition; to exhibit	周末我们去看了一个摄影展览。 At the weekend we went to a photography exhibition.
知名	zhīmíng	well-known, famous	她是一位知名演员。 She's a well-known actress.
伟大	wěidà	great, mighty	这是一部伟大的作品。 This is a great work.
了不起	liǎobuqǐ	amazing, remarkable	他一个|人完成了这么多工作，真了不起! He got all that work done by himself. That's amazing!
出色	chūsè	outstanding, excellent	她在比赛中表现得很出色。 She did brilliantly in the competition.
宝贵	bǎoguì	precious, valuable	谢谢你提的宝贵意见。 Thank you for your valuable suggestions.

pattern verb / adjective + 得 + a set phrase

verb / adjective | 得 | set phrase

After 得 you can put a ready-made four-character phrase that paints the result: 打扮得五颜六色 decorated in every colour, 收拾得干干净净 tidied till it's spotless, 安排得丰富多彩 packed with variety, 讲得清清楚楚 explained crystal-clear. The phrase does the job of 很 + adjective, so don't add 很. You already know a short cousin from day 26: 高兴得不得了.

舞台打扮得五颜六色，像过节一样。 **wǔtái dǎban de wǔyán liùsè xiàng guòjié yíyàng** The stage was decorated in every colour, like a festival.

这次艺术节安排得丰富多彩，有戏剧，也有舞蹈。 **zhè cì yìshù jié ānpái de fēngfù duōcǎi yǒu xìjù yě yǒu wǔdǎo** This arts festival has a rich programme, with both theatre and dance.

演出结束以后，大家把剧场收拾得干干净净。 **yǎnchū jiéshù yǐhòu dàjiā bǎ jùchǎng shōushi de gāngānjìngjìng** After the show, everyone tidied the theatre until it was spotless.

导演把要求讲得清清楚楚，大家都听懂了。 **dǎoyǎn bǎ yāoqiú jiǎng de qīngqīngchuchu dàjiā dōu tīng dǒng le** The director explained what he wanted crystal-clear, and everyone understood.

dialogue first night

zhao yang 安娜，你来了！今天晚上这部戏是第一次演出，剧场里坐满了人。
Ānnà nǐ lái le jīntiān wǎnshang zhè bù xì shì dì yī cì yǎnchū jùchǎng lǐ zuò mǎn le rén · Anna, you made it! Tonight is the play's first night, and the theatre is packed.

anna 这部戏的广告是我们公司做的，所以我一定要来看看。
zhè bù xì de guǎnggào shì wǒmen gōngsī zuò de suǒyǐ wǒ yídìng yào lái kàn kan · My company made the adverts for this play, so I had to come and see it.

zhao yang 你看，舞台打扮得五颜六色，今天晚上的节目也安排得丰富多彩。
nǐ kàn wǔtái dǎban de wǔyán liùsè jīntiān wǎnshang de jiémù yě ānpái de fēngfù duōcǎi · Look, the stage is decorated in every colour, and tonight's programme is packed with variety too.

zhao yang 今天还来了几位嘉宾，都是影视明星。
jīntiān hái lái le jǐ wèi jiābīn dōu shì yǐngshì míngxīng · There are some special guests tonight too, all film and TV stars.

anna 我听说导演以前是一位诗人，很喜欢文学。
wǒ tīngshuō dǎoyǎn yǐqián shì yí wèi shīrén hěn xǐhuan wénxué · I heard the director used to be a poet and loves literature.

zhao yang 对，这部戏剧就是他自己创作的，里面的歌曲和歌词也都是他写的。
duì zhè bù xìjù jiùshì tā zìjǐ chuàngzuò de lǐmiàn de gēqǔ hé gēcí yě dōu shì tā xiě de · Yes, he wrote the play himself, and all the songs and lyrics too.

anna 真了不起！那个演母亲的演员是谁？她的角色很动人。
zhēn liǎobuqǐ nàge yǎn mǔqīn de yǎnyuán shì shéi tā de juésè hěn dòngrén · That's amazing! Who's the actress playing the mother? Her character is so moving.

zhao yang 她是一位知名演员，演过很多影片。她第一次上台的时候才十岁，紧张得不得了。
tā shì yí wèi zhīmíng yǎnyuán yǎn guo hěn duō yǐngpiàn tā dì yī cì shàng tái de shíhou cái shí suì jǐnzhāng de bùdéliǎo · She's a well-known actress who's been in lots of films. She first went on stage at just ten, terribly nervous.

anna 原来是这样！刚才那段舞蹈美得不得了，她念的那首诗也很动人。
yuánlái shì zhèyàng gāngcái nà duàn wǔdǎo měi de bùdéliǎo tā niàn de nà shǒu shī yě hěn dòngrén · So that's why! That dance just now was absolutely beautiful, and the poem she read was so moving.

zhao yang 一会儿导演要讲讲他的创作经验，这可是很宝贵的机会。
yíhuìr dǎoyǎn yào jiǎng jiang tā de chuàngzuò jīngyàn zhè kě shì hěn bǎoguì de jīhuì · In a moment the director will talk about how he wrote it. That's a really precious chance.

anna 好！假如还有时间，我们再去楼上看看展览吧，那儿展出了这部戏的老照片。
hǎo jiǎrú hái yǒu shíjiān wǒmen zài qù lóu shàng kàn kan zhǎnlǎn ba nàr zhǎnchū le zhè bù xì de lǎo zhàopiàn · Great! If there's time, let's go upstairs to the exhibition afterwards. They're showing old photos from the play there.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

曲
qǔ
tune, melody

诗
shī
poem, poetry



伟 wěi great, big											

good to know · 台 is a measure word for machines (一台电脑), but also a noun: a stage or platform. 上台 to go on stage, 台上 on stage, 台下 in the audience. 戏 is any show on a stage, especially Chinese opera. People say 听戏 “listen to opera” because the singing is the heart of it. A set phrase after 得 paints the result: 收拾得干干净净, 打扮得漂漂亮亮, 讲得清清楚楚. Many are an adjective said twice (干净 → 干干净净); they already mean “very”, so leave out 很.

From the stage to the screen, you can now talk about what moves you, and how much.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 58 news & media

Talk about news, TV and publishing, and complain about what happened to something with 被 / 叫 / 让 … 给.

News words are everywhere: on your phone, on screens in the metro, in every conversation about the day.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
媒体	méitǐ	media	很多媒体都报道了这件事。 Lots of media outlets reported on this.
报道	bàodào	to report; news report	今天的报纸报道了这场比赛。 Today's paper reported on the match.
采访	cǎifǎng	to interview (as a reporter)	记者在现场采访了几位观众。 The reporter interviewed a few spectators on the spot.
标题	biāotí	headline, title	这篇文章的标题很吸引人。 This article has an eye-catching headline.
出版	chūbǎn	to publish (a book)	他的第一本小说是去年出版的。 His first novel came out last year.
发表	fābiǎo	to publish; to express	她在杂志上发表了一篇文章。 She had an article published in a magazine.
发布	fābù	to release, announce	这家公司下个月发布新手机。 The company launches its new phone next month.
传播	chuánbō	to spread, broadcast	现在，新闻在网上传播得非常快。 These days news spreads very fast online.
宣布	xuānbù	to announce, declare	校长宣布明天放假。 The head teacher announced that tomorrow is a holiday.
宣传	xuānchuán	to publicise, promote	我们在网上宣传这次活动。 We're promoting the event online.
印刷	yìnshuā	to print; printing	这本书印刷得很清楚。 This book is very clearly printed.
电视台	diànshìtái	TV station	赵阳在一家电视台当记者。 Zhao Yang is a reporter at a TV station.
电子版	diànzǐbǎn	electronic version, e-edition	你能把这份材料的电子版发给我吗? Could you send me the electronic version of this document?
收看	shōukàn	to watch (TV)	欢迎大家收看今天的新闻。 Welcome to today's news.
直播	zhíbō	to broadcast live; live stream	电视台直播了这场决赛。 The TV station showed the final live.
纪录片	jìlùpiàn	documentary	我昨天看了一部关于大熊猫的纪录片。 Yesterday I watched a documentary about giant pandas.
画面	huàmiàn	picture (on screen), image	这部电影的画面非常美。 This film looks beautiful.

记载	jìzǎi	to record (in writing)	这本书里记载了很多历史故事。 This book records many stories from history.
公布	gōngbù	to make public, announce	考试成绩下周公布。 The exam results will be published next week.
事件	shìjiàn	event, incident	这次事件引起了大家的关注。 This incident caught everyone's attention.
现场	xiànchǎng	the scene; on the spot, live	记者第一时间赶到了现场。 The reporters rushed to the scene straight away.
普及	pǔjí	to spread widely; widespread	现在手机已经非常普及了。 Mobile phones are everywhere now.
大众	dàzhòng	the public, the masses	这本杂志很受大众欢迎。 This magazine is very popular with the public.
响声	xiǎngshēng	noise, sound (a bang, a ring)	夜里我听到外面有很大的响声。 In the night I heard a loud noise outside.
悄悄	qiāoqiāo	quietly, secretly	他悄悄地走进了教室。 He crept quietly into the classroom.

pattern 被 / 叫 / 让 + doer + 给 + verb

thing | 被 / 叫 / 让 | doer | 给 | verb + result

In a 被 sentence you can put 给 right before the verb: 我的手机被弟弟给弄坏了. 给 adds no meaning, but it sounds spoken and a bit emotional, often about something unlucky. With 叫 and 让, the casual words for 被, 给 is very common.

我的蛋糕让大白给吃了！ **wǒ de dàngāo ràng Dàbái gěi chī le** Dabai ate my cake!

这个秘密叫一个记者给发现了。 **zhège mìmì jiào yí gè jìzhě gěi fāxiàn le** A reporter found out the secret.

我的自行车被人给骑走了。 **wǒ de zìxíngchē bèi rén gěi qí zǒu le** Someone's gone off on my bike.

dialogue a day at the tv station

zhao yang 安娜，欢迎来电视台！我刚采访完一位作家，他最近发表的文章很受欢迎。
Ānnà huānyíng lái diànshìtái wǒ gāng cǎifǎng wán yí wèi zuòjiā tā zuìjìn fābiǎo de wénzhāng hěn shòu huānyíng · Welcome to the station, Anna! I've just finished interviewing a writer whose latest article has been really popular.

anna 你们真忙。今天有什么重要的新闻吗？
nǐmen zhēn máng jīntiān yǒu shénme zhòngyào de xīnwén ma · You're so busy here. Any big news today?

zhao yang 下周有一个国际音乐节，我们正在帮他们宣传。本来明天才发布消息，可是叫一个网友给提前发到网上了。
xià zhōu yǒu yí gè guójì yīnyuè jié wǒmen zhèngzài bāng tāmen xuānchuán běnlái míngtiān cái fābù xiāoxi kěshì jiào yí gè wǎngyǒu gěi tíqián fā dào wǎngshang le · There's an international music festival next week, and we're helping to promote it. The news wasn't meant to be released until tomorrow, but someone went and posted it online early.

anna 现在信息传播得这么快，什么秘密不秘密的，早就没有了。
xiànzài xìnxī chuánbō de zhème kuài shénme mìmì bú mìmì de zǎo jiù méiyǒu le · Information spreads so fast these days. Secrets? There's no such thing any more.

zhao yang 是啊。明天我们去现场直播，大家在家里就能收看。
shì a míngtiān wǒmen qù xiànchǎng zhíbō dàjiā zài jiā lǐ jiù néng shōukàn · True. Tomorrow we're broadcasting live from the festival, so people can watch at home.

anna 我很少看电视，一般在手机上看报纸的电子版。
wǒ hěn shǎo kàn diànshì yìbān zài shǒujī shàng kàn bàozhǐ de diànzǐbǎn · I hardly watch TV. I usually read the e-edition of the paper on my phone.

zhao yang 现在手机这么普及，媒体也得跟着变。我们最近还拍了一部纪录片。
xiànzài shǒujī zhème pǔjí méitǐ yě děi gēn zhe biàn wǒmen zuìjìn hái pāi le yí bù jìlùpiàn · With phones everywhere now, the media has to change too. We've just made a documentary, actually.

anna 是关于什么的？标题想好了吗？
shì guānyú shénme de biāotí xiǎng hǎo le ma · What's it about? Have you got a title yet?

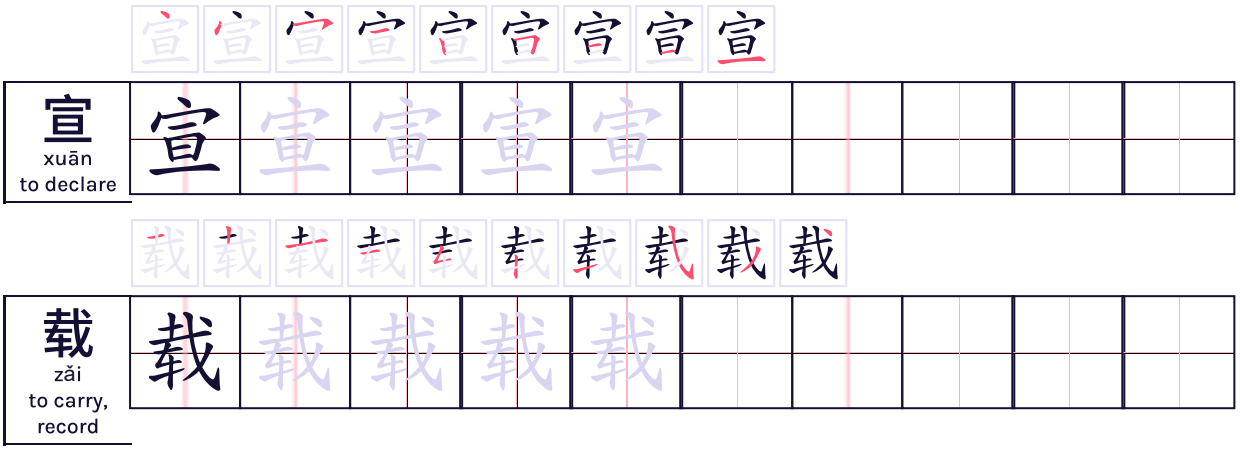
zhao yang 叫《老胡同》。里面有很多老画面，还有一些历史事件，连书里都没有记载。
jiào lǎo hútòng lǐmiàn yǒu hěn duō lǎo huàmiàn hái yǒu yìxiē lìshǐ shìjiàn lián shū lǐ dōu méiyǒu jìzǎi · It's called Old Hutongs. It's got lots of old footage, and some events from history that aren't even recorded in books.

anna 真有看头！公布时间以后，一定告诉我。
zhēn yǒu kàn tou gōngbù shíjiān yǐhòu yídìng gàosu wǒ · That sounds well worth watching! Let me know as soon as the date is announced.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

版
bǎn
printing plate; edition

布
bù
to spread, announce



good to know · 报道 is a noun and a verb: 新闻报道 a news report, 报道比赛 to report on a match. Note the character: 道, not 到. 发布 (release), 宣布 (announce) and 公布 (make public) all sound official. In a chat you'd just say 说 or 发.

Headlines, live broadcasts, e-editions: the news in Chinese is now yours to follow.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 59 how does it look?

Describe shapes, sizes, surfaces and colours, and say you're stuck with X也X不得，Y也Y不得.

Describing how something looks is what you need to shop, give feedback, or find a lost bag.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
形状	xíngzhuàng	shape, form	这朵云的形状像一只狗。 That cloud is shaped like a dog.
外形	wàixíng	outward shape, look	这辆车的外形很漂亮。 This car looks really good.
外观	wàiguān	appearance, exterior	这家饭馆外观很普通，但菜很好吃。 This restaurant looks very ordinary from outside, but the food is delicious.
方	fāng	square	这张桌子是方的。 This table is square.
圆	yuán	round; circle	今天晚上的月亮又大又圆。 The moon is big and round tonight.
弯	wān	bent, curved; to bend	这条路很弯，开车要小心。 This road is full of bends, so drive carefully.
直	zhí	straight; to straighten	请坐直，别低头看手机。 Sit up straight, and don't keep looking down at your phone.
斜	xié	slanting, crooked	这张画挂斜了，往左边动一点儿。 This picture is crooked. Move it a bit to the left.
平	píng	flat, level	这条路很平，适合骑自行车。 This road is nice and flat, perfect for cycling.
宽	kuān	wide, broad	这条马路很宽，车也不多。 This road is wide and there isn't much traffic.
窄	zhǎi	narrow	胡同很窄，车开不进去。 The hutong is too narrow for cars to get in.
软	ruǎn	soft	这张床太软了，我睡不好。 This bed is too soft. I can't sleep well on it.
硬	yìng	hard, stiff	这个面包放了两天，已经硬了。 This bread has been sitting out for two days and gone hard.
薄	báo	thin (not thick)	今天降温了，你穿得太薄了。 It's got colder today. You're not dressed warmly enough.
浅	qiǎn	shallow; light (colour)	这条河的水很浅。 The water in this river is shallow.
青	qīng	green, blue-green (of nature)	春天到了，远处的山都青了。 Spring is here, and the hills in the distance have turned green.
黑	hēi	dark; black	天黑了，我们回家吧。 It's getting dark. Let's go home.

红	hóng	red; popular	她听了以后，脸一下就红了。 She blushed when she heard that.
色彩	sècǎi	colour(s), colouring	这幅画的色彩非常丰富。 This painting is full of colour.
模糊	móhu	blurred, unclear	这张照片太模糊了，看不清楚。 This photo is too blurry; you can't make anything out.
细节	xìjié	detail	他做事很注意细节。 He pays close attention to detail.
特征	tèzhēng	feature, characteristic	你能说说那个人的外形特征吗? Can you describe what that person looked like?
形式	xíngshì	form, format	这次考试的形式跟以前不一样。 This exam's format is different from before.
表面	biǎomiàn	surface; on the surface	他表面上很平静，其实心里很紧张。 He looked calm on the surface, but inside he was really nervous.
面	miàn	side, surface	这张纸的两面{mian4-5}都写满了字。 Both sides of this sheet are covered in writing.

pattern x也x不得，y也y不得: you can neither x nor y

X | 也 | X不得 | ，Y | 也 | Y不得

This says you're stuck: you mustn't do X, and you mustn't do Y either. 不得 after a verb means "can't, mustn't (it would be wrong or harmful)". A common one is 哭也哭不得，笑也笑不得: not knowing whether to laugh or cry.

这把椅子太老了，坐也坐不得，扔也扔不得。 zhè bǎ yǐzi tài lǎo le zuò yě zuò bu de rēng yě rēng bu de
This chair is so old you can't sit on it, but you can't throw it out either.

这件事很复杂，说也说不得，问也问不得。 zhè jiàn shì hěn fùzá shuō yě shuō bu de wèn yě wèn bu de
It's a delicate matter: you can't talk about it, and you can't ask about it either.

宝宝在睡觉，说也说不得，动也动不得。 bǎo bǎo zài shuìjiào shuō yě shuō bu de dòng yě dòng bu de
The baby's asleep: we can't talk, and we can't move.

dialogue the new lamp

manager lin 安娜，你画的台灯我看了。外形不错，色彩也很好。
Ānnà nǐ huà de táidēng wǒ kàn le wàixíng búcuò sècǎi yě hěn hǎo · Anna, I've looked at your lamp drawing. The shape's good, and so are the colours.

anna 谢谢！我想让形状特别一点儿，所以上面是圆的，下面是方的。
xièxie wǒ xiǎng ràng xíngzhuàng tèbié yìdiǎnr suǒyǐ shàngmiàn shì yuán de xiàmiàn shì fāng de · Thank you! I wanted an unusual shape, so it's round on top and square at the bottom.

manager lin 想法很好。不过下面太窄了，放在桌子上不太平，容易倒。
xiǎngfǎ hěn hǎo búguò xiàmiàn tài zhǎi le fàng zài zhuōzi shàng bú tài píng róngyì dǎo · Good idea. But the base is too narrow: it won't sit flat on a desk and it'll fall over easily.

anna 那我把它改宽一点儿。表面呢？您觉得用软的材料还是硬的材料好？
nà wǒ bǎ tā gǎi kuān yìdiǎnr biǎomiàn ne nín juéde yòng ruǎn de cáiliào háishi yìng de cáiliào hǎo · Then I'll make it wider. What about the surface? Do you think a soft material or a hard one is better?

manager lin 硬一点儿的好。颜色别太浅，黑的或者红的都不错。
yìng yìdiǎnr de hǎo yánsè bié tài qiǎn hēi de huòzhě hóng de dōu búcuò · Something harder. And not too pale a colour: black or red would both work.

anna 好的。还有，这张照片是客户发来的，可是太模糊了，细节都看不清楚。
hǎo de hái yǒu zhè zhāng zhàopiàn shì kèhù fā lái de kěshì tài móhu le xìjié dōu kàn bu qīngchu · OK. Also, the client sent this photo, but it's so blurry you can't see any details.

manager lin 他们说想要一个外观简单、特征明显的东西。
tāmen shuō xiǎng yào yí gè wàiguān jiǎndān tèzhēng míngxiǎn de dōngxi · They say they want something simple-looking with a clear, recognisable feature.

anna 可是上次他们说要复杂的。我真是哭也哭不得，笑也笑不得。
kěshì shàng cì tāmen shuō yào fùzá de wǒ zhēn shì kū yě kū bu de xiào yě xiào bu de · But last time they said they wanted something complicated. I don't know whether to laugh or cry.

manager lin 别急，这种事很正常。形式可以变，好的想法不会变。
bié jí zhè zhǒng shì hěn zhèngcháng xíngshì kěyǐ biàn hǎo de xiǎngfǎ bú huì biàn · Don't worry, that happens all the time. The form can change; a good idea stays good.

anna 好！那我今天先把画再改一改，这次一定画得又直又正。
hǎo nà wǒ jīntiān xiān bǎ huà zài gǎi yi gai zhè cì yídìng huà de yòu zhí yòu zhèng · Right! Then today I'll rework the drawing, and this time I'll get every line straight and true.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

状
zhuàng
shape, state

圆
yuán
round; circle

good to know · 黑 and 红 on their own: 天黑了 it's getting dark; 脸红 to blush; and a singer or show that's 很红 is very popular. 薄 is báo in everyday words (薄衣服, 薄纸), but bó in some written words. 青 is the green of nature: 青山 green hills, 青菜 leafy greens. 正 isn't only "right now": as an adjective it means "straight, upright": 画挂正了 the picture is straight, 坐正 sit up straight.

Round, square, wide, narrow, soft, hard: now you can describe anything you see.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 60 mission: the school art show

Follow a school art show from the invitation to the prize: art, media, shapes and colours, and the crowd's applause.

Shows, news and the arts are what people talk about after the weekend. Everything from this unit comes together here.

chapter 1 the invitation

little sister 安娜，我们学校明天有美术展览，我的三幅画也会展出！
Ānnà wǒmen xuéxiào míngtiān yǒu měishù zhǎnlǎn wǒ de sān fú huà yě huì zhǎnchū · Anna, there's an art exhibition at my school tomorrow, and three of my paintings are going on show!

anna 太了不起了！你画的是什么？
tài liǎobuqǐ le nǐ huà de shì shénme · That's amazing! What did you paint?

little sister 一幅是大白，一幅是我们的城市，还有一幅很神秘，明天你就知道了。
yì fú shì Dàbái yì fú shì wǒmen de chéngshì hái yǒu yì fú hěn shénmì míngtiān nǐ jiù zhīdào le · One is Dabai, one is our city, and one is a mystery. You'll find out tomorrow.

xiaoming 她这几天在家里画来画去，晚上都不睡觉。
tā zhè jǐ tiān zài jiā lǐ huà lái huà qù wǎnshang dōu bú shuìjiào · She's been painting away at home for days. She doesn't even sleep.

anna 你业余时间都在画画吗？
nǐ yèyú shíjiān dōu zài huà huà ma · Do you spend all your spare time painting?

little sister 对，我不太喜欢户外活动，画画就是我的娱乐。休闲的时候我看动画片，学习它们怎么用颜色。
duì wǒ bú tài xǐhuan hùwài huódòng huà huà jiùshì wǒ de yúlè xiūxián de shíhou wǒ kàn dònghuà piàn xuéxí tāmen zěnme yòng yánsè · Yes. I'm not that keen on outdoor stuff: painting is my entertainment. When I'm relaxing I watch cartoons to learn how they use colour.

xiaoming 她还画了一个拿着球棒的男孩子，说那是我小时候！
tā hái huà le yí gè ná zhe qiú bàng de nán háizi shuō nà shì wǒ xiǎoshíhou · She's even painted a little boy holding a bat, and says it's me as a kid!

little sister 哥哥！老师说，这次展览很有看头，还有手工和摄影作品。
gēge lǎoshī shuō zhè cì zhǎnlǎn hěn yǒu kàn tou hái yǒu shǒugōng hé shèyǐng zuòpǐn · Hey! Our teacher says the show is well worth seeing; there are crafts and photographs too.

anna 我一定去。反正我明天闲着也是闲着。
wǒ yídìng qù fǎnzhèng wǒ míngtiān xián zhe yě shì xián zhe · I'll definitely come. I've got nothing else on tomorrow anyway.

xiaoming 赵阳也要去，他们电视台要拍摄一个关于中学生艺术的节目。
ZhàoYáng yě yào qù tāmen diànshìtái yào pāishè yí gè guānyú zhōngxuéshēng yìshù de jiémù · Zhao Yang is going too. His TV station is filming a programme about school students' art.

little sister 真的吗？那我得打扮得漂亮一点儿！
zhēn de ma nà wǒ děi dǎban de piàoliang yìdiǎnr · Really? Then I'd better dress up a bit!

anna 看完展览，我们去公园划船，享受一下周末吧！
kàn wán zhǎnlǎn wǒmen qù gōngyuán huá chuán xiǎngshòu yíxià zhōumò ba · After the exhibition, let's go rowing in the park and enjoy the weekend!

chapter 2 a bad start

ms zhang 早上好，安娜！你来得正好，我们正在帮孩子们准备展览。
zǎoshang hǎo Ānnà nǐ lái de zhènghǎo wǒmen zhèngzài bāng háizimen zhǔnbèi zhǎnlǎn · Morning, Anna! Perfect timing; we're helping the children set up the show.

anna 呀，大厅里到处都是气球，五颜六色的，真漂亮。
yā dàtīng lǐ dàochù dōu shì qìqiú wǔyán liùsè de zhēn piàoliang · Wow, there are balloons all over the hall, every colour. It looks lovely.

little sister 妈妈！不好了，我那幅城市的画被雨给弄湿了！
māma bù hǎo le wǒ nà fú chéngshì de huà bèi yǔ gěi nòng shī le · Mum! Disaster! My painting of the city got wet in the rain!

little sister 我一看到画湿了，就急忙给你打电话，可是你一直占线。
wǒ yí kàn dào huà shī le jiù jímáng gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà kěshì nǐ yìzhí zhànxiàn · The moment I saw the painting was wet, I rushed to call you, but your line was busy the whole time.

ms zhang 别急，让我看看。只湿了一点儿，表面有点儿模糊，细节还看得清楚。
bié jí ràng wǒ kàn kan zhǐ shī le yìdiǎnr biǎomiàn yǒudiǎnr móhu xìjié hái kàn de qīngchu · Don't panic, let me see. It's only a little wet. The surface is a bit blurred, but you can still see the details.

little sister 这幅画现在挂也挂不得，扔也扔不得，怎么办？
zhè fú huà xiànzài guà yě guà bu de rēng yě rēng bu de zěnme bàn · Now I can't hang it up, and I can't throw it away either. What do I do?

anna 我有个主意：把它放在灯光下面，一会儿就干了。你看，色彩反而更特别了。
wǒ yǒu gè zhǔyi bǎ tā fàng zài dēngguāng xiàmiàn yíhuìr jiù gān le nǐ kàn sècǎi fǎnér gèng tèbié le · I've got an idea: put it under the lights and it'll soon be dry. Look, the colours are even more striking now.

ms zhang 安娜说得对。哎呀，这幅挂斜了，往左边动一点儿……好，正了。这个大厅太窄了，这面墙只能挂三幅。
Ānnà shuō de duì āiyā zhè fú guà xié le wǎng zuǒbian dòng yìdiǎnr hǎo zhèng le zhège dàtīng tài zhǎi le zhè miàn qiáng zhǐ néng guà sān fú · Anna's right. Oh, this one's crooked. Move it a bit to the left… there, straight. This hall is too narrow: this wall only takes three.

little sister 谢谢你们！我刚才急得不得了，现在终于放心了。
xièxie nǐmen wǒ gāngcái jí de bùdéliǎo xiànzài zhōngyú fàngxīn le · Thank you both! I was in a terrible panic just now, but I can relax at last.

chapter 3 live from the show

zhao yang 各位观众，我现在在一所中学的美术展览现场，为大家直播。
gèwèi guānzhòng wǒ xiànzài zài yì suǒ zhōngxué de měishù zhǎnlǎn xiànchǎng wèi dàjiā zhíbō · Good afternoon, viewers. I'm live from a secondary-school art exhibition.

zhao yang 这里的作品风格都不一样：有图画，有手工，还有摄影。
zhèlǐ de zuòpǐn fēnggé dōu bù yíyàng yǒu túhuà yǒu shǒugōng hái yǒu shèyǐng · The work here comes in all styles: pictures, crafts and photography.

zhao yang 同学，这几幅画是你创作的吗？
tóngxué zhè jǐ fú huà shì nǐ chuàngzuò de ma · Did you create these paintings?

little sister 是的。这幅叫《大白》，画的是我家的狗，它的特征就是又大又白。
shì de zhè fú jiào Dàbái huà de shì wǒ jiā de gǒu tā de tèzhēng jiùshì yòu dà yòu bái · Yes. This one is called Dabai. It's our dog, and what makes him him is that he's big and white.

zhao yang 那这一幅呢？形状很特别，看起来有点儿神秘。
nà zhè yì fú ne xíngzhuàng hěn tèbié kàn qǐlai yǒudiǎnr shénmì · And this one? It's an unusual shape and looks a little mysterious.

little sister 它的外形是圆的，可是里面的楼都是方的。天空是青的，颜色很浅，路是黑的。
tā de wàixíng shì yuán de kěshì lǐmiàn de lóu dōu shì fāng de tiānkōng shì qīng de yánsè hěn qiǎn lù shì hēi de · Its outline is round, but the buildings inside are all square. The sky is blue-green and very pale, and the roads are black.

zhao yang 你用的纸很薄吗？
nǐ yòng de zhǐ hěn báo ma · Is the paper you used very thin?

little sister 很薄，可是很硬。画画的时候要把它放得很平，外观才好看。我还想试一试别的形式，比如在软的纸上画。
hěn báo kěshì hěn yìng huà huà de shíhou yào bǎ tā fàng de hěn píng wàiguān cái hǎokàn wǒ hái xiǎng shì yi shi biéde xíngshì bǐrú zài ruǎn de zhǐ shàng huà · Very thin, but stiff. When I paint I have to lay it very flat, or it doesn't look good. I'd like to try other forms too, like painting on soft paper.

zhao yang 大家可以来现场欣赏，体验一下中学生的艺术，作品的风格都很特殊，色彩也很优美。
dàjiā kěyǐ lái xiànchǎng xīnshǎng tǐyàn yíxià zhōngxuéshēng de yìshù zuòpǐn de fēnggé dōu hěn tèshū sècǎi yě hěn yōuměi · Everyone can come and see it for themselves and experience the art of secondary-school students: the styles are unusual and the colours beautiful.

little sister 这是晚上的城市。从高楼上看，灯光五颜六色，路有直的，也有弯的。
zhè shì wǎnshang de chéngshì cóng gāo lóu shàng kàn dēngguāng wǔyán liùsè lù yǒu zhí de yě yǒu wān de · It's the city at night. From a tall building, the lights are every colour, and the roads are straight and winding.

zhao yang 这幅画的颜色极其特别，仿佛是一个梦。
zhè fú huà de yánsè jíqí tèbié fǎngfú shì yí gè mèng · The colours of this painting are extraordinary: it's like a dream.

zhao yang 真出色！对你来说，什么最宝贵？
zhēn chūsè duì nǐ lái shuō shénme zuì bǎoguì · Outstanding! What's most precious to you?

little sister 家人的支持。没有他们的帮助，就没有这些画。
jiārén de zhīchí méiyǒu tāmen de bāngzhù jiù méiyǒu zhèxiē huà · My family's support. Without their help, there would be no paintings.

chapter 4 the prize

xiaoming 快看！他们要宣布比赛结果了。
kuài kàn tāmen yào xuānbù bǐsài jiéguǒ le · Look! They're about to announce the results.

anna 大家都在鼓掌……妹妹拿了第一名！是冠军！
dàjiā dōu zài gǔzhǎng mèimei ná le dì yī míng shì guànjūn · Everyone's clapping... she's won first place! She's the champion!

little sister 我上台拿奖的时候，紧张得不得了！
wǒ shàng tái ná jiǎng de shíhou jǐnzhāng de bùdéliǎo · When I went up on stage to get my prize, I was terribly nervous!

ms zhang 你今天打扮得漂漂亮亮的，像个小明星。
nǐ jīntiān dǎban de piàopiàoliangliang de xiàng gè xiǎo míngxīng · You're all dressed up today, like a little star.

anna 你看，舞台打扮得五颜六色，节目也安排得丰富多彩。学校还请来了几位嘉宾，有一位是知名的影视明星！
nǐ kàn wǔtái dǎban de wǔyán liùsè jiémù yě ānpái de fēngfù duōcǎi xuéxiào hái qǐng lái le jǐ wèi jiābīn yǒu yí wèi shì zhīmíng de yǐngshì míngxīng · Look, the stage is decorated in every colour, and the programme is packed with variety. The school has invited some guests, and one is a well-known film and TV star!

little sister 我高兴得不得了！简直不敢相信。
wǒ gāoxìng de bùdéliǎo jiǎnzhí bù gǎn xiāngxìn · I'm over the moon! I can't believe it.

xiaoming 学校还安排了舞蹈和武术表演，今天的活动真是丰富多彩。
xuéxiào hái ānpái le wǔdǎo hé wǔshù biǎoyǎn jīntiān de huódòng zhēn shì fēngfù duōcǎi · The school has put on dance and martial arts shows too. What a packed day.

little sister 下面是戏剧表演，导演是我们的语文老师。她还写诗，是一位诗人。她说文学和画画一样，都要有动人的感情。
xiàmiàn shì xìjù biǎoyǎn dǎoyǎn shì wǒmen de yǔwén lǎoshī tā hái xiě shī shì yí wèi shīrén tā shuō wénxué hé huà huà yíyàng dōu yào yǒu dòngrén de gǎnqíng · Next is a drama performance, directed by our Chinese teacher. She writes poems too: she's a poet. She says literature is like painting: both need moving feelings.

anna 她们演的角色是一位伟大的画家，这首歌曲的歌词也很美。
tāmen yǎn de juésè shì yí wèi wěidà de huàjiā zhè shǒu gēqǔ de gēcí yě hěn měi · They're playing a great painter, and the lyrics of this song are lovely too.

ms zhang 下周剧场有一部新戏，影片也有，我们一起去看吧。
xià zhōu jùchǎng yǒu yí bù xīn xì yǐngpiàn yě yǒu wǒmen yìqǐ qù kàn ba · There's a new play at the theatre next week, and a film too: let's go together.

anna 赵阳说，今天晚上电视台会报道这次展览，我们一起收看吧。
ZhàoYáng shuō jīntiān wǎnshang diànshìtái huì bàodào zhè cì zhǎnlǎn wǒmen yìqǐ shōukàn ba · Zhao Yang says the TV station is covering the show tonight. Let's watch it together.

little sister 太好了！不过……我那幅湿了的画也会被他们给拍进去吗？
tài hǎo le búguò wǒ nà fú shī le de huà yě huì bèi tāmen gěi pāi jinqu ma · Brilliant! But... will they have filmed my wet painting too?

xiaoming 哈哈，拍进去也好，那是最有看头的一幅！
hā hā pāi jinqu yě hǎo nà shì zuì yǒu kàn tou de yì fú · Ha ha, so what if they did? It's the one most worth seeing!

chapter 5 the evening news

xiaoming 快来看，赵阳的新闻开始了！

kuài lái kàn ZhàoYáng de xīnwén kāishǐ le · Quick, Zhao Yang's news is starting!

zhao yang “各位观众晚上好。今天下午，第五届中学生运动会在北京举行了闭幕式。在激烈的决赛中，一位十六岁的选手跳出了新的跳高纪录，赛场上响起了热烈的掌声。另外，一所中学举办了美术展览，学生们的作品风格特殊、色彩优美，大众纷纷前来欣赏。详细的画面，请看我们的电子版新闻。”

gèwèi guānzhòng wǎnshang hǎo jīntiān xiàwǔ dì wǔ jiè zhōngxuéshēng yùndònghuì zài Běijīng jǔxíng le bìmùshì zài jīliè de juésài zhōng yí wèi shíliù suì de xuǎnshǒu tiào chū le xīn de tiàogāo jìlù sàichǎng shàng xiǎng qǐ le rèliè de zhǎngshēng lìngwài yì suǒ zhōngxué jǔbàn le měishù zhǎnlǎn xuéshēngmen de zuòpǐn fēnggé tèshū sècǎi yōuměi dàzhòng fēnfēn qiánlái xīnshǎng xiángxì de huàmiàn qǐng kàn wǒmen de diànzǐbǎn xīnwén · “Good evening, viewers. This afternoon the fifth secondary-school games held their closing ceremony in Beijing. In a fierce final, a sixteen-year-old competitor set a new high-jump record, and the arena rang with applause. Meanwhile, a secondary school held an art exhibition: the students' work was unusual in style and beautiful in colour, and members of the public came in their numbers to see it. For the full pictures, see our online edition.”

little sister 快看！电视上有我的画！标题是《中学生的艺术世界》！

kuài kàn diànshì shàng yǒu wǒ de huà biāotí shì zhōngxuéshēng de yìshù shìjiè · Look! My painting's on TV! The headline is “The art world of secondary-school students”!

ms zhang 这个画面真漂亮。赵阳的节目传播得真快，网上已经有很多人在宣传了。

zhège huàmiàn zhēn piàoliang ZhàoYáng de jiémù chuánbō de zhēn kuài wǎngshang yǐjīng yǒu hěn duō rén zài xuānchuán le · What a lovely picture. Zhao Yang's programme spreads so fast: lots of people are already promoting it online.

dr li 当年没有这么多媒体，报纸要先印刷、出版，消息过好几天才传播出去。现在手机普及了，什么事件都能马上公布。

dāngnián méiyǒu zhème duō méitǐ bàozhǐ yào xiān yìnshuā chūbǎn xiāoxi guò hǎojǐ tiān cái chuánbō chuqu xiànzài shǒujī pǔjí le shénme shìjiàn dōu néng mǎshàng gōngbù · In my day there wasn't all this media: papers had to be printed and published first, and news took days to spread. Now everyone has a phone, any event can be made public at once.

little sister 赵阳哥哥还采访了我！他说要把今天的事记载下来，做一部纪录片。学校也要在网上发表我们的作品，发布比赛的结果。

ZhàoYáng gēge hái cǎifǎng le wǒ tā shuō yào bǎ jīntiān de shì jìzǎi xialai zuò yí bù jìlùpiàn xuéxiào yě yào zài wǎngshang fābiǎo wǒmen de zuòpǐn fābù bǐsài de jiéguǒ · Zhao Yang interviewed me too! He says he'll record today's events and make a documentary. The school is also going to publish our work online and announce the results.

anna 大家都看到你的画了，太牛了！你现在可红了！

dàjiā dōu kàn dào nǐ de huà le tài niú le nǐ xiànzài kě hóng le · Everyone has seen your painting: that's awesome! You're really popular now!

xiaoming 那个跳高选手每天在跑道上训练，挑战自己，真刺激！今天足球决赛的比分是三比一，我们胜利了。对手很强，可是裁判说我们赢得很漂亮。

nàge tiàogāo xuǎnshǒu měi tiān zài pǎodào shàng xùnliàn tiǎozhàn zìjǐ zhēn cìjī jīntiān zúqiú juésài de bǐfēn shì sān bǐ yī wǒmen shènglì le duìshǒu hěn qiáng kěshì cáipàn shuō wǒmen yíng de hěn piàoliang · That high jumper trains on the track every day and pushes herself: so exciting! In today's football final it was three–one, and we won. The other side was strong, but the referee said we won in style.

dr li 我年轻的时候也是球迷，迷足球迷得不得了。

wǒ niánqīng de shíhou yě shì qiúmí mí zúqiú mí de bùdéliǎo · When I was young I was a fan too: absolutely crazy about football.

xiaoming 下个月还有一个运动会，开幕式我们一起去吧！妹妹要在开幕式上敲鼓呢。

xià gè yuè hái yǒu yí gè yùndònghuì kāimùshì wǒmen yìqǐ qù ba mèimei yào zài kāimùshì shàng qiāo gǔ ne · There's another games next month: let's all go to the opening ceremony! Sis is going to play the drums at it.

little sister 对！跳远和跳高的选手我都要画下来。哥哥，你刚才悄悄地出去了，是去干什么了？
duì tiàoyuǎn hé tiàogāo de xuǎnshǒu wǒ dōu yào huà xialai gēge nǐ gāngcái qiāoqiāo de chūqù le shì qù gàn shénme le · Yes! And I'm going to draw the long jumpers and high jumpers. Bro, you slipped out quietly just now: what were you up to?

xiaoming 听到门口的响声了吗？我给你订的蛋糕到了！
tīng dào ménkǒu de xiǎngshēng le ma wǒ gěi nǐ dìng de dàngāo dào le · Did you hear the noise at the door? The cake I ordered for you is here!

Sport, stage, screen and studio: you can now talk about the arts in Chinese, and cheer like a local.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 61 animals

Talk about animals and pets, and describe changes of state with 下来, 下去, 起来, 过来 and 过去.

Pets and animals are a favourite topic with children, neighbours and anyone walking a dog.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
宠物	chǒngwù	pet	现在很多年轻人都养宠物。 Lots of young people have pets these days.
喂	wèi	to feed	我每天下班回家，先喂{wei4-5b}猫。 Every day when I get home from work, the first thing I do is feed the cat.
大象	dàxiàng	elephant	大象的鼻子非常长。 Elephants have very long trunks.
猴子	hóuzi	monkey	猴子在树上跳{tiao4}来跳{tiao4}去。 The monkeys are leaping about in the trees.
兔子	tùzi	rabbit	妹妹养了一只小兔子。 My little sister has a little rabbit.
猪	zhū	pig	这只小猪很可爱。 This piglet is so cute.
鸭子	yāzi	duck	河里有几只鸭子在游泳。 There are a few ducks swimming in the river.
蛇	shé	snake	很多人都怕蛇。 Lots of people are afraid of snakes.
蝴蝶	húdié	butterfly	花园里有很多蝴蝶在飞。 Lots of butterflies are flying around the garden.
昆虫	kūnchóng	insect	蝴蝶也是一种昆虫。 Butterflies are insects too.
虫子	chóngzi	bug, worm	苹果里有一条虫子！ There's a worm in the apple!
翅膀	chìbǎng	wing	小鸟的翅膀受伤了，飞不起来。 The little bird's wing is hurt, so it can't fly.
尾巴	wěiba	tail	大白一看见我就摇尾巴。 Dabai wags his tail as soon as he sees me.
生物	shēngwù	living thing; biology	地球上有很多种生物。 There are many kinds of living things on Earth.
生存	shēngcún	to survive, exist	没有水，生物就无法生存。 Without water, living things can't survive.
静	jìng	quiet, still	夜里很静，只能听到风的声音。 The night is very still; all you can hear is the wind.
丑	chǒu	ugly	这只狗长{zhang3}得有点儿丑，但是很可爱。 This dog is a bit ugly, but very sweet.
弱	ruò	weak	这只小猫身体很弱，要好好照顾。 This kitten is very weak and needs looking after.

高大	gāodà	tall and big	门口有一棵高大的树。 There's a big tall tree by the gate.
大型	dàxíng	large(-scale)	这个动物园里有很多大型动物。 There are lots of large animals in this zoo.
小型	xiǎoxíng	small(-scale), compact	我想养一只小型的狗。 I'd like a small breed of dog.
追	zhuī	to chase, run after	大白在公园里追鸟。 Dabai is chasing birds in the park.
靠	kào	to lean on; rely on; be near	猫靠在我身上睡着{zhao2}了。 The cat fell asleep leaning against me.
碰	pèng	to touch; bump into	别碰那条蛇，很危险！ Don't touch that snake. It's dangerous!
爱护	àihù	to take good care of, cherish	我们应该爱护动物。 We should be kind to animals.

pattern 下来, 下去, 起来, 过来, 过去 for changes

verb / adjective **下来 · 下去 · 起来 · 过来 · 过去**

These direction words can describe a change, not a movement. 下来: something settles or slows (安静下来, 冷下来). 下去: it carries on (坚持下去). 起来: it starts and grows (好起来, 热闹起来). 过来: back to normal (醒过来); 过去: out of it (睡过去).

天气暖和起来了，花园里的蝴蝶也多起来了。 **tiānqì nuǎnhuo qǐlai le huāyuán lǐ de húdié yě duō qǐlai le** It's getting warmer, and there are more butterflies in the garden.

喝了一点儿水，小鸟慢慢醒过来了，翅膀也能动了。 **hē le yìdiǎnr shuǐ xiǎo niǎo màn màn xǐng guolai le chìbǎng yě néng dòng le** After a little water, the bird slowly came round and could move its wings again.

不管多难，我都要坚持下去。 **bùguǎn duō nán wǒ dōu yào jiānchí xiaqu** However hard it is, I'm going to keep going.

dialogue a day at the zoo

little sister 安娜，你看，那头大象多高大啊！
Ānnà nǐ kàn nà tóu dàxiàng duō gāodà a · Anna, look how big that elephant is!

anna 真的！它的尾巴那么小，鼻子却那么长，真有意思。
zhēn de tā de wěiba nàme xiǎo bízi què nàme cháng zhēn yǒu yìsi · It really is! Such a little tail and such a long trunk. Funny, isn't it?

little sister 那边是猴子，它们在树上追来追去，一点儿也不静。
nàbiān shì hóuzi tāmen zài shù shàng zhuī lái zhuī qù yìdiǎnr yě bú jìng · Over there are the monkeys. They're chasing each other round the trees, not quiet at all.

anna 你看，它们吃了东西，就安静下来了。
nǐ kàn tāmen chī le dōngxi jiù ānjìng xialai le · Look, once they've eaten, they settle down.

anna 哈哈。我们去看看小型动物吧，比如兔子和小猪。
hā hā wǒmen qù kàn kan xiǎoxíng dòngwù ba bǐrú tùzi hé xiǎo zhū · Ha ha. Let's go and see the small animals, like the rabbits and the piglets.

little sister 好！不过我不想去看蛇，蛇太丑了，我怕。
hǎo búguò wǒ bù xiǎng qù kàn shé shé tài chǒu le wǒ pà · OK! But I don't want to see the snakes. They're so ugly, I'm scared of them.

anna 别怕，我们不碰它们，只看一看。
bié pà wǒmen bú pèng tāmen zhǐ kàn yi kan · Don't be scared. We won't touch them, we'll just have a look.

little sister 这里写着："请不要喂动物。"为什么不能喂？
zhèlǐ xiě zhe qǐng búyào wèi dòngwù wèi shénme bù néng wèi · It says here: "Please do not feed the animals." Why can't we feed them?

anna 因为人的食物对动物不好。动物园这样做是为了保护这些生物。
yīnwèi rén de shíwù duì dòngwù bù hǎo dòngwùyuán zhèyàng zuò shì wèile bǎohù zhèxiē shēngwù · Because people food is bad for animals. The zoo does it to protect them.

little sister 我们家的宠物大白就什么都吃。它累了就靠在我身上睡觉。
wǒmen jiā de chǒngwù Dàbái jiù shénme dōu chī tā lèi le jiù kào zài wǒ shēn shàng shuìjiào · Our pet Dabai eats anything. When he's tired, he goes to sleep leaning against me.

anna 你看，几只鸭子游过来了！那边还有大型的鸟和各种昆虫，我们去看看吧。
nǐ kàn jǐ zhī yāzi yóu guolai le nàbiān hái yǒu dàxíng de niǎo hé gèzhǒng kūnchóng wǒmen qù kàn kan ba · Look, some ducks are swimming over! There are big birds and all sorts of insects over there too. Let's go and see.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

猪
zhū
pig

虫
chóng
insect, bug

丑
chǒu
ugly

good to know · Measure words for animals: 只 for most small ones (一只猫, 一只鸟), 头 for big ones (一头牛), 条 for long ones (一条蛇, 一条鱼), 匹 for horses. 动物 is any animal; 生物 is any living thing, plants included, and also the school subject biology. 头 also means “first, the first few”: 头一次 the first time, 头两天 the first two days, 头等舱 first class. 毛 counts 角 in speech (一毛钱, ten fen), and as a noun it is fur, hair or feathers: 猫的毛, 毛衣 a wool jumper.

From Dabai’s tail to the elephant’s trunk: now you can chat about animals with anyone.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 62 plants & land

Talk about plants, land and water, and say what something is made up of with 由……组成.

Parks, gardens, farms and landscapes come up on every trip, and in every geography lesson.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
种子	zhǒngzi	seed	春天，农民在地{di4-3}里种{zhong4}下了种子。 In spring the farmers sowed seeds in the fields.
种植	zhòngzhí	to plant, grow (crops)	这个地区主要种植水果。 This area mainly grows fruit.
生长	shēngzhǎng	to grow (of living things)	植物生长需要阳光和水。 Plants need sunlight and water to grow.
果实	guǒshí	fruit (of a plant); fruits of work	秋天，树上的果实都熟了。 In autumn, all the fruit on the trees is ripe.
树木	shùmù	trees	山上的树木越来越多了。 There are more and more trees on the hills.
竹子	zhúzi	bamboo	大熊猫最爱吃竹子。 Giant pandas love eating bamboo most of all.
玫瑰	méigui	rose	母亲节那天，我送了妈妈一束玫瑰。 On Mother's Day I gave Mum a bunch of roses.
木头	mùtou	wood	这张桌子是木头做的。 This table is made of wood.
石头	shítou	stone, rock	河边有很多石头。 There are lots of stones by the river.
沙子	shāzi	sand	孩子们在海边玩沙子。 The children are playing in the sand at the seaside.
土地	tǔdì	land, soil	这里的土地很适合种{zhong4}水果。 The land here is perfect for growing fruit.
地面	dìmiàn	the ground, floor	下雨以后，地面很滑。 After rain the ground is slippery.
陆地	lùdì	land (not sea)	地球上海洋的面积比陆地大得多。 On Earth, the oceans cover a far bigger area than the land.
湖	hú	lake	晚饭以后，我们常常在湖边散步。 After dinner we often go for a walk by the lake.
河流	héliú	river(s)	长江是中国最长的河流。 The Yangtze is China's longest river.
池	chí	pool, pond	这家酒店有一个很大的游泳池。 This hotel has a big swimming pool.

洞	dòng	hole; cave	我的袜子破了一个洞。 I've got a hole in my sock.
沙漠	shāmò	desert	沙漠里很少下雨。 It hardly ever rains in the desert.
地理	dìlǐ	geography	我上中学的时候最喜欢地理课。 At secondary school my favourite lesson was geography.
分布	fēnbù	to be spread over, distributed	这种植物主要分布在中国南方。 This plant is found mainly in southern China.
水分	shuǐfèn	moisture, water content	西瓜里的水分很多。 Watermelons are full of water.
组成	zǔchéng	to make up, form	我们班由二十个学生组成。 Our class is made up of twenty students.
组合	zǔhé	to combine; combination	这两种颜色组合在一起很好看。 These two colours look great together.
面积	miànjī	area (size)	这个公园的面积很大。 This park covers a big area.
摘	zhāi	to pick, pluck; take off	周末我们去农村摘苹果吧。 Let's go apple-picking in the countryside at the weekend.

pattern 由……组成: made up of

the whole | 由 | the parts | 组成

由……组成 says what parts make up a whole: 我们班由二十个学生组成. The whole comes first, 由 introduces the parts, and 组成 closes the phrase. It's a little formal, at home in descriptions, textbooks and the news.

这个公园由三个部分组成：花园、湖和一片树林。 **zhège gōngyuán yóu sān gè bùfen zǔchéng huāyuán hú hé yí piàn shùlín** The park is made up of three parts: a garden, a lake and a wood.

这个小组由两个中国学生和三个外国学生组成。 **zhège xiǎozǔ yóu liǎng gè Zhōngguó xuéshēng hé sān gè wàiguó xuéshēng zǔchéng** The group is made up of two Chinese students and three international students.

水是由什么组成的？ **shuǐ shì yóu shénme zǔchéng de** What is water made of?

dialogue in the botanical garden

professor sun 安娜，这个植物园面积很大，由好几个部分组成。
Ānnà zhège zhíwù yuán miànjī hěn dà yóu hǎo jǐ gè bùfen zǔchéng · Anna, this botanical garden is huge. It's made up of several parts.

anna 我最想看竹子。听说竹子生长得特别快?
wǒ zuì xiǎng kàn zhúzi tīngshuō zhúzi shēngzhǎng de tèbié kuài · I most want to see the bamboo. I hear bamboo grows really fast?

professor sun 对，有的竹子一天能长半米多。中国的竹子主要分布在南方。
duì yǒude zhúzi yì tiān néng zhǎng bàn mǐ duō Zhōngguó de zhúzi zhǔyào fēnbù zài nánfāng · Yes, some kinds can grow more than half a metre in a day. In China, bamboo grows mainly in the south.

anna 那边的玫瑰真漂亮，可以摘一朵吗?
nàbiān de méigui zhēn piàoliang kěyǐ zhāi yì duǒ ma · The roses over there are beautiful. Can I pick one?

professor sun 不行，只能看，不能摘。你看这个水池，旁边的石头都很有意思。
bùxíng zhǐ néng kàn bù néng zhāi nǐ kàn zhège shuǐ chí pángbiān de shítou dōu hěn yǒu yìsi · No, we can look but not pick. Look at this pond: the stones around it are really interesting.

anna 这些玫瑰真是摘也摘不得，碰也碰不得。
zhèxiē méigui zhēn shì zhāi yě zhāi bu de pèng yě pèng bu de · So with these roses you can't pick them and you can't touch them.

anna 这块石头中间有一个洞，像一只眼睛。
zhè kuài shítou zhōngjiān yǒu yí gè dòng xiàng yì zhī yǎnjing · This stone has a hole in the middle, like an eye.

professor sun 这是河流里的石头。水冲了几千年，它才变成这样。
zhè shì héliú lǐ de shítou shuǐ chōng le jǐ qiān nián tā cái biànchéng zhèyàng · It's a river stone. It took thousands of years of water rushing over it to get like this.

anna 那边的植物好像是从沙漠来的，地面上都是沙子。
nàbiān de zhíwù hǎoxiàng shì cóng shāmò lái de dìmiàn shàng dōu shì shāzi · The plants over there look like they're from the desert; the ground is all sand.

professor sun 对。沙漠里水分很少，所以这些植物都很会存水。
duì shāmò lǐ shuǐfèn hěn shǎo suǒyǐ zhèxiē zhíwù dōu hěn huì cún shuǐ · Right. There's very little water in the desert, so these plants are very good at storing it.

anna 我上学的时候没学好地理，今天真是学到了很多!
wǒ shàngxué de shíhou méi xué hǎo dìlǐ jīntiān zhēn shì xué dào le hěn duō · I wasn't very good at geography at school, so I've learnt loads today!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

竹
zhú
bamboo

石
shí
stone



湖
hú
lake

good to know · 种 has two readings: zhǒng in 种子 (seed) and 这种 (this kind), zhòng as the verb “to plant” (种树, 种植). Many nouns for materials take a light 子 or 头: 沙子 sand, 石头 stone, 木头 wood, 竹子 bamboo. 组 isn’t only a noun (小组 a group): as a verb it means “to form, put together” (组个小组), and as a measure word “a set” (一组照片, 两组种子).

Seeds, stones, rivers and roses: you can now describe the land around you, and what it’s made of.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 63 the power of nature

Talk about storms, earthquakes and natural resources, and use 有着 for what something has in a formal way.

Weather warnings, the news and science lessons all talk about the power of nature.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
地震	dìzhèn	earthquake	发生地震的时候，不要坐电梯。 Don't use the lift during an earthquake.
规律	guīlǜ	pattern, law; regular	他的生活很有规律，每天十点睡觉。 He lives a very regular life and goes to bed at ten every night.
燃烧	ránshāo	to burn	木头燃烧的时候会产生很多烟。 Burning wood gives off a lot of smoke.
危害	wēihài	to harm, endanger; harm	吸烟危害健康。 Smoking harms your health.
空中	kōngzhōng	in the air, in the sky	几只鸟在空中飞来飞去。 A few birds are flying back and forth in the sky.
恢复	huīfù	to recover, be restored	地震以后，这里的生活慢慢恢复了正常。 After the earthquake, life here slowly went back to normal.
损害	sǔnhài	to damage, harm	长时间看手机|会损害眼睛。 Looking at your phone for hours can damage your eyes.
消失	xiāoshī	to disappear, vanish	太阳出来以后，雾很快就消失了。 Once the sun came out, the fog soon disappeared.
形成	xíngchéng	to form, take shape	好习惯需要很长时间才能形成。 Good habits take a long time to form.
化	huà	to melt; -ise, -ify	太阳一出来，雪就化了。 As soon as the sun came out, the snow melted.
强大	qiángdà	powerful, mighty	大自然的力量非常强大。 The power of nature is enormous.
存在	cúnzài	to exist	这个问题一直存在，可是没有人解决。 This problem has always been there, but nobody has solved it.
来源	láiyuán	source, origin	这条河是城市用水的主要来源。 This river is the city's main source of water.
资源	zīyuán	resources	水资源非常宝贵，我们要节约用水。 Water is precious, so we should use it carefully.
原	yuán	original, former	原计划明天出发，因为下雨推迟了。 We were meant to leave tomorrow, but it's been put off because of the rain.
紧	jǐn	tight; tense	这双鞋太紧了，穿着不舒服。 These shoes are too tight; they're uncomfortable.
打破	dǎpò	to break, smash	她打破了世界纪录。 She broke the world record.

断	duàn	to break, snap; cut off	大风把很多树都吹断了。 The strong wind snapped lots of trees.
漏	lòu	to leak	我家的房子漏水了，得{dei3}找人来修。 My flat has a leak, and I need to get someone in to fix it.
玻璃	bōli	glass	窗户的玻璃被风给吹破了。 The wind broke the window pane.
厚度	hòudù	thickness	这种玻璃的厚度是两厘米。 This glass is two centimetres thick.
迅速	xùnsù	rapid, swift	警察迅速赶到了现场。 The police quickly arrived on the scene.
重大	zhòngdà	major, significant	这是一个重大的发现。 This is a major discovery.
有限	yǒuxiàn	limited	地球上的资源是有限的。 The Earth's resources are limited.
隔	gé	to separate; be apart	我们两家只{zhi3}隔一条马路。 Our two homes are just across the road from each other.

pattern 有着: has, possesses (written style)

subject | **有着** | **describing word + noun**

有着 is a written way to say 有 "has", used for abstract or impressive things: 有着三千年的历史, 有着重大的影响, 有着强大的力量. The noun usually has a describing word in front. In a chat, plain 有 sounds more natural.

这条河是城市用水的来源，有着重要的作用。 **zhè tiáo hé shì chéngshì yòng shuǐ de láiyuán yǒuzhe zhòngyào de zuòyòng** This river is the city's water source and plays an important role.

地震对人们的生活有着重大的影响。 **dìzhèn duì rénmen de shēnghuó yǒuzhe zhòngdà de yǐngxiǎng** Earthquakes have a major impact on people's lives.

森林对地球有着重要的作用，可是很多森林正在消失。 **sēnlín duì dìqiú yǒuzhe zhòngyào de zuòyòng kěshì hěn duō sēnlín zhèngzài xiāoshī** Forests matter enormously to the planet, but many are disappearing.

dialogue after the storm

xiaoming 安娜，昨天晚上的暴雨，你没事吧?
Ānnà zuótiān wǎnshang de bàoyǔ nǐ méishì ba · Anna, are you OK after last night's storm?

anna 我没事，可是窗户的玻璃被风给打破了，房子还漏水。
wǒ méishì kěshì chuānghu de bōli bèi fēng gěi dǎpò le fángzi hái lòu shuǐ · I'm fine, but the wind broke a window, and the flat's leaking.

xiaoming 天啊！这种玻璃厚度不够，以后得换厚一点儿的。
tiān a zhè zhǒng bōli hòudù búgòu yǐhòu děi huàn hòu yìdiǎnr de · Oh no! That glass isn't thick enough. You'll need thicker glass.

anna 新闻说，这场暴雨对交通有着重大的影响，很多路都断了。
xīnwén shuō zhè chǎng bàoyǔ duì jiāotōng yǒuzhe zhòngdà de yǐngxiǎng hěn duō lù dōu duàn le · The news says the storm had a big impact on transport; lots of roads were cut off.

xiaoming 是啊，我在地铁站被困了两个小时，又困又饿。
shì a wǒ zài dìtiě zhàn bèi kùn le liǎng gè xiǎoshí yòu kùn yòu è · Yes, I was stuck in a metro station for two hours, tired and hungry.

anna 原计划今天去爬山，现在只好取消了。这么大的雨是怎么形成的?
yuán jìhuà jīntiān qù pá shān xiànzài zhǐhǎo qǔxiāo le zhème dà de yǔ shì zěnme xíngchéng de · We were meant to go hiking today; now we'll have to cancel. How does such heavy rain form?

xiaoming 热空气遇到冷空气，就会形成暴雨。这种情况在夏天一直存在，很有规律。
rè kōngqì yùdào lěng kōngqì jiù huì xíngchéng bàoyǔ zhè zhǒng qíngkuàng zài xiàtiān yìzhí cúnzài hěn yǒu guīlǜ · When hot air meets cold air, you get a storm. It happens every summer, quite regularly.

anna 大自然的力量太强大了，暴雨的危害真不小。
dàzìrán de lìliàng tài qiángdà le bàoyǔ de wēihài zhēn bù xiǎo · Nature is so powerful. Storms really do a lot of damage.

xiaoming 好在雨停以后，城市迅速恢复了正常。
hǎo zài yǔ tíng yǐhòu chéngshì xùnsù huīfù le zhèngcháng · Luckily, once the rain stopped, the city got back to normal quickly.

anna 你看，空中的云都消失了，太阳出来了。
nǐ kàn kōngzhōng de yún dōu xiāoshī le tàiyáng chūlái le · Look, the clouds have all gone, and the sun's out.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

震
zhèn
to shake

燃
rán
to burn

good to know · 有着 belongs to writing and formal speech. In a chat, 这座城市有三千多年的历史 sounds more natural. 断 is for things that snap or are cut off: 树断了, 路断了, 电断了 (the power's gone). 破 is for things that break open or crack: 玻璃破了. 困 "sleepy" is also a verb, "to trap": 被困在路上 stuck on the road, 被困了两个小时 trapped for two hours. 又困又饿 uses both: stuck, and sleepy too.

Storms, quakes and resources: now you can follow the weather warnings and the science pages.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 64 going green

Talk about recycling and greener habits, and show both sides of one thing with X是它，Y也是它.

Rubbish sorting is now part of daily life in many Chinese cities, and green topics come up everywhere.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
分类	fēnlèi	to sort, classify	我们小区要求垃圾分类。 Our estate asks everyone to sort their rubbish.
回收	huíshōu	to recycle, collect back	这些塑料瓶子可以回收。 These plastic bottles can be recycled.
改善	gǎishàn	to improve (conditions)	这几年，城市的空气改善了很多。 In the last few years the city's air has got much better.
改进	gǎijìn	to improve (a method, a product)	我们的工作方法还需要改进。 Our way of working still needs improving.
保留	bǎoliú	to keep, preserve	这条街保留了很多老房子。 This street has kept lots of its old houses.
收集	shōují	to collect, gather	她喜欢收集各个国家的邮票。 She likes collecting stamps from all over the world.
珍贵	zhēnguì	precious, valuable	这些照片对我们来说非常珍贵。 These photos are very precious to us.
有利	yǒulì	beneficial, favourable	这个计划对大家都有利。 This plan is good for everyone.
不利	bùlì	unfavourable, bad (for)	天气不好，对比赛很不利。 The bad weather is bad news for the match.
光明	guāngmíng	bright; light	我相信我们的未来是光明的。 I believe our future is bright.
未来	wèilái	future; coming	未来的城市会是什么样子? What will the cities of the future be like?
长远	chángyuǎn	long-term	保护环境是一个长远的计划。 Protecting the environment is a long-term plan.
当前	dāngqián	current, present	当前最重要的问题是节约用水。 The most important issue at the moment is saving water.
调整	tiáozhěng	to adjust	我们需要调整一下时间。 We need to adjust the timing a bit.
加深	jiāshēn	to deepen	这次活动加深了我们对环保的了解。 The event deepened our understanding of protecting the environment.
缩短	suōduǎn	to shorten, cut down	坐高铁大大缩短了路上的时间。 Taking the high-speed train has cut the journey time enormously.

更换	gēnghuàn	to replace, change	这些旧灯需要更换了。 These old lights need replacing.
优良	yōuliáng	fine, excellent	这是一个优良的品种。 This is a fine variety.
优质	yōuzhì	high-quality	这家店只{zhi3}卖优质水果。 This shop only sells top-quality fruit.
投	tóu	to throw, put in	请把瓶子投进这个垃圾桶。 Please put the bottles in this bin.
围	wéi	to surround, gather round	孩子们围着老师问问题。 The children gathered round the teacher, asking questions.
移	yí	to move, shift	我们把桌子往左边移一下吧。 Let's move the table a little to the left.
结	jié	knot; to tie	袋子上打了一个结{jie2-5}。 The bag has been tied in a knot.
固定	gùdìng	fixed; to fix	我每个月都有固定的收入。 I have a fixed income every month.
剪	jiǎn	to cut (with scissors)	我想去剪头发。 I'd like to get my hair cut.

pattern X是它，Y也是它: the same thing does both

X的 是它， Y的 也是它

X是它，Y也是它 says one and the same thing is behind two opposite results: 让人高兴的是它，让人难过的也是它. 它 points back to the thing you're talking about. It's a neat way to show both sides of something.

手机，帮我们的是它，浪费我们时间的也是它。 **shǒujī bāng wǒmen de shì tā làngfèi wǒmen shíjiān de yě shì tā** Phones: they help us, and they waste our time.

汽车，给生活带来方便的是它，带来污染的也是它。 **qìchē gěi shēnghuó dài lái fāngbiàn de shì tā dài lái wūrǎn de yě shì tā** Cars make life easier, and they also bring pollution.

dialogue the new rubbish rules

professor sun 安娜，我们小区的垃圾都要分类了，你知道吗？
Ānnà wǒmen xiǎoqū de lājī dōu yào fēnlèi le nǐ zhīdào ma · Anna, did you know all the rubbish on our estate has to be sorted now?

anna 知道。我收集了一些塑料瓶子，可以回收吗？
zhīdào wǒ shōují le yìxiē sùliào píngzi kěyǐ huíshōu ma · Yes. I've collected some plastic bottles. Can they be recycled?

professor sun 可以，投到那个桶里就行。旧衣服放到这个箱子里，会送给需要的人。
kěyǐ tóu dào nàge tǒng lǐ jiù xíng jiù yīfu fàng dào zhège xiāngzi lǐ huì sòng gěi xūyào de rén · Yes, just put them in that bin. Old clothes go in this box; they're given to people who need them.

anna 大家都围在那儿干什么？
dàjiā dōu wéi zài nàr gàn shénme · Why is everyone crowding round over there?

professor sun 物业在发环保袋。他们还调整了扔垃圾的时间，每天是固定的：早上七点到九点。
wùyè zài fā huánbǎo dài tāmen hái tiáozhěng le rēng lājī de shíjiān měi tiān shì gùdìng de zǎoshang qī diǎn dào jiǔ diǎn · The property office is giving out eco bags. They've changed the rubbish times too: fixed hours, seven to nine every morning.

anna 塑料袋就是这样：方便我们的是它，污染环境的也是它。
sùliào dài jiùshì zhèyàng fāngbiàn wǒmen de shì tā wūrǎn huánjìng de yě shì tā · Plastic bags are like that: they make life easy for us, and they pollute the environment.

anna 这样对环境有利，可是对上班的人有点儿不利。
zhèyàng duì huánjìng yǒulì kěshì duì shàngbān de rén yǒudiǎnr búlì · That's good for the environment, but a bit awkward for people going to work.

professor sun 是啊，大家提了意见，物业说会改进，还会更换新的垃圾桶，把它们移到门口。
shì a dàjiā tí le yìjiàn wùyè shuō huì gǎijìn hái huì gēnghuàn xīn de lājī tǒng bǎ tāmen yí dào ménkǒu · Yes, people complained, and the office says it'll make changes: new bins, moved to the gate.

anna 太好了，这样就缩短了我们走的路。
tài hǎo le zhèyàng jiù suōduǎn le wǒmen zǒu de lù · Great, that'll shorten the walk for us.

professor sun 当前最重要的是养成好习惯。从长远看，这能改善我们的环境，对孩子们的未来也很重要。
dāngqián zuì zhòngyào de shì yǎngchéng hǎo xíguàn cóng chángyuǎn kàn zhè néng gǎishàn wǒmen de huánjìng duì háizimen de wèilái yě hěn zhòngyào · What matters now is building good habits. In the long run, it'll improve our environment, and it matters for our children's future.

anna 我相信，只要大家一起努力，未来一定是光明的！
wǒ xiāngxìn zhǐyào dàjiā yìqǐ nǔlì wèilái yídìng shì guāngmíng de · I'm sure that if we all pitch in, the future will be bright!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

未
wèi
not yet

固
gù
solid, firm

good to know · 更换 is the formal 换: you'll see it on notices and signs. In a chat, just say 换. 投 means "to throw in, put in": 投进垃圾桶. You'll also meet it in 投票 (to vote) and 投入 (to put in money or effort).

Sorting, recycling, improving: you can now join the green conversation, at home and on your estate. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 65 in the lab

Talk about science, research and inventions, and link two verb phrases with no linking word for cause, contrast or condition.

Science and technology are in the news every day, and in every conversation about the future.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
实验	shíyàn	experiment	我们今天在课上做了一个化学实验。 We did a chemistry experiment in class today.
实验室	shíyànshì	laboratory	他每天在实验室工作十个小时。 He works ten hours a day in the lab.
试验	shìyàn	to test, try out; trial	这种新药还在试验阶段。 This new medicine is still at the trial stage.
化学	huàxué	chemistry	化学是研究物质变化的科学。 Chemistry is the science of how substances change.
物理	wùlǐ	physics	我物理不太好，但是数学还不错。 I'm not great at physics, but I'm all right at maths.
物质	wùzhì	matter, substance; material	水是由什么物质组成的? What is water made of?
成分	chéngfèn	ingredient, component	这种饮料里有什么成分? What's in this drink?
科研	kēyán	(scientific) research	她大学毕业以后一直在做科研工作。 Since graduating, she's been working in research.
研发	yánfā	to develop (R&D)	这家公司正在研发一种新手机。 This company is developing a new phone.
研制	yánzhì	to develop, make (a product)	科学家们研制出了一种新药。 Scientists have developed a new medicine.
调研	diàoyán	to research (in the field)	我们下个月去农村做调研。 Next month we're going to the countryside to do field research.
发明	fāmíng	to invent; invention	纸是中国人发明的。 Paper was invented in China.
创新	chuàngxīn	to innovate; innovation	一个公司要发展，就得{dei3}不断创新。 To grow, a company has to keep innovating.
创造	chuàngzào	to create, make	她在比赛中创造了新的世界纪录。 She set a new world record in the competition.
开发	kāifā	to develop (land, products)	这个地区正在开发旅游资源。 This area is developing its tourist attractions.
设计	shèjì	to design; design	安娜在一家设计公司工作。 Anna works at a design company.
工程	gōngchéng	engineering; (big) project	这座桥是一个很大的工程。 This bridge was a huge engineering project.

引进	yǐnjìn	to bring in (from abroad)	我们公司从国外引进了新技术。 Our company brought in new technology from abroad.
空间	kōngjiān	space, room	这个房间不大，可是空间用得很好。 This room isn't big, but the space is used well.
测	cè	to measure, test	护士给我测了一下体温。 The nurse took my temperature.
测试	cèshì	to test; test	新手机发布前要经过很多次测试。 A new phone goes through a lot of testing before it's launched.
含	hán	to contain; hold in the mouth	这种水果含的糖很少。 This fruit has very little sugar in it.
含有	hányǒu	to contain	牛奶含有丰富的营养。 Milk is rich in nutrients.
标志	biāozhì	sign, symbol; to mark	这个标志的意思是“禁止停车”。 This sign means “No parking”.
性质	xìngzhì	nature, character (of a thing)	这两件事的性质完全不一样。 These two things are completely different in nature.

pattern two verb phrases in a row: cause, contrast or condition

subject **verb phrase 1** **verb phrase 2**

Two verb phrases can sit side by side with no linking word, and the link is understood: cause (他生病住院了 he got ill and went into hospital), contrast (他有钱不花 he has money but won't spend it) or condition (有问题找我 if there's a problem, come to me). Spoken Chinese loves it: short and clear.

他生病住院了，这个实验只好推迟。 **tā shēngbìng zhùyuàn le zhège shíyàn zhǐhǎo tuīchí** He's ill in hospital, so the experiment has to be put off.

你有问题找小明，他就在实验室。 **nǐ yǒu wèntí zhǎo Xiǎomíng tā jiù zài shíyànshì** If you have a question, ask Xiaoming. He's right there in the lab.

她有好的想法不说，大家都不知道。 **tā yǒu hǎo de xiǎngfǎ bù shuō dàjiā dōu bù zhīdào** She has good ideas but won't share them, so nobody knows.

dialogue in the lab

anna 小明，这就是我们公司新的实验室？空间真大！
Xiǎomíng zhè jiùshì wǒmen gōngsī xīn de shíyànshì kōngjiān zhēn dà · Xiaoming, so this is our company's new lab? There's so much space!

xiaoming 对，我们在这儿研发新产品。最近在研制一种能测空气质量的小设备。
duì wǒmen zài zhèr yánfā xīn chǎnpǐn zuìjìn zài yánzhì yì zhǒng néng cè kōngqì zhìliàng de xiǎo shèbèi · Yes, this is where we develop new products. At the moment we're working on a little device that measures air quality.

anna 听起来很有意思。它是怎么工作的？
tīng qǐlai hěn yǒu yìsi tā shì zěnme gōngzuò de · Sounds interesting. How does it work?

xiaoming 空气里含有很多物质。设备能分析它们的成分，然后告诉你空气好不好。
kōngqì lǐ hányǒu hěn duō wùzhì shèbèi néng fēnxī tāmen de chéngfèn ránhòu gàosu nǐ kōngqì hǎo bu hǎo · The air contains lots of substances. The device analyses what's in it and tells you whether the air is good or not.

anna 这要用到很多化学和物理知识吧？
zhè yào yòng dào hěn duō huàxué hé wùlǐ zhīshi ba · That must take a lot of chemistry and physics?

xiaoming 对，这是一个大工程。我们从国外引进了一些技术，自己也做了很多创新。
duì zhè shì yí gè dà gōngchéng wǒmen cóng guó wài yǐnjìn le yìxiē jìshù zìjǐ yě zuò le hěn duō chuàngxīn · Yes, it's a big project. We brought in some technology from abroad, and we've made a lot of innovations of our own.

anna 那测试的结果怎么样？
nà cèshì de jiéguǒ zěnmeyàng · So how did the testing go?

xiaoming 上个月做了一次试验，结果不太好，我们又调整了设计。有问题大家一起想办法。
shàng gè yuè zuò le yí cì shìyàn jiéguǒ bú tài hǎo wǒmen yòu tiáozhěng le shèjì yǒu wèntí dàjiā yìqǐ xiǎng bànfǎ · We ran a trial last month and the results weren't great, so we changed the design. When there's a problem, we all work on it together.

anna 我觉得你们做的不只是一个产品，还是一种发明创造。
wǒ juéde nǐmen zuò de bù zhǐshì yí gè chǎnpǐn hái shì yì zhǒng fāmíng chuàngzào · I think what you're making isn't just a product; it's a real invention.

xiaoming 谢谢！做科研就是这样，失败了再来。下个月我们还要去几个城市做调研。
xièxie zuò kēyán jiùshì zhèyàng shībài le zài lái xià gè yuè wǒmen hái yào qù jǐ gè chéngshì zuò diàoyán · Thanks! That's research: if it fails, you try again. Next month we're off to a few cities to do field research.

good to know · Chinese often leaves out the linking word: 有问题找我 means 如果有问题，就找我. Context does the work. 研发, 研制 and 开发 overlap: 研发 is R&D in general, 研制 is to develop a specific thing (a medicine, a material), 开发 is to develop products, software or land.

Experiments, trials, inventions: you can now talk about how new things are made.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 66 mission: the science fair

Follow a science-fair project from the first idea to the judges: plants, animals, nature, recycling and the lab.

Explaining an experiment is the best test of your science words. Everything from this unit comes together here.

chapter 1 the big idea

little sister 哥哥，我想参加市里的科学比赛，可是还没有好主意。
gēge wǒ xiǎng cānjiā shì lǐ de kēxué bǐsài kěshì hái méiyǒu hǎo zhǔyi · I want to enter the city science fair, but I haven't got a good idea yet.

xiaoming 你可以做一个关于植物的实验，比如看看水分对种子生长的影响。
nǐ kěyǐ zuò yí gè guānyú zhíwù de shíyàn bǐrú kàn kan shuǐfèn duì zhǒngzi shēngzhǎng de yǐngxiǎng · You could do an experiment on plants, like seeing how water affects how seeds grow.

little sister 好主意！我种两组种子，一组每天浇水，一组不浇。
hǎo zhǔyi wǒ zhòng liǎng zǔ zhǒngzi yì zǔ měi tiān jiāo shuǐ yì zǔ bù jiāo · Great idea! I'll plant two sets of seeds: water one every day, and not the other.

anna 还可以加一组用回收的水，就是洗菜以后的水。
hái kěyǐ jiā yì zǔ yòng huíshōu de shuǐ jiùshì xǐ cài yǐhòu de shuǐ · You could add a third set using recycled water, the water left after washing vegetables.

xiaoming 植物的生长跟土地、水和阳光都有关系，三组种子要放在一个地方。
zhíwù de shēngzhǎng gēn tǔdì shuǐ hé yángguāng dōu yǒu guānxì sān zǔ zhǒngzi yào fàng zài yí gè dìfang · How a plant grows depends on the soil, water and sunlight, so the three sets of seeds need to be in the same place.

anna 我小时候在花园里种过玫瑰，还摘过自己种的果实呢。
wǒ xiǎoshíhou zài huāyuán lǐ zhòng guo méigui hái zhāi guo zìjǐ zhòng de guǒshí ne · When I was little I grew roses in the garden, and I even picked fruit I'd grown myself.

little sister 我还要跟两个同学组一个小组，一起做。
wǒ hái yào gēn liǎng gè tóngxué zǔ yí gè xiǎozǔ yìqǐ zuò · And I'll get together with two classmates and form a group to do it together.

little sister 太好了！这样我的实验就由三个部分组成。
tài hǎo le zhèyàng wǒ de shíyàn jiù yóu sān gè bùfen zǔchéng · Brilliant! Then my experiment will have three parts.

xiaoming 有问题找我，我们实验室有很多测水的设备。
yǒu wèntí zhǎo wǒ wǒmen shíyànshì yǒu hěn duō cè shuǐ de shèbèi · If you need anything, ask me. Our lab has loads of equipment for testing water.

chapter 2 at the lab

xiaoming 我们先测一下这三种水的成分。
wǒmen xiān cè yíxià zhè sān zhǒng shuǐ de chéngfèn · First let's test what's in these three kinds of water.

xiaoming 我们公司在研发一种测水的设备，你的实验刚好可以帮我们测试。上个星期我们也做了一次试验。
wǒmen gōngsī zài yánfā yì zhǒng cè shuǐ de shèbèi nǐ de shíyàn gānghǎo kěyǐ bāng wǒmen cèshì shàng gè xīngqī wǒmen yě zuò le yí cì shìyàn · Our company is developing a device that tests water, and your experiment is just the thing to help us test it. We ran a trial last week too.

little sister 这三种水的性质一样吗?
zhè sān zhǒng shuǐ de xìngzhì yíyàng ma · Are these three kinds of water the same in nature?

little sister 洗菜的水含有什么物质？对植物有利吗?
xǐ cài de shuǐ hányǒu shénme wùzhì duì zhíwù yǒulì ma · What does the vegetable water contain? Is it good for plants?

xiaoming 里面有一点儿营养，所以对植物是有利的。不过放久了就不好了。
lǐmiàn yǒu yìdiǎnr yíngyǎng suǒyǐ duì zhíwù shì yǒulì de búguò fàng jiǔ le jiù bù hǎo le · It has a few nutrients in it, so it's good for plants. But if you leave it too long, it goes bad.

little sister 第一组的植物已经长得很高了，第二组的叶子慢慢变成了黄色。
dì yī zǔ de zhíwù yǐjīng zhǎng de hěn gāo le dì èr zǔ de yèzi màn màn biànchéng le huángsè · The first set of plants is already tall, and the leaves of the second set are slowly turning yellow.

little sister 洗菜的水是我每天收集的，我把它们分类放好了。我还把塑料瓶子剪开，种上了种子。
xǐ cài de shuǐ shì wǒ měi tiān shōují de wǒ bǎ tāmen fēnlèi fàng hǎo le wǒ hái bǎ sùliào píngzi jiǎn kāi zhòng shàng le zhǒngzi · I collect the vegetable water every day and sort it. I also cut open some plastic bottles and planted seeds in them.

xiaoming 很好。不过浇水的时间也要调整一下，水太多对植物不利。
hěn hǎo búguò jiāo shuǐ de shíjiān yě yào tiáozhěng yíxià shuǐ tài duō duì zhíwù búlì · Good. But you need to adjust when you water them too: too much water is bad for plants.

xiaoming 这说明没有水，植物就无法生存。
zhè shuōmíng méiyǒu shuǐ zhíwù jiù wúfǎ shēngcún · That shows that without water, plants can't survive.

little sister 可是第三组的叶子刚开始很弱，现在又好起来了！
kěshì dì sān zǔ de yèzi gāng kāishǐ hěn ruò xiànzài yòu hǎo qǐlai le · But the leaves in the third set were weak at first, and now they're getting better!

xiaoming 很好。只要你每天记录下来，坚持下去，结果一定很有意思。
hěn hǎo zhǐyào nǐ měi tiān jìlù xialai jiānchí xiaqu jiéguǒ yídìng hěn yǒu yìsi · Great. As long as you write it all down every day and keep going, the results will be really interesting.

little sister 我长大了也想学化学和物理，发明新东西！
wǒ zhǎng dà le yě xiǎng xué huàxué hé wùlǐ fāmíng xīn dōngxi · When I grow up, I want to study chemistry and physics too, and invent new things!

xiaoming 好啊！这个实验室的空间很大，设计也很新，很多设备是从国外引进的。下个月我们还要去农村调研，开发一个新工程。
hǎo a zhège shíyànshì de kōngjiān hěn dà shèjì yě hěn xīn hěn duō shèbèi shì cóng guó wài yǐnjìn de xià gè yuè wǒmen hái yào qù nóngcūn diàoyán kāifā yí gè xīn gōngchéng · Great! This lab has lots of space and a brand-new design, and much of the equipment was brought in from abroad. Next month we're going out to the countryside for field research, to develop a new project.

chapter 3 the storm

little sister 妈妈！外面刮大风了，我的植物还在阳台上！
māma wàimiàn guā dà fēng le wǒ de zhíwù hái zài yángtái shàng · Mum! There's a gale outside, and my plants are still on the balcony!

ms zhang 你看，空中都是云，风把树都吹断了。
nǐ kàn kōngzhōng dōu shì yún fēng bǎ shù dōu chuī duàn le · Look, the sky is full of cloud, and the wind has snapped trees.

little sister 窗户的玻璃会不会被打破？
chuānghu de bōli huì bu huì bèi dǎpò · Will the window glass get broken?

ms zhang 这种玻璃的厚度够，不会的。不过要把窗户关紧！
zhè zhǒng bōli de hòudù gòu bú huì de búguò yào bǎ chuānghu guān jǐn · This glass is thick enough: it won't. But shut the windows tight!

ms zhang 别急，我们迅速把它们移到屋子里。小心玻璃！
bié jí wǒmen xùnsù bǎ tāmen yí dào wūzi lǐ xiǎoxīn bōli · Don't panic. Let's move them inside, quickly. Mind the glass!

ms zhang 下大雨的时候，要时刻注意安全。
xià dà yǔ de shíhou yào shíkè zhùyì ānquán · When it's pouring, always keep safety in mind.

xiaoming 妈妈，我回来了！我刚才在地铁站被困了一个小时，雨水还从上面漏下来。
māma wǒ huílái le wǒ gāngcái zài dìtiě zhàn bèi kùn le yí gè xiǎoshí yǔshuǐ hái cóng shàngmiàn lòu xialai · Mum, I'm back! I was stuck at the metro station for an hour just now, with rain leaking in from above.

little sister 这种暴雨是怎么形成的？
zhè zhǒng bàoyǔ shì zěnme xíngchéng de · How do storms like this form?

xiaoming 热空气遇到冷空气，就会形成暴雨，这是一种规律。
rè kōngqì yùdào lěng kōngqì jiù huì xíngchéng bàoyǔ zhè shì yì zhǒng guīlǜ · When hot air meets cold air, a storm forms: it's a natural pattern.

ms zhang 暴雨对植物有很大的危害，也会损害房子。
bàoyǔ duì zhíwù yǒu hěn dà de wēihài yě huì sǔnhài fángzi · Storms do a lot of harm to plants, and they damage houses too.

little sister 糟糕，第二组的盒子被风给吹坏了。
zāogāo dì èr zǔ de hézi bèi fēng gěi chuī huài le · Oh no, the wind has wrecked the box for the second set.

ms zhang 没关系，植物没有受伤。我们用木头做一个新的，把它固定好。
méi guānxi zhíwù méiyǒu shòushāng wǒmen yòng mùtou zuò yí gè xīn de bǎ tā gùdìng hǎo · Never mind, the plants aren't hurt. We'll make a new one out of wood and fix it in place properly.

little sister 大自然有着这么强大的力量，我今天真的体会到了。
dàzìrán yǒuzhe zhème qiángdà de lìliàng wǒ jīntiān zhēn de tǐhuì dào le · Nature really is that powerful. I've felt it today.

ms zhang 是啊。给植物带来生命的是它，带来危险的也是它。
shì a gěi zhíwù dài lái shēngmìng de shì tā dài lái wēixiǎn de yě shì tā · Yes. It's what gives plants life, and it's what puts them in danger.

little sister 我把三组种子隔开了，为的是不让它们互相影响。
wǒ bǎ sān zǔ zhǒngzi gé kāi le wèi de shì bú ràng tāmen hùxiāng yǐngxiǎng · I keep the three sets of seeds apart so they don't affect each other.

little sister 风停了，我的心也终于静下来了。
fēng tíng le wǒ de xīn yě zhōngyú jìng xialai le · The wind has dropped, and I've finally calmed down too.

chapter 4 in front of the judges

professor sun 同学，你好。今天由我来评你们的作品。请介绍一下你的实验。
tóngxué nǐhǎo jīntiān yóu wǒ lái píng nǐmen de zuòpǐn qǐng jièshào yíxià nǐ de shíyàn · Hello. I'm judging the projects today. Please tell me about your experiment.

little sister 孙教授好！我的实验由三组种子组成，研究水对植物生长的影响。
Sūnjiàoshòu hǎo wǒ de shíyàn yóu sān zǔ zhǒngzi zǔchéng yánjiū shuǐ duì zhíwù shēngzhǎng de yǐngxiǎng · Hello, Professor Sun! My experiment uses three sets of seeds and looks at how water affects plant growth.

little sister 今天早上起来，云都消失了，城市很快恢复了正常。我的植物也没事！
jīntiān zǎoshang qǐlái yún dōu xiāoshī le chéngshì hěn kuài huīfù le zhèngcháng wǒ de zhíwù yě méishì · When I got up this morning the clouds had all gone, and the city was quickly back to normal. My plants are fine too!

professor sun 第三组用的是什么水？
dì sān zǔ yòng de shì shénme shuǐ · What water did you use for the third set?

little sister 是洗菜的水。结果说明，回收的水也能让植物长得很好。
shì xǐ cài de shuǐ jiéguǒ shuōmíng huíshōu de shuǐ yě néng ràng zhíwù zhǎng de hěn hǎo · Water from washing vegetables. The results show that recycled water can also help plants grow well.

professor sun 你的实验较上一届的作品更有创新。
nǐ de shíyàn jiào shàng yí jiè de zuòpǐn gèng yǒu chuàngxīn · Your experiment is more innovative than last year's entries.

professor sun 很有创新！水资源是有限的，这个发现对我们的生活很有用。
hěn yǒu chuàngxīn shuǐ zīyuán shì yǒuxiàn de zhège fāxiàn duì wǒmen de shēnghuó hěn yǒuyòng · Very innovative! Water is a limited resource, so this finding is really useful in daily life.

professor sun 水的来源有很多，雨水是最重要的一种。当前城市的水不够用，从长远看，回收水能改善我们的环境。这个发现有着重大的意义。
shuǐ de láiyuán yǒu hěn duō yǔshuǐ shì zuì zhòngyào de yì zhǒng dāngqián chéngshì de shuǐ búgòu yòng cóng chángyuǎn kàn huíshōu shuǐ néng gǎishàn wǒmen de huánjìng zhège fāxiàn yǒuzhe zhòngdà de yìyì · Water comes from many sources, and rain is the most important. Cities are short of water right now; in the long run, recycled water can improve our environment. This finding is really significant.

little sister 原计划我想用雪水，可是北京的雪早就化了。
yuán jìhuà wǒ xiǎng yòng xuě shuǐ kěshì Běijīng de xuě zǎo jiù huà le · My original plan was to use snow water, but Beijing's snow melted long ago.

professor sun 你的方法还可以改进，比如更换一种优质的种子，或者缩短测试的时间。这一带的河流和湖里的水，也可以这样研究。
nǐ de fāngfǎ hái kěyǐ gǎijìn bǐrú gēnghuàn yì zhǒng yōuzhì de zhǒngzi huòzhě suōduǎn cèshì de shíjiān zhè yídài de héliú hé hú lǐ de shuǐ yě kěyǐ zhèyàng yánjiū · Your method could still be improved: for example, use a higher-quality seed, or shorten the test. You could study the water in the rivers and lakes round here the same way.

professor sun 中国的竹子主要分布在南方，沙漠里的植物都很会存水。地球上陆地的面积不大，大部分是海水，能喝的水很少，所以更珍贵。
Zhōngguó de zhúzi zhǔyào fēnbù zài nánfāng shāmò lǐ de zhíwù dōu hěn huì cún shuǐ dìqiú shàng lùdì de miànjī bú dà dà bùfen shì hǎi shuǐ néng hē de shuǐ hěn shǎo suǒyǐ gèng zhēnguì · China's bamboo grows mainly in the south, and desert plants are very good at storing water. Land covers only a small part of the Earth; most of it is sea, and there's very little water we can drink, which makes it all the more precious.

little sister 这次实验加深了我对环保的了解。我会把记录都保留下来。
zhè cì shíyàn jiāshēn le wǒ duì huánbǎo de liǎojiě wǒ huì bǎ jìlù dōu bǎoliú xialai · This experiment has deepened my understanding of protecting the environment. I'll keep all my records.

professor sun 你看，很多人都围过来看你的作品呢。你们这一代人一定能创造更好的未来。
nǐ kàn hěn duō rén dōu wéi guolai kàn nǐ de zuòpǐn ne nǐmen zhè yídài rén yídìng néng chuàngzào gèng hǎo de wèilái · Look, lots of people are crowding round to see your project. Your generation is sure to create a better future.

little sister 谢谢！为了这个实验，我每天都很早起床，有时候累得不得了。
xièxie wèile zhège shíyàn wǒ měi tiān dōu hěn zǎo qǐchuáng yǒu shíhou lèi de bùdéliǎo · Thank you! For this experiment I got up early every day, and sometimes I was completely exhausted.

professor sun 做科研就是要这样。你的未来一定很光明！
zuò kēyán jiùshì yào zhèyàng nǐ de wèilái yídìng hěn guāngmíng · That's what science takes. You have a bright future ahead of you!

chapter 5 a prize day at the zoo

little sister 我头一次拿奖，奖励居然是动物园的门票！
wǒ tóu yí cì ná jiǎng jiǎnglì jūrán shì dòngwùyuán de ménpiào · The first prize I've ever won, and it's tickets to the zoo!

anna 门口的牌子上写着动物园的提醒，你读一读吧。
ménkǒu de páizi shàng xiě zhe dòngwùyuán de tíxǐng nǐ dú yi du ba · The sign at the entrance has the zoo's reminders: read them out.

little sister “本园有两百多种动物，有大象、猴子、蛇，还有各种鸟和昆虫。请大家爱护动物，不要喂它们，也不要用手去碰。大型动物在北边，小型动物和宠物在南边。每天下午三点，大家可以来看大象吃东西。夏天虫子多，天气热，请带好水，注意休息。”
běn yuán yǒu liǎngbǎi duō zhǒng dòngwù yǒu dàxiàng hóuzi shé hái yǒu gèzhǒng niǎo hé kūnchóng qǐng dàjiā àihù dòngwù búyào wèi tāmen yě búyào yòng shǒu qù pèng dàxíng dòngwù zài běi biān xiǎoxíng dòngwù hé chǒngwù zài nán biān měi tiān xiàwǔ sān diǎn dàjiā kě yǐlái kàn dàxiàng chī dōngxi xiàtiān chóngzi duō tiānqì rè qǐng dài hǎo shuǐ zhùyì xiūxi · “The zoo has over two hundred kinds of animals: elephants, monkeys, snakes, and all kinds of birds and insects. Please take care of the animals: don't feed them, and don't touch them. Large animals are in the north, small animals and pets in the south. Every afternoon at three, come and watch the elephants eat. In summer there are lots of bugs and it's hot, so bring water and take breaks.”

anna 你看那头大象，又高大又安静。
nǐ kàn nà tóu dàxiàng yòu gāodà yòu ānjìng · Look at that elephant: so big, and so calm.

little sister 猴子在树上追来追去，把尾巴挂在树上，太好玩了！
hóuzi zài shù shàng zhuī lái zhuī qù bǎ wěiba guà zài shù shàng tài hǎowán le · The monkeys are chasing each other round the trees and hanging by their tails: so funny!

xiaoming 那边有很多蝴蝶，翅膀五颜六色的。
nàbiān yǒu hěn duō húdié chìbǎng wǔyán liùsè de · There are lots of butterflies over there, with wings of every colour.

little sister 我最怕蛇，它们太丑了。
wǒ zuì pà shé tāmen tài chǒu le · I'm most scared of the snakes: they're so ugly.

anna 它们也是生物，我们都要爱护它们。不过别靠得太近！
tāmen yě shì shēngwù wǒmen dōu yào àihù tāmen búguò bié kào de tài jìn · They're living things too, and we should take care of them all. But don't get too close!

ms zhang 你看那只兔子，毛多白啊！旁边还有几只鸭子和一头小猪。
nǐ kàn nà zhī tùzi máo duō bái a pángbiān hái yǒu jǐ zhī yāzi hé yì tóu xiǎo zhū · Look at that rabbit: what white fur! And there are some ducks and a piglet next to it.

xiaoming 大白要是在这儿，一定会去追鸭子。
Dàbái yàoshi zài zhèr yídìng huì qù zhuī yāzi · If Dabai were here, he'd definitely chase the ducks.

little sister 我想养一只小猪当宠物！
wǒ xiǎng yǎng yì zhī xiǎo zhū dāng chǒngwù · I want a piglet as a pet!

ms zhang 不行！家里有大白就够了。
bùxíng jiā lǐ yǒu Dàbái jiù gòu le · No way! Dabai is quite enough.

Seeds, storms and the lab: you can now explain an experiment in Chinese, from the idea to the result.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 67 my phone

Talk about your phone, apps and being online, and say “there’s no need” with 用不着.

Your phone runs daily life in China: chats, payments, maps and apps all need these words.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
充电	chōngdiàn	to charge (a battery)	我的手机没电了，得{dei3}充电。 My phone’s dead; I need to charge it.
电池	diànchí	battery	这个手机的电池能用两天。 This phone’s battery lasts two days.
屏幕	píngmù	screen	手机屏幕摔破了，看不清楚。 My phone screen is cracked, and I can’t see properly.
软件	ruǎnjiàn	software; app	这个软件可以帮你学汉字。 This app can help you learn characters.
下载	xiàzài	to download	你可以在网上下载这本书。 You can download the book online.
上传	shàngchuán	to upload	她把照片上传到了网上。 She uploaded the photos online.
删	shān	to delete (spoken)	这张照片不好看，删了吧。 This photo’s not nice. Delete it.
删除	shānchú	to delete	不小心删除了重要的文件，怎么办? I deleted an important file by mistake. What do I do?
设置	shèzhì	to set up; settings	你可以在设置里把字改大一点儿。 You can make the text bigger in the settings.
登录	dēnglù	to log in	请先输入密码登录。 Please enter your password to log in first.
浏览	liúlǎn	to browse	我每天早上都会浏览一下新闻。 Every morning I have a quick look through the news.
搜	sōu	to search (spoken)	这个词我不认识，搜一下吧。 I don’t know this word. Let’s look it up.
搜索	sōusuǒ	to search	我在网上搜索了很多资料。 I searched for a lot of information online.
在线	zàixiàn	online	这门课可以在线学习。 You can take this course online.
网络	wǎngluò	network; the internet	这里的网络不太好，视频打不开。 The connection here isn’t great, so the video won’t load.
用户	yònghù	user	这个软件有一亿多用户。 This app has over a hundred million users.
点赞	diǎnzàn	to like (a post)	我发的照片有一百多个人点赞。 More than a hundred people liked the photo I posted.

共享	gòngxiǎng	to share (use together)	我们可以共享这个文件。 We can share this file.
互动	hùdòng	to interact	主持人常常跟观众互动。 The host often interacts with the audience.
平台	píngtái	platform	很多年轻人在网上平台卖东西。 Lots of young people sell things on online platforms.
更新	gēngxīn	to update	这个软件需要更新了。 This app needs updating.
输入	shūrù	to input, type in	请输入你的手机号码。 Please enter your mobile number.
键	jiàn	key (on a keyboard)	按这个键就可以关机。 Press this key to switch it off.
键盘	jiànpán	keyboard	这个键盘太小了，打字很不方便。 This keyboard is too small; typing is really awkward.
用不着	yòngbuzháo	there's no need to	用不着这么急，我们时间还很多。 There's no need to rush. We've got plenty of time.

pattern 用不着: there's no need to

用不着 **verb phrase / noun**

用不着 + verb means "there's no need to": 用不着担心. It's more spoken than 不必. It can also take a noun: 用不着这么多钱 you don't need this much money. The opposite, 用得着, means "it's needed, it's worth it".

用不着担心，网络很快就会恢复。 **yòngbuzháo dānxīn wǎngluò hěn kuài jiù huì huīfù** No need to worry; the connection will be back soon.

这么近，用不着打车，走路就行。 **zhème jìn yòngbuzháo dǎchē zǒulù jiù xíng** It's so close there's no need for a taxi. We can walk.

你用不着输入密码，手机认识你的脸。 **nǐ yòngbuzháo shūrù mìmǎ shǒujī rènshi nǐ de liǎn** You don't need to type a password; your phone knows your face.

dialogue the phone that keeps dying

anna 小明，我的手机又没电了，电池越来越不行了。
Xiǎomíng wǒ de shǒujī yòu méi diàn le diànchí yuè lái yuè bùxíng le · Xiaoming, my phone's dead again. The battery is getting worse and worse.

xiaoming 让我看看。你在设置里看看，哪个软件用电最多。
ràng wǒ kàn kan nǐ zài shèzhì lǐ kàn kan nǎge ruǎnjiàn yòng diàn zuì duō · Let me see. Look in the settings to see which app uses the most power.

anna 我看看……是一个视频平台的软件，我每天都在上面浏览视频。
wǒ kàn kan shì yí gè shìpín píngtái de ruǎnjiàn wǒ měi tiān dōu zài shàngmiàn liúlǎn shìpín · Let's see... it's a video platform. I browse videos on it every day.

xiaoming 这就是原因。你可以把它删了，用不着天天看。
zhè jiùshì yuányīn nǐ kěyǐ bǎ tā shān le yòngbuzháo tiān tiān kàn · That's why. You could delete it; there's no need to watch every day.

anna 可是我还要在上面跟网友互动，很多用户都关注我。
kěshì wǒ hái yào zài shàngmiàn gēn wǎngyǒu hùdòng hěn duō yònghù dōu guānzhù wǒ · But I chat with people on there, and lots of users follow me.

xiaoming 那就别删除，更新一下就好了。
nà jiù bié shānchú gēngxīn yíxià jiù hǎo le · Then don't delete it. Just update it.

anna 好。还有，我的屏幕太小，键盘上的键也太小，输入很慢。
hǎo hái yǒu wǒ de píngmù tài xiǎo jiànpán shàng de jiàn yě tài xiǎo shūrù hěn màn · OK. Also, my screen is too small, and so are the keys on the keyboard, so typing is slow.

xiaoming 你可以用语音输入，或者搜一下有没有大一点儿的键盘软件。
nǐ kěyǐ yòng yǔyīn shūrù huòzhě sōu yíxià yǒu méiyǒu dà yìdiǎnr de jiànpán ruǎnjiàn · You could use voice input, or look for an app with a bigger keyboard.

anna 对了，怎么登录这个共享文件？林经理让我在线看。
duì le zěnme dēnglù zhège gòngxiǎng wénjiàn Línjīnglǐ ràng wǒ zàixiàn kàn · Oh, and how do I log in to this shared file? Manager Lin wants me to look at it online.

xiaoming 点这里，输入公司的账号就行。网络真方便：方便的是它，让人离不开手机的也是它。
diǎn zhèlǐ shūrù gōngsī de zhànghào jiù xíng wǎngluò zhēn fāngbiàn fāngbiàn de shì tā ràng rén lí bu kāi shǒujī de yě shì tā · Tap here and enter the company account. The internet is so convenient: it makes life easy, and it's why we can't put our phones down.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

屏
píng
screen
(panel)

删
shān
to delete
(spoken)

good to know · Many tech verbs have a short spoken form: 删 for 删除 (delete), 搜 for 搜索 (search). 下载 download and 上传 upload are opposites: 下 down, 上 up. 电 is also a verb, "to give an electric shock": 我被电了一下 I got a little shock. Careful with wet hands!

Charge, update, log in, share: your phone life now works in Chinese too.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 68 smart machines

Talk about computers, smart machines and robots, and say what may or mustn't be done with V得 / V不得.

Smart systems and robots are arriving in offices, shops and homes, and everyone has an opinion about them.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
计算机	jìsuànjī	computer	他大学学的是计算机。 He studied computer science at university.
鼠标	shǔbiāo	(computer) mouse	我的鼠标坏了，借我用一下你的吧。 My mouse is broken. Can I borrow yours?
硬件	yìngjiàn	hardware	电脑的硬件很好，可是软件太旧了。 The computer's hardware is good, but the software is too old.
程序	chéngxù	program; procedure	这个程序是小明写的。 Xiaoming wrote this program.
系统	xìtǒng	system	公司的系统出了问题，大家都不能上网。 The company's system went down, and nobody could get online.
数据	shùjù	data	这些数据说明，用户越来越多了。 These figures show that the number of users keeps growing.
功能	gōngnéng	function, feature	这个手机的功能很多。 This phone has lots of features.
操作	cāozuò	to operate, use	这台机器操作起来很简单。 This machine is very easy to operate.
智能	zhìnéng	smart, intelligent	现在很多家电都很智能。 Lots of home appliances are smart these days.
自动	zìdòng	automatic(ally)	这个门是自动的，人一走近就开了。 This door is automatic; it opens as soon as you walk up to it.
机器	jīqì	machine	工厂里的很多工作都由机器来做。 A lot of the work in factories is done by machines.
机器人	jīqìrén	robot	这家饭馆用机器人送菜。 This restaurant uses robots to bring the food.
人工	réngōng	artificial; manual labour	人工智能发展得非常快。 Artificial intelligence is developing very fast.
电动	diàndòng	electric (powered)	这把电动牙刷很好用。 This electric toothbrush works really well.
线路	xiànlù	circuit, wiring; route	家里的线路太旧了，需要修理。 The wiring at home is too old and needs fixing.
接收	jiēshōu	to receive (a signal)	山里接收不到手机信号。 You can't get a phone signal in the mountains.

应用	yìngyòng	to apply, use; application	这种新技术已经应用到了生活中。 This new technology is already being used in daily life.
新型	xīnxíng	new type of	这是一种新型的电动汽车。 This is a new kind of electric car.
全新	quánxīn	brand-new	这台电脑是全新的，还没用过{guo}。 This computer is brand-new; it's never been used.
高科技	gāokējì	high tech	这个城市有很多高科技公司。 This city has lots of high-tech companies.
先进	xiānjìn	advanced	这家医院有很多先进的设备。 This hospital has a lot of advanced equipment.
灵活	línghuó	flexible, nimble	这个机器人的手非常灵活。 This robot's hands are very nimble.
可靠	kěkào	reliable	这个消息可靠吗? Is this news reliable?
便利	biànlì	convenient	小区旁边就有地铁站，交通非常便利。 There's a metro station right by the estate, so getting around is very easy.
显示	xiǎnshì	to show, display	屏幕上显示“密码错误”。 The screen says “Wrong password”.

pattern V得 / V不得: may be done, mustn't be done

verb | 得 / 不得

V不得 means it mustn't be done, because it would be harmful or wrong: 这种药吃不得 this medicine isn't safe to take, 学语言急不得 you can't rush learning a language. V得 means it may be done, and is mostly heard in questions: 这个吃得吗?

这个键按不得，一按系统就关了。 **zhège jiàn àn bu de yí àn xìtǒng jiù guān le** Don't press this key: press it and the system shuts down.

学汉语急不得，要一天一天地坚持。 **xué Hànyǔ jí bu de yào yì tiān yì tiān de jiānchí** You can't rush learning Chinese; keep at it day by day.

这些数据删不得，都很重要。 **zhèxiē shùjù shān bu de dōu hěn zhòngyào** You mustn't delete this data. It's all important.

dialogue the smart office

manager lin 安娜，公司买了一个新的智能系统，下周开始用。
Ānnà gōngsī mǎi le yí gè xīn de zhìnéng xìtǒng xià zhōu kāishǐ yòng · Anna, the company has bought a new smart system. We start using it next week.

anna 太好了！以前的计算机太旧了，硬件和软件都不行。
tài hǎo le yǐqián de jìsuànjī tài jiù le yìngjiàn hé ruǎnjiàn dōu bùxíng · Great! The old computers were ancient: neither the hardware nor the software was any good.

manager lin 新系统是全新的，用的都是高科技。打印、开灯、开空调，都是自动的。
xīn xìtǒng shì quánxīn de yòng de dōu shì gāokējì dǎyìn kāi dēng kāi kōngtiáo dōu shì zìdòng de · The new system is brand-new and all high-tech. Printing, lights, air conditioning: it's all automatic.

anna 听说还有一个机器人？
tīngshuō hái yǒu yí gè jīqìrén · I hear there's a robot too?

manager lin 对，它能接收我们的语音，帮我们送文件、拿快递。
duì tā néng jiēshōu wǒmen de yǔyīn bāng wǒmen sòng wénjiàn ná kuàidì · Yes. It understands our voice commands and delivers documents and collects parcels for us.

anna 它的手灵活吗？会不会把东西弄坏？
tā de shǒu línghuó ma huì bu huì bǎ dōngxi nòng huài · Are its hands nimble? Won't it break things?

manager lin 很灵活，也很可靠。不过它是电动的，晚上要充电，充电的线路碰不得。
hěn línghuó yě hěn kěkào búguò tā shì diàndòng de wǎnshang yào chōngdiàn chōngdiàn de xiànlù pèng bu de · Very nimble, and reliable. But it's electric and charges at night, so don't touch the charging cables.

anna 明白。那我们还需要鼠标吗？
míngbai nà wǒmen hái xūyào shǔbiāo ma · Got it. So do we still need a mouse?

manager lin 需要。人工操作还是很重要，有些程序机器做不了。
xūyào réngōng cāozuò háishi hěn zhòngyào yǒuxiē chéngxù jīqì zuò bù le · Yes. Doing things by hand still matters; there are some programs a machine can't run by itself.

anna 好。新技术应用到工作中，以后就更便利了。屏幕上显示的数据也会更清楚吧？
hǎo xīn jìshù yìngyòng dào gōngzuò zhōng yǐhòu jiù gèng biànlì le píngmù shàng xiǎnshì de shùjù yě huì gèng qīngchu ba · Right. With new tech in our work, things will be much easier. And the data on screen will be clearer too, I suppose?

write it trace the grey, then write your own

鼠
shǔ
mouse, rat



统
tǒng
to unite



good to know · V不得 vs V不了: 吃不得 you mustn't eat it (it would be bad for you); 吃不了 you can't eat it (too much, or not able). 计算机 is the formal word (计算机专业 computer science); in daily speech it's 电脑.

Hardware, software, robots: you can now talk about the machines changing our lives.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 69 what is it for?

Compare and classify things, say what something has or is for, and conclude with X来X去，还是/就是....

Choosing between options, at work or in a shop, is where you need to compare, classify and conclude.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
类	lèi	kind, type; class	这类问题很常见。 This kind of problem is very common.
类似	lèisì	similar	我以前也遇到过{guo}类似|的情况。 I've come across something similar before.
类型	lèixíng	type, kind	你喜欢什么类型的电影? What kind of films do you like?
相似	xiāngsì	alike, similar	这两个字长{zhang3}得很相似。 These two characters look very alike.
同一	tóngyī	the same	我们是同一年出生的。 We were born in the same year.
事物	shìwù	things, objects	孩子们对新事物很感兴趣。 Children are very curious about new things.
具有	jùyǒu	to have, possess	这件事具有重大的意义。 This is of great significance.
拥有	yōngyǒu	to own, have	这家公司拥有很多优秀的人才。 This company has lots of excellent people.
占	zhàn	to take up, account for	女性占了我们公司员工的一半。 Women make up half of our company's staff.
在于	zàiyú	to lie in, depend on	问题不在于钱，而在于时间。 The problem isn't money; it's time.
在内	zàinèi	included	包括我在内，一共有十个人。 There are ten of us, me included.
意味着	yìwèizhe	to mean, signify	上大学意味着新的开始。 Going to university means a new start.
有助于	yǒuzhùyú	to help, contribute to	多听多说有助于学好外语。 Listening and speaking a lot helps you learn a foreign language.
无关	wúguān	to have nothing to do with	这件事跟我无关。 This has nothing to do with me.
原有	yuányǒu	original, existing	我们在原有|的基础上做了一些改进。 We made some improvements on what was there before.
整体	zhěngtǐ	the whole; as a whole	从整体上看，这次活动很成功。 On the whole, the event was a great success.
双方	shuāngfāng	both sides	双方都同意了这个方案。 Both sides agreed to the plan.

围绕	wéirào	to revolve around; centre on	今天的讨论围绕环保问题进行。 Today's discussion centres on environmental issues.
处于	chǔyú	to be in (a state, a position)	这个项目还处于开始阶段。 This project is still at an early stage.
处	chǔ	to get along; to deal with	他们俩处{chu3}得很好。 The two of them get on really well.
状况	zhuàngkuàng	condition, situation	爷爷的身体状况越来越好了。 Grandpa's health keeps getting better.
状态	zhuàngtài	state, condition	考试前，你要保持好的状态。 Before an exam, keep yourself in good shape.
上下	shàngxià	top and bottom; about	这个机器人高一米上下。 This robot is about a metre tall.
如	rú	such as; like; if	很多水果，如苹果、香蕉，都含有很多营养。 Many fruits, such as apples and bananas, are full of nutrients.
如同	rútóng	like, as if	他对我如同亲人一样。 He treats me like family.

pattern x来x去，还是/就是……: however much you x, it's still …

X来X去 **，还是 / 就是 / 都是** **the same result**

X来X去，还是/就是… says that however much you do X, it comes back to the same thing: 想来想去，还是这个办法最好. It's for conclusions after lots of talking or thinking. On day 55, 走来走去 was just back and forth; here it leads to a result.

选来选去，双方最后还是同意了原来的方案。 **xuǎn lái xuǎn qù shuāngfāng zuìhòu háishi tóngyì le yuánlái de fāngàn** After going back and forth, both sides agreed to the original plan in the end.

说来说去，会议都是围绕同一个问题。 **shuō lái shuō qù huìyì dōu shì wéirào tóngyī gè wèntí** However long the meeting went on, it kept coming back to the same issue.

看来看去，这两类事物还是有很大的区别。 **kàn lái kàn qù zhè liǎng lèi shìwù háishi yǒu hěn dà de qūbié** However you look at them, these two kinds of thing are still very different.

dialogue choosing a computer

anna 小明，我想买一台新电脑，可是看来看去，都差不多。
Xiǎomíng wǒ xiǎng mǎi yì tái xīn diànnǎo kěshì kàn lái kàn qù dōu chàbuduō · Xiaoming, I want a new computer, but however much I look, they all seem the same.

xiaoming 你买电脑主要是为了什么？需要不同，类型也不一样。
nǐ mǎi diànnǎo zhǔyào shì wèile shénme xūyào bù tóng lèixíng yě bù yíyàng · What do you mainly need it for? Different needs, different types.

anna 我做设计，所以屏幕要大，速度要快。
wǒ zuò shèjì suǒyǐ píngmù yào dà sùdù yào kuài · I do design, so I need a big screen and a fast machine.

xiaoming 那这两台很类似，都具有这些特点。
nà zhè liǎng tái hěn lèisì dōu jùyǒu zhèxiē tèdiǎn · Then these two are very similar; they both have those features.

anna 那区别在哪儿?
nà qūbié zài nǎr · So what's the difference?

xiaoming 区别在于这台拥有更大的空间，可以存很多东西。
qūbié zàiyú zhè tái yōngyǒu gèng dà de kōngjiān kěyǐ cún hěn duō dōngxi · The difference is that this one has more storage, so you can keep lots of files.

anna 我原有的电脑状况不太好，照片还占了一大半空间。
wǒ yuán yǒu de diànnǎo zhuàngkuàng bú tài hǎo zhàopiàn hái zhàn le yí dà bàn kōngjiān · My old computer isn't in great shape, and photos take up more than half its space.

xiaoming 那就买这台吧。从整体上看，它的质量也更好。
nà jiù mǎi zhè tái ba cóng zhěngtǐ shàng kàn tā de zhìliàng yě gèng hǎo · Then get this one. On the whole, it's better quality too.

anna 可是贵了一千块上下。买好的意味着要多花钱。
kěshì guì le yìqiān kuài shàngxià mǎi hǎo de yìwèizhe yào duō huā qián · But it's about a thousand yuan more. A better one means spending more.

xiaoming 说来说去，还是价格的问题。不过好电脑有助于提高你的工作效率。
shuō lái shuō qù háishi jiàgé de wèntí búguò hǎo diànnǎo yǒuzhùyú tígāo nǐ de gōngzuò xiàolǜ · It always comes back to the price. But a good computer will help you work more efficiently.

good to know · Pair X来X去 with 还是 (in the end, still), 就是 (it's just…) or 都是 (it's all…). 具有 and 拥有 are formal versions of 有: 具有 for qualities (具有特点, 具有意义), 拥有 for things you own (拥有用户, 拥有房子).

Kinds, likenesses, differences and conclusions: you can now weigh up a choice out loud in Chinese. Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 70 shopping online

Shop online: prices, offers, totals and customer service, and say how far something goes with 得 + a little sentence.

Online shopping is a national pastime in China, and the big sales are events in themselves.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
电商	diànshāng	e-commerce	现在很多人都在电商平台买东西。 Lots of people shop on e-commerce platforms now.
二维码	èrwéimǎ	QR code	扫这个二维码就可以付钱。 Scan this QR code to pay.
促销	cùxiāo	to promote sales; on offer	这个周末超市有促销活动。 The supermarket has special offers this weekend.
消费者	xiāofèizhě	consumer	消费者越来越重视质量。 Consumers care more and more about quality.
花费	huāfèi	to spend; cost	装修这套房子花费了很多钱。 Doing up this flat cost a lot of money.
客服	kèfú	customer service	东西有问题可以找客服。 If something's wrong with your order, contact customer service.
涨价	zhǎngjià	to go up in price	最近水果又涨价了。 Fruit has gone up again recently.
涨	zhǎng	to rise, go up	房租涨了不少。 The rent has gone up quite a bit.
用途	yòngtú	use, purpose	这种塑料的用途很广。 This plastic has a wide range of uses.
实用	shíyòng	practical, useful	这个包不太好看，可是很实用。 This bag isn't very pretty, but it's really practical.
统计	tǒngjì	to count up; statistics	据统计，网上购物的人越来越多。 According to the figures, more and more people shop online.
计算	jìsuàn	to calculate	请你计算一下一共多少钱。 Could you work out how much it is altogether?
总共	zǒnggòng	in total	我们总共买了五件衣服。 We bought five items of clothing in all.
总数	zǒngshù	total number	今年的游客总数超过了一百万。 The total number of visitors this year passed one million.
随意	suíyì	as you like; casual(ly)	这里的东西可以随意拿，不要钱。 Help yourself to anything here; it's free.
特有	tèyǒu	unique to, characteristic of	这是我们这里特有的水果。 This fruit is only found round here.

完善	wánshàn	complete, well-developed; to improve	这个电商平台的服务很完善。 This e-commerce platform's service is very thorough.
唯一	wéiyī	only, sole	这是唯一的办法。 This is the only way.
无效	wúxiào	invalid, no longer valid	你的旧密码已经无效了。 Your old password is no longer valid.
有力	yǒulì	powerful, strong	这些数据是最有力的证据。 These figures are the strongest evidence.
最佳	zuìjiā	best	春天是去那儿旅游的最佳时间。 Spring is the best time to visit.

pattern verb / adjective + 得 + a little sentence: so … that someone …

verb / adjective | **得** | **someone + what happens**

After 得 you can put a whole little sentence, with its own subject, to show how far something goes: 便宜得大家都抢着买 so cheap that everyone fights to buy it, 累得我腿都疼了 so tiring my legs ache. It's livelier than 很 + adjective.

他累得腿都疼了。 **tā lèi de tuǐ dōu téng le** He was so tired his legs ached.

客服的态度好得让我很感动。 **kèfú de tàidù hǎo de ràng wǒ hěn gǎndòng** The customer service was so good I was really touched.

这首歌好听得大家都跟着唱。 **zhè shǒu gē hǎotīng de dàjiā dōu gēn zhe chàng** The song is so catchy that everyone sings along.

dialogue the big sale

little sister 安娜，今天电商平台有大促销，好多东西都便宜一半！
Ānnà jīntiān diànshāng píngtái yǒu dà cùxiāo hǎoduō dōngxi dōu piányi yíbàn · Anna, there's a huge sale on the shopping platforms today. Loads of things are half price!

anna 真的？我想买一个实用的包。
zhēn de wǒ xiǎng mǎi yí gè shíyòng de bāo · Really? I want a practical bag.

little sister 你看这个，用途很多，上班、旅游都能用。
nǐ kàn zhège yòngtú hěn duō shàngbān lǚyóu dōu néng yòng · Look at this one. You can use it for anything: work, travel.

anna 不错。可是这个价格好像比上个月涨了。
búcuò kěshì zhège jiàgé hǎoxiàng bǐ shàng gè yuè zhǎng le · Nice. But the price seems to have gone up since last month.

little sister 有的商家先涨价，再打折。消费者一定要小心。
yǒude shāngjiā xiān zhǎngjià zài dǎzhé xiāofèizhě yídìng yào xiǎoxīn · Some sellers put prices up first and then give a discount. Shoppers have to be careful.

anna 我问问客服……客服说今天买是最佳时间，还送一个小礼物。
wǒ wèn wen kèfú kèfú shuō jīntiān mǎi shì zuìjiā shíjiān hái sòng yí gè xiǎo lǐwù · I'll ask customer service… they say today is the best time to buy, and there's a free gift too.

little sister 我计算了一下，我们买的东西总共要花费五百多块。
wǒ jìsuàn le yíxià wǒmen mǎi de dōngxi zǒnggòng yào huāfèi wǔbǎi duō kuài · I've added it up: everything we're buying comes to over five hundred yuan.

anna 这么多！我有一张会员卡，好像已经无效了。
zhème duō wǒ yǒu yì zhāng huìyuán kǎ hǎoxiàng yǐjīng wúxiào le · That much! I've got a membership card, but I think it's expired.

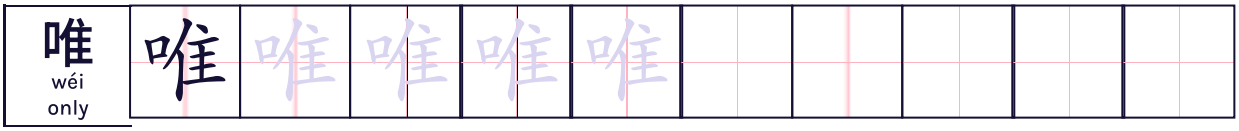
little sister 没关系，这家平台的服务很完善，用新的二维码就行。
méi guānxi zhè jiā píngtái de fúwù hěn wánshàn yòng xīn de èrwéimǎ jiù xíng · Never mind. This platform's service is really good; just use the new QR code.

anna 网上买东西方便得我都不想去商场了！
wǎngshang mǎi dōngxi fāngbiàn de wǒ dōu bù xiǎng qù shāngchǎng le · Shopping online is so easy I don't even want to go to the shops any more!

write it trace the grey, then write your own

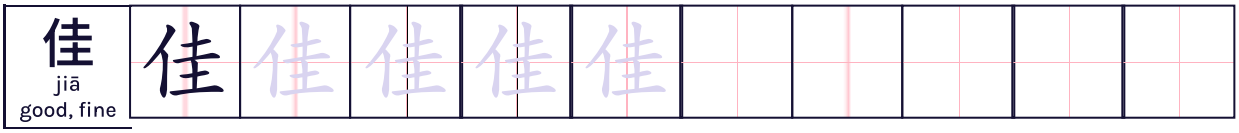
唯
wéi
only





佳
jiā
good, fine





good to know · 涨 zhǎng is for prices, water levels and pay going up: 涨价, 涨工资. Its opposite is 降: 降价. Online shop assistants in China often call you 亲 ("dear") in their messages. It's friendly, not personal.

Prices, totals and QR codes: you're ready for the next big sale.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 71 life online

Talk about working online: copying, correcting, sharing and planning, and tell someone not to fuss with X什么X.

Emails, posts and shared files are where your Chinese gets read by others, so fixing them matters.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
出自	chūzì	to come from (a source)	这个故事出自一本有名的小说。 This story comes from a famous novel.
当	dàng	to treat as, regard as	别把我当{dang4}小孩子！ Don’t treat me like a child!
合	hé	to close; to suit	这道菜很合我的口味。 This dish is just to my taste.
配	pèi	to match, go with; to deserve	这件衬衫配这条裤子很好看。 This shirt goes really well with these trousers.
连接	liánjiē	to connect, link	这座桥把两个城市连接了起来。 This bridge links the two cities.
正如	zhèngrú	just as	正如大家看到的，这个软件很好用。 As you can all see, this app is very easy to use.
至	zhì	to, until (written)	我们从周一至周五都上班。 We work Monday to Friday.
适用	shìyòng	suitable, applicable	这个方法不是对所有人都适用。 This method doesn’t work for everyone.
初	chū	beginning; first	每个月月初发工资。 We get paid at the start of every month.
初期	chūqī	early stage	项目初期，大家都很忙。 Everyone is busy in the early stage of a project.
季度	jìdù	quarter (of a year)	这个季度公司的收入增加了。 The company’s income went up this quarter.
日历	rìlì	calendar	我把会议时间写在了日历上。 I wrote the meeting time on the calendar.
随手	suíshǒu	on the way, without extra effort	出门的时候请随手关灯。 Please turn off the lights as you leave.
中期	zhōngqī	middle period, mid-	到了项目中期，问题越来越多。 By the middle of the project, there were more and more problems.
别	bié	to pin, fasten	她把一朵小花别{bie2-5}在衣服上。 She pinned a little flower to her clothes.
脚步	jiǎobù	footsteps; pace	我听到外面有脚步声。 I heard footsteps outside.
领	lǐng	collar; to lead; to receive	她领着孩子去公园玩。 She took the children to play in the park.

传	chuán	to pass (on), hand on	他把球传给了我。 He passed the ball to me.
改正	gǎizhèng	to correct	有错就要改正。 If you make a mistake, put it right.
修改	xiūgǎi	to revise, edit	这篇文章我修改了三遍。 I revised this article three times.
调	tiáo	to adjust, tune	请把音量调{tiao2-5}小一点儿。 Please turn the volume down a little.
复制	fùzhì	to copy, duplicate	你可以复制这段文字，发给大家。 You can copy this paragraph and send it to everyone.

pattern x什么x: what's there to x?

X 什么 X

Put 什么 between two copies of a verb or adjective to say "there's no need to X", usually to calm someone down or tell them off: 急什么急 what's the rush, 哭什么哭 stop crying, 吵什么吵 stop arguing. It's very spoken and can sound sharp, so keep it for friends and family.

哭什么哭？不就是删了一张照片吗？ **kū shénme kū bú jiùshì shān le yì zhāng zhàopiàn ma** What are you crying for? You only deleted one photo.

怕什么怕？是小明的脚步声。 **pà shénme pà shì Xiǎomíng de jiǎobù shēng** Nothing to be scared of. Those are Xiaoming's footsteps.

吵什么吵？大家好好说。 **chǎo shénme chǎo dàjiā hǎohǎo shuō** Stop arguing! Let's talk about it calmly.

dialogue one small mistake

manager lin 安娜，这个季度的文章写好了吗？日历上写着下周初要发。
Ānnà zhège jìdù de wénzhāng xiě hǎo le ma rìlì shàng xiě zhe xià zhōu chū yào fā · Anna, is this quarter's article ready? The calendar says it goes out early next week.

anna 写好了。我在第一段用了一个很有名的句子，出自一本小说。
xiě hǎo le wǒ zài dì yī duàn yòng le yí gè hěn yǒumíng de jùzi chūzì yì běn xiǎoshuō · It's done. In the first paragraph I used a famous line from a novel.

zhao yang 我看了。正如你说的，句子很美，可是作者写错了。
wǒ kàn le zhèngrú nǐ shuō de jùzi hěn měi kěshì zuòzhě xiě cuò le · I've read it. It's a beautiful line, just as you said, but you've got the author wrong.

anna 真的吗？糟糕，我是从网上随手复制的。
zhēn de ma zāogāo wǒ shì cóng wǎngshang suíshǒu fùzhì de · Really? Oh no, I just copied it from the internet without thinking.

zhao yang 网上的东西别都当真。你最好查一下原来的书。
wǎngshang de dōngxi bié dōu dàng zhēn nǐ zuìhǎo chá yíxià yuánlái de shū · Don't believe everything online. You'd better check the original book.

anna 好，我马上修改。林经理，这个错连我自己都没发现。
hǎo wǒ mǎshàng xiūgǎi Línjīnglǐ zhège cuò lián wǒ zìjǐ dōu méi fāxiàn · OK, I'll fix it right away. Manager Lin, I didn't even notice the mistake myself.

manager lin 急什么急？还有时间。改正了就好。
jí shénme jí hái yǒu shíjiān gǎizhèng le jiù hǎo · What's the rush? There's still time. As long as it's corrected, it's fine.

zhao yang 对了，文章的图片跟文字很配，颜色也很合大家的口味。
duì le wénzhāng de túpiàn gēn wénzì hěn pèi yánsè yě hěn hé dàjiā de kǒuwèi · By the way, the pictures go really well with the text, and the colours will suit everyone's taste.

anna 谢谢！视频的音量我也调好了，等一下一起传给大家。
xièxie shìpín de yīnliàng wǒ yě tiáo hǎo le děng yíxià yìqǐ chuán gěi dàjiā · Thanks! I've adjusted the video's volume too, and I'll send it all round in a moment.

manager lin 好。项目初期和中期都很顺利，大家辛苦了！
hǎo xiàngmù chūqī hé zhōngqī dōu hěn shùnlì dàjiā xīnkǔ le · Good. The early and middle stages of the project have gone smoothly. Thanks for all your hard work, everyone!

good to know · X什么X can sound rude to strangers. With friends and family it's just a lively way to say "don't". 当 dàng (to treat as) is different from 当 dāng (when; to work as): 别当真 don't take it seriously, 上当 to be taken in. 连 "even" (连我都不知道) is also a verb, "to connect, link": 连不上网 can't get online, 连上了 connected. 连接 is the two-character form.

Copy, correct, connect, share: you can now work online in Chinese, mistakes and all.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 72 mission: the app that went wrong

Follow an app from the first idea to launch day and beyond: phones, systems, online shopping and fixing mistakes.

When something goes wrong online, you need to explain, apologise and fix it. Everything from this unit comes together here.

chapter 1 the plan

ms zhang 现在年轻人都在网上买东西，我的茶叶店是不是也应该上网？
xiànzài niánqīng rén dōu zài wǎngshang mǎi dōngxi wǒ de cháyè diàn shì bu shì yě yīnggāi shàngwǎng · Young people buy everything online these days. Should my tea shop go online too?

xiaoming 当然！我们可以给您开发一个小软件，用户扫二维码就能买茶。
dāngrán wǒmen kěyǐ gěi nín kāifā yí gè xiǎo ruǎnjiàn yònghù sǎo èrwéimǎ jiù néng mǎi chá · Of course! We could develop a little app for you. Customers just scan a QR code to buy tea.

anna 软件的画面我来设计，小明写程序。
ruǎnjiàn de huàmiàn wǒ lái shèjì Xiǎomíng xiě chéngxù · I'll design how the app looks, and Xiaoming will write the program.

anna 很多电商平台都有自己的软件，用户可以在线浏览，随意下载。我们的软件也要有搜索功能，用户搜一下就能找到想要的茶。
hěn duō diànshāng píngtái dōu yǒu zìjǐ de ruǎnjiàn yònghù kěyǐ zàixiàn liúlǎn suíyì xiàzài wǒmen de ruǎnjiàn yě yào yǒu sōusuǒ gōngnéng yònghù sōu yíxià jiù néng zhǎo dào xiǎng yào de chá · Lots of e-commerce platforms have their own apps: users can browse online and download whatever they like. Ours needs a search function too, so users can search and find the tea they want.

xiaoming 我们还可以让用户上传照片，跟大家互动，共享喝茶的经验。
wǒmen hái kěyǐ ràng yònghù shàngchuán zhàopiàn gēn dàjiā hùdòng gòngxiǎng hē chá de jīngyàn · We could let users upload photos too, interact with each other and share their tea-drinking tips.

ms zhang 我不太会用计算机，鼠标、键盘我都不熟。
wǒ bú tài huì yòng jìsuànjī shǔbiāo jiànpán wǒ dōu bù shú · I'm not good with computers: I'm not used to a mouse or a keyboard.

anna 用不着担心，操作很简单，我会教您。设置好以后，很多事都是自动的。
yòngbuzháo dānxīn cāozuò hěn jiǎndān wǒ huì jiāo nín shèzhì hǎo yǐhòu hěn duō shì dōu shì zìdòng de · No need to worry: it's easy to use, and I'll show you. Once it's set up, lots of things happen automatically.

ms zhang 软件会不会占很多空间？手机的电池会不会很快没电？
ruǎnjiàn huì bu huì zhàn hěn duō kōngjiān shǒujī de diànchí huì bu huì hěn kuài méi diàn · Will the app take up lots of space? Will the phone battery run down fast?

xiaoming 不会。这个软件很小，比类似的软件小一半，充电一次能用很久。
bú huì zhège ruǎnjiàn hěn xiǎo bǐ lèisì de ruǎnjiàn xiǎo yíbàn chōngdiàn yí cì néng yòng hěn jiǔ · No. The app is small, half the size of similar apps, and one charge lasts a long time.

ms zhang 太好了！可是这样要花费很多钱吧？
tài hǎo le kěshì zhèyàng yào huāfèi hěn duō qián ba · Wonderful! But won't that cost a lot?

xiaoming 用不着花钱，我们周末做就行。
yòngbuzháo huā qián wǒmen zhōumò zuò jiù xíng · No need to pay anything. We'll do it at the weekend.

ms zhang 那我请你们喝店里最好的茶！
nà wǒ qǐng nǐmen hē diàn lǐ zuìhǎo de chá · Then I'll treat you to the best tea in the shop!

chapter 2 launch day

anna 软件今天开始用了，已经有一百多个用户！
ruǎnjiàn jīntiān kāishǐ yòng le yǐjīng yǒu yìbǎi duō gè yònghù · The app went live today, and there are already more than a hundred users!

xiaoming 今天早上我统计了一下，下载的总数有五百多个。
jīntiān zǎoshang wǒ tǒngjì le yíxià xiàzài de zǒngshù yǒu wǔbǎi duō gè · I counted up this morning: there have been over five hundred downloads.

ms zhang 可是有个用户说，网络连不上。
kěshì yǒu gè yònghù shuō wǎngluò lián bú shàng · But one user says they can't connect to the network.

anna 可能是线路的问题，也可能是用户的手机太旧了。
kěnéng shì xiànlù de wèntí yě kěnéng shì yònghù de shǒujī tài jiù le · Maybe it's the line, or maybe the user's phone is too old.

ms zhang 可是有客人说登录不了，屏幕上显示“密码错误”。
kěshì yǒu kèrén shuō dēnglù bù le píngmù shàng xiǎnshì mìmǎ cuòwù · But some customers say they can't log in. The screen says “Wrong password”.

xiaoming 急什么急？让我看看系统……原来是数据出了问题。
jí shénme jí ràng wǒ kàn kan xìtǒng yuánlái shì shùjù chū le wèntí · No need to panic. Let me check the system… so it's the data that's gone wrong.

ms zhang 还有，这种茶的价格怎么变成了一块钱？便宜得大家都抢着买！
hái yǒu zhè zhǒng chá de jiàgé zěnme biànchéng le yí kuài qián piányi de dàjiā dōu qiǎng zhe mǎi · And how has this tea ended up costing one yuan? It's so cheap everyone is scrambling for it!

xiaoming 糟糕，是我输入错了。我马上修改。
zāogāo shì wǒ shūrù cuò le wǒ mǎshàng xiūgǎi · Oh no, I typed it in wrong. I'll fix it right away.

ms zhang 哎呀！我碰了一下充电的线路，被电了一下！
āiyā wǒ pèng le yíxià chōngdiàn de xiànlù bèi diàn le yíxià · Ow! I touched the charging cable and got a little shock!

xiaoming 快放开！那个线路碰不得。妈妈，您没事吧？
kuài fàng kāi nàge xiànlù pèng bu de māma nín méishì ba · Let go, quick! You mustn't touch that wire. Mum, are you all right?

ms zhang 没事。你们快把软件修好吧，我的手机屏幕上都是客人的消息！
méishì nǐmen kuài bǎ ruǎnjiàn xiū hǎo ba wǒ de shǒujī píngmù shàng dōu shì kèrén de xiāoxi · I'm fine. Hurry up and fix the app: my phone screen is full of customers' messages!

anna 说来说去，还是我们测试得不够。
shuō lái shuō qù háishi wǒmen cèshì de búgòu · However you look at it, we just didn't test it enough.

chapter 3 fixing it

manager lin 听说你们的软件出问题了？
tīngshuō nǐmen de ruǎnjiàn chū wèntí le · I hear your app has had problems?

anna 是的。我们把错的价格改正了，可是已经卖出去了三十份。
shì de wǒmen bǎ cuò de jiàgé gǎizhèng le kěshì yǐjīng mài chuqu le sānshí fèn · Yes. We've corrected the wrong price, but thirty orders had already gone through.

manager lin 这种事急不得。先跟用户沟通，说明情况，再想办法。
zhè zhǒng shì jí bu de xiān gēn yònghù gōutōng shuōmíng qíngkuàng zài xiǎng bànfǎ · You can't rush this kind of thing. First talk to the users and explain what happened, then work out what to do.

anna 这次的确是我们的问题，我们根本没想到会这样。测试的时间过于紧张了。
zhè cì díquè shì wǒmen de wèntí wǒmen gēnběn méi xiǎng dào huì zhèyàng cèshì de shíjiān guòyú jǐnzhāng le · This time it really was our fault: we never imagined this would happen. We left far too little time for testing.

manager lin 你们的软件拥有多少用户了？
nǐmen de ruǎnjiàn yōngyǒu duōshao yònghù le · How many users does your app have now?

xiaoming 一千个上下。
yìqiān gè shàngxià · About a thousand.

manager lin 问题的原因在于你们没有在同一时间测试所有的功能。你们的软件跟大平台的相似，可是系统和硬件都不够先进。
wèntí de yuányīn zàiyú nǐmen méiyǒu zài tóngyī shíjiān cèshì suǒyǒu de gōngnéng nǐmen de ruǎnjiàn gēn dà píngtái de xiāngsì kěshì xìtǒng hé yìngjiàn dōu búgòu xiānjìn · The cause is that you didn't test all the functions at the same time. Your app is like the big platforms' apps, but your system and hardware aren't advanced enough.

xiaoming 我已经更新了程序，现在登录没有问题了。
wǒ yǐjīng gēngxīn le chéngxù xiànzài dēnglù méiyǒu wèntí le · I've updated the program, and logging in works fine now.

xiaoming 我把原有的程序删除了，写了一个新型的，还请一个机器人帮我检查了一遍。
wǒ bǎ yuán yǒu de chéngxù shānchú le xiě le yí gè xīnxíng de hái qǐng yí gè jīqìrén bāng wǒ jiǎnchá le yí biàn · I deleted the original program and wrote a new kind, and I had a robot check it through too.

manager lin 好的软件意味着可靠、灵活、便利，这些都有助于留住客人。以后的工作要围绕用户的需求。
hǎo de ruǎnjiàn yìwèizhe kěkào línghuó biànlì zhèxiē dōu yǒuzhùyú liú zhù kèrén yǐhòu de gōngzuò yào wéirào yònghù de xūqiú · A good app means reliable, flexible and convenient: all of that helps keep customers. From now on, build the work around what users need.

manager lin 别把小问题当大问题。包括我在内，大家都出过这种错，这类问题跟你们的能力无关。你们现在处于学习的阶段，状态很好。
bié bǎ xiǎo wèntí dàng dà wèntí bāokuò wǒ zàinèi dàjiā dōu chū guo zhè zhǒng cuò zhè lèi wèntí gēn nǐmen de nénglì wúguān nǐmen xiànzài chǔyú xuéxí de jiēduàn zhuàngtài hěn hǎo · Don't treat a small problem as a big deal. Everyone, me included, has made this kind of mistake: it has nothing to do with your ability. You're at the learning stage, and you're in good shape.

anna 谢谢林经理。这次的状况让我们明白了：人工检查也很重要，不能只靠自动的程序。
xièxie Línjīnglǐ zhè cì de zhuàngkuàng ràng wǒmen míngbai le réngōng jiǎnchá yě hěn zhòngyào bù néng zhǐ kào zìdòng de chéngxù · Thank you, Manager Lin. This has taught us that checking by hand matters too: you can't rely only on automatic programs.

manager lin 很好。以后重要的功能要多测试几次。用户的数据删不得，一定要保存好。
hěn hǎo yǐhòu zhòngyào de gōngnéng yào duō cèshì jǐ cì yònghù de shùjù shān bu de yídìng yào bǎocún hǎo · Good. In future, test important features a few more times. And never delete users' data: keep it safe.

anna 明白。这次我们真的学到了很多。
míngbai zhè cì wǒmen zhēn de xué dào le hěn duō · Understood. We've really learnt a lot this time.

chapter 4 a happy ending

ms zhang 你们看，这一周在网上买茶的人比店里还多！
nǐmen kàn zhè yì zhōu zài wǎngshang mǎi chá de rén bǐ diàn lǐ hái duō · Look, this week more people bought tea online than in the shop!

anna 很多用户还点赞了，说这个软件又简单又实用。
hěn duō yònghù hái diǎnzàn le shuō zhège ruǎnjiàn yòu jiǎndān yòu shíyòng · Lots of users gave it a like too, and said the app is simple and practical.

ms zhang 下个月我想在网上做一次促销，消费者买两盒送一盒。
xià gè yuè wǒ xiǎng zài wǎngshang zuò yí cì cùxiāo xiāofèizhě mǎi liǎng hé sòng yì hé · Next month I want to run an online promotion: buy two boxes, get one free.

anna 好主意！最近茶叶涨价了，促销是最有力的办法。
hǎo zhǔyi zuìjìn cháyè zhǎngjià le cùxiāo shì zuì yǒulì de bànfǎ · Great idea! Tea prices have gone up lately, so a promotion is the most effective move.

xiaoming 我计算了一下，总共能多卖三百盒。
wǒ jìsuàn le yíxià zǒnggòng néng duō mài sānbǎi hé · I've worked it out: we could sell three hundred more boxes in total.

ms zhang 网上的客服谁来做？
wǎngshang de kèfú shéi lái zuò · Who will do online customer service?

little sister 我来！我说话特别客气，消费者都会喜欢。
wǒ lái wǒ shuōhuà tèbié kèqi xiāofèizhě dōu huì xǐhuan · Me! I'm super polite, and the customers will love it.

anna 您店里特有的茶，在网上只有您这一家有，这是最佳的优势。这个软件的用途也很多：买茶、看介绍、找优惠。
nín diàn lǐ tèyǒu de chá zài wǎngshang zhǐyǒu nín zhè yì jiā yǒu zhè shì zuìjiā de yōushì zhège ruǎnjiàn de yòngtú yě hěn duō mǎi chá kàn jièshào zhǎo yōuhuì · The teas only your shop has can't be found anywhere else online: that's your best advantage. The app has lots of uses too: buying tea, reading about it, finding deals.

xiaoming 那三十份一块钱的茶呢？
nà sānshí fèn yí kuài qián de chá ne · What about those thirty one-yuan teas?

ms zhang 我还是按一块钱卖给了他们，还送了一张会员卡。现在他们都是我的老客人了。
wǒ háishi àn yí kuài qián mài gěi le tāmen hái sòng le yì zhāng huìyuán kǎ xiànzài tāmen dōu shì wǒ de lǎo kèrén le · I let them have them for one yuan, and gave them each a membership card too. Now they're all regulars.

xiaoming 旧的会员卡已经无效了，我们在软件里做了一个更完善的。
jiù de huìyuán kǎ yǐjīng wúxiào le wǒmen zài ruǎnjiàn lǐ zuò le yí gè gèng wánshàn de · The old membership cards are no longer valid: we've made a better one in the app.

anna 带来问题的是它，带来客人的也是它。
dài lái wèntí de shì tā dài lái kèrén de yě shì tā · The app brought the problems, and it brought the customers too.

ms zhang 走，我请你们喝茶！
zǒu wǒ qǐng nǐmen hē chá · Come on, the tea's on me!

chapter 5 a letter to the users

anna 张阿姨，我们给用户写了一封信，您看看合适吗？
zhāng āyí wǒmen gěi yònghù xiě le yì fēng xìn nín kàn kan héshì ma · Auntie Zhang, we've written a letter to the users. Would you see if it's all right?

anna “亲爱的用户：感谢大家使用本店的软件。上周六，因为系统出了问题，有的用户登录不了，有一种茶的价格也显示错了。我们已经修改了程序，现在一切正常。大家买茶以后，可以随时在线联系客服。从本月一日至三十日，新用户还可以领一张会员卡。谢谢大家的支持！”
qīnài de yònghù gǎnxiè dàjiā shǐyòng běn diàn de ruǎnjiàn shàng zhōu liù yīnwèi xìtǒng chū le wèntí yǒude yònghù dēnglù bù le yǒu yì zhǒng chá de jiàgé yě xiǎnshì cuò le wǒmen yǐjīng xiūgǎi le chéngxù xiànzài yíqiè zhèngcháng dàjiā mǎi chá yǐhòu kěyǐ suíshí zàixiàn liánxì kèfú cóng běn yuè yī rì zhì sānshí rì xīn yònghù hái kěyǐ lǐng yì zhāng huìyuán kǎ xièxie dàjiā de zhīchí · “Dear users: thank you for using our shop's app. Last Saturday, because of a system problem, some users couldn't log in, and the price of one tea was shown wrongly. We have fixed the program and everything is now working normally. After buying tea, you can contact customer service online at any time. From the 1st to the 30th of this month, new users can also get a membership card. Thank you all for your support!”

ms zhang 写得很好！正如你们说的，跟用户沟通最重要。这封信的颜色也很合我的口味。
xiě de hěn hǎo zhèngrú nǐmen shuō de gēn yònghù gōutōng zuì zhòngyào zhè fēng xìn de yánsè yě hěn hé wǒ de kǒuwèi · It's very well written! Just as you said, talking to users matters most. And the colours of the letter are just my taste.

xiaoming 我把这封信复制了一份，传给了赵阳，他会在视频里说明。不过别随手复制网上的东西，这是我们自己写的！
wǒ bǎ zhè fēng xìn fùzhì le yí fèn chuán gěi le ZhàoYáng tā huì zài shìpín lǐ shuōmíng búguò bié suíshǒu fùzhì wǎngshang de dōngxi zhè shì wǒmen zìjǐ xiě de · I've copied the letter and passed it on to Zhao Yang: he'll explain it in his video. And no lifting things off the internet: we wrote this ourselves!

anna 这个季度的目标是五千个用户。我在日历上写好了：初期做推广，中期做促销。
zhège jìdù de mùbiāo shì wǔqiān gè yònghù wǒ zài rìlì shàng xiě hǎo le chūqī zuò tuīguǎng zhōngqī zuò cùxiāo · This quarter's target is five thousand users. I've put it on the calendar: promotion in the early stage, sales offers in the middle.

xiaoming 您还可以把店里的牌子跟软件连接在一起，客人扫一下就能买。
nín hái kěyǐ bǎ diàn lǐ de páizi gēn ruǎnjiàn liánjiē zài yìqǐ kèrén sǎo yíxià jiù néng mǎi · You can also link the shop sign to the app, so customers can scan it and buy.

ms zhang 好。我还要把这个二维码别在衣服上，客人一看就知道！这些好主意都出自你们俩，下周初我请你们吃饭！
hǎo wǒ hái yào bǎ zhège èrwéimǎ bié zài yīfu shàng kèrén yí kàn jiù zhīdào zhèxiē hǎo zhǔyi dōu chūzì nǐmen liǎ xià zhōu chū wǒ qǐng nǐmen chī fàn · Good. And I'll pin this QR code to my clothes so customers see it straight away! All these good ideas came from you two: early next week, dinner's on me!

little sister 你们看，妈妈学电脑的脚步越来越快了，现在她什么都会！
nǐmen kàn māma xué diànnǎo de jiǎobù yuè lái yuè kuài le xiànzài tā shénme dōu huì · Look, Mum is learning computers faster and faster: now she can do everything!

anna 这个软件跟小店很配。不过这个办法不是对所有的小店都适用。
zhège ruǎnjiàn gēn xiǎo diàn hěn pèi búguò zhège bànfǎ bú shì duì suǒyǒu de xiǎo diàn dōu shìyòng · The app suits the little shop. But this approach doesn't work for every small shop.

xiaoming 快把音量调大一点儿，赵阳的视频开始了！
kuài bǎ yīnliàng tiáo dà yìdiǎnr ZhàoYáng de shìpín kāishǐ le · Turn the volume up, quick: Zhao Yang's video is starting!

Build it, break it, fix it, explain it: your Chinese now works for the whole life of an app.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 73 city life

Talk about how a city is built and run, weigh up change, and settle a debate with 不管怎样说.

Chinese cities change fast, and everyone has a view on the new and the old.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
现代	xiàndài	modern; modern times	北京既有老胡同，也有现代的大楼。 Beijing has old hutongs and modern tower blocks.
现代化	xiàndàihuà	to modernise; modern	这座城市越来越现代化了。 This city is becoming more and more modern.
建设	jiànshè	to build, construct; construction	这里正在建设一个新的公园。 A new park is being built here.
建造	jiànzào	to build, construct	这座桥是一百年前建造的。 This bridge was built a hundred years ago.
建筑	jiànzhù	building; architecture; to build	这些老建筑很有特色。 These old buildings have a lot of character.
修建	xiūjiàn	to build (roads, railways)	村里新修建了一条公路。 A new road has been built to the village.
建	jiàn	to build; to set up	小区里新建了一个游泳池。 A new swimming pool has been built on the estate.
设施	shèshī	facilities	这个小区的设施很完善。 This estate has excellent facilities.
场所	chǎngsuǒ	place, venue	公共场所禁止吸烟。 Smoking is not allowed in public places.
市民	shìmín	city residents, citizens	很多市民周末都去公园锻炼。 Lots of residents go to the park at the weekend to exercise.
人口	rénkǒu	population	这座城市的人口超过了两千|万。 This city's population is over twenty million.
老百姓	lǎobǎixìng	ordinary people	地铁修好以后，老百姓出行方便多了。 Since the metro was built, getting about is much easier for ordinary people.
开放	kāifàng	to open (to the public); open	这个公园每天早上六点开放。 The park opens at six every morning.
公平	gōngpíng	fair, just	这样做对大家都公平。 That's fair to everyone.
规则	guīzé	rule(s)	比赛的规则很简单。 The rules of the game are simple.
提倡	tíchàng	to promote, advocate	城市提倡大家坐公交车上班。 The city encourages everyone to take the bus to work.
结构	jiégòu	structure	这个句子的结构有点儿复杂。 This sentence has a slightly complicated structure.

面向	miànxiàng	to face; aimed at	这个活动面向所有市民。 The event is open to all residents.
集合	jíhé	to gather, assemble	我们明天早上八点在门口集合。 We'll meet at the gate at eight tomorrow morning.
大事	dàshì	big event, important matter	修地铁是城市的一件大事。 Building the metro is a big event for the city.
建立	jiànlì	to set up, establish	我们跟这家公司建立了合作关系。 We've started working together with this company.
构成	gòuchéng	to make up, constitute	老人和孩子构成了这个社区的大部分人口。 Old people and children make up most of this community.

pattern 不管怎样说: whatever anyone says, in any case

不管怎样说，what still holds

不管怎样说 means "whatever anyone says, in any case": it sets the arguments aside and states what still holds. 不管怎样说，这是一件好事. In speech you'll also hear 不管怎么说; they mean the same.

有人喜欢老胡同，有人喜欢新大楼。不管怎样说，生活变好了。 **yǒu rén xǐhuan lǎo hútòng yǒu rén xǐhuan xīn dà lóu bùguǎn zěnyàng shuō shēnghuó biàn hǎo le** Some people like the old hutongs, some like the new towers. Either way, life has got better.

不管怎样说，我们明天八点在门口集合。 **bùguǎn zěnyàng shuō wǒmen míngtiān bā diǎn zài ménkǒu jíhé** Whatever happens, we meet at the gate at eight tomorrow.

不管怎样说，他是为了大家好。 **bùguǎn zěnyàng shuō tā shì wèile dàjiā hǎo** Whatever you think of it, he did it for everyone's good.

dialogue forty years on the estate

zhao yang 孙教授，这几年小区附近的建设很快，您觉得怎么样？
Sūnjiàoshòu zhè jǐ nián xiǎoqū fùjìn de jiànshè hěn kuài nín juéde zěnmeyàng · Professor Sun, there's been a lot of building round the estate in the last few years. What do you think?

professor sun 变化很大。这条路是去年修建的，那边还建造了一座新的体育馆。
biànhuà hěn dà zhè tiáo lù shì qùnián xiūjiàn de nàbiān hái jiànzào le yí zuò xīn de tǐyùguǎn · It's changed a lot. This road was built last year, and they've put up a new sports hall over there.

anna 我觉得这些设施很方便，老百姓的生活也好了很多。
wǒ juéde zhèxiē shèshī hěn fāngbiàn lǎobǎixìng de shēnghuó yě hǎo le hěn duō · I think these facilities are really handy, and life is much better for ordinary people.

professor sun 是啊。不过很多老建筑没有了，我心里有点儿舍不得。
shì a búguò hěn duō lǎo jiànzhù méiyǒu le wǒ xīnlǐ yǒudiǎnr shěbude · True. But lots of the old buildings have gone, and I do miss them.

zhao yang 现在城市在搞现代化，有人说老房子的结构不安全。
xiànzài chéngshì zài gǎo xiàndàihuà yǒu rén shuō lǎo fángzi de jiégòu bù ānquán · The city is modernising, and some people say the old houses aren't structurally safe.

professor sun 有道理。不管怎样说，城市的历史也要保留下来。
yǒu dàolǐ bùguǎn zěnyàng shuō chéngshì de lìshǐ yě yào bǎoliú xialai · That's fair. But whatever anyone says, the city's history has to be kept too.

anna 我同意。老房子和新大楼一起构成了这座城市。
wǒ tóngyì lǎo fángzi hé xīn dà lóu yìqǐ gòuchéng le zhè zuò chéngshì · I agree. The old houses and the new towers together make the city what it is.

zhao yang 说得好。对了，下周市里有一件大事：新的图书馆要开放了。
shuō de hǎo duì le xià zhōu shì lǐ yǒu yí jiàn dàshì xīn de túshūguǎn yào kāifàng le · Well put. Oh, and there's big news next week: the new city library is opening.

professor sun 听说它面向所有人，而且是免费的，很公平。
tīngshuō tā miànxiàng suǒyǒu rén érqiě shì miǎnfèi de hěn gōngpíng · I hear it's open to everyone, and free. That's fair.

anna 太好了！那我们下周六早上九点在门口集合，一起去看看吧。
tài hǎo le nà wǒmen xià zhōu liù zǎoshang jiǔ diǎn zài ménkǒu jíhé yìqǐ qù kàn kan ba · Great! Then let's meet at the gate at nine next Saturday morning and go and have a look.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

构
gòu
to construct

筑
zhù
to build, construct

good to know · The 建 family: 建设 build up (a city, a country), 建造 build (a bridge, a ship), 修建 build (roads, railways), 建立 establish (relations, a system), 建筑 a building. 不管怎样说 and 不管怎么说 mean the same; 无论如何 is the formal cousin.

Old and new, for and against: you can now talk about how a city changes, and keep the conversation fair.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 74 people in society

Talk about people in society: groups, roles, rights and trends, and say what something shows with 从……来看.

Social trends are what the news, your colleagues and your Chinese friends discuss over dinner.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
现象	xiànxiàng	phenomenon, trend	年轻人晚结婚，是一个普遍的现象。 Young people marrying later is a common trend.
现实	xiànshí	reality; realistic	理想很美好，现实很困难。 Dreams are lovely; reality is hard.
现状	xiànzhuàng	current situation	我们要了解农村教育的现状。 We need to understand the current state of rural education.
形势	xíngshì	situation, circumstances	现在的就业形势比较紧张。 The job market is quite tough at the moment.
行为	xíngwéi	behaviour, act	在公共场所大声说话是不礼貌的行为。 Talking loudly in public places is impolite.
威胁	wēixié	to threaten; threat	污染威胁着很多动物的生存。 Pollution is threatening the survival of many animals.
穷	qióng	poor	他小时候家里很穷，可是他学习很努力。 His family was poor when he was a child, but he studied very hard.
妇女	fùnǚ	women	三月八日是国际妇女节。 8 March is International Women's Day.
群体	qúntǐ	group (of people)	老年人是一个需要关心的群体。 Older people are a group that needs looking after.
身份	shēnfèn	identity, status	他以记者的身份参加了这次会议。 He attended the meeting as a journalist.
地位	dìwèi	position, status	这一百年来，妇女的地位提高了很多。 Over the last hundred years, women's status has risen a great deal.
个人	gèrén	individual; personal	这只是我的个人看法。 That's just my personal opinion.
集体	jítǐ	collective, group	我们是一个集体，要互相帮助。 We're a team, so we should help each other.
人类	rénlèi	humankind, humanity	保护地球是全人类的责任。 Protecting the Earth is the responsibility of all humanity.
人民	rénmín	the people	我们周末在人民公园见面吧。 Let's meet in People's Park at the weekend.
自由	zìyóu	free; freedom	周末的时间很自由，我想做什么就做什么。 My weekends are free: I do whatever I like.

权	quán	right; power	你有权知道真实的情况。 You have the right to know what really happened.
权利	quánlì	right(s)	每个孩子都有受教育的权利。 Every child has the right to an education.
义务	yìwù	duty; voluntary	权利和义务是分不开的。 Rights and duties go hand in hand.
代	dài	to stand in for; generation	请代我向你父母问好。 Please say hello to your parents for me.
派	pài	to send (someone); school, group	公司派他去南方工作一年。 The company is sending him to work in the south for a year.
改革	gǎigé	to reform; reform	学校改革了考试的方法。 The school has reformed the way it sets exams.

pattern 从……来看: judging by …, seen from …

从 **evidence / point of view** 来看 , **conclusion**

从……来看 means "judging by …, seen from …": the evidence or point of view goes in the middle, the conclusion after the comma. 从数据来看 judging by the figures; 从我个人来看 as I see it. 从……看 without 来 means the same.

从现状来看，这个问题还要很长时间才能解决。 **cóng xiànzhuàng lái kàn zhège wèntí hái yào hěn cháng shíjiān cái néng jiějué** Judging by the current situation, this problem will take a long time to solve.

从整体来看，今年的就业形势还不错。 **cóng zhěngtǐ lái kàn jīnnián de jiùyè xíngshì hái búcuò** Overall, the job market isn't bad this year.

从他的行为来看，他是一个很有责任心的人。 **cóng tā de xíngwéi lái kàn tā shì yí gè hěn yǒu zérèn xīn de rén** Judging by the way he acts, he's a very responsible person.

dialogue starting out on your own

zhao yang 张阿姨，我们在做一个关于创业妇女的节目。从您的经历来看，开店难吗？
zhāng āyí wǒmen zài zuò yí gè guānyú chuàngyè fùnǚ de jiémù cóng nín de jīnglì lái kàn kāi diàn nán ma · Auntie Zhang, we're making a programme about women who start businesses. From your experience, is it hard to open a shop?

ms zhang 难是难，可是我很开心。以前我在公司上班，现在我的身份是这家店的所有人，自由多了。
nán shì nán kěshì wǒ hěn kāixīn yǐqián wǒ zài gōngsī shàngbān xiànzài wǒ de shēnfèn shì zhè jiā diàn de suǒyǒurén zìyóu duō le · Hard, yes, but I'm happy. I used to work for a company; now I'm the owner of this shop, and I'm much freer.

anna 现在像张阿姨这样的群体越来越多了，这是一个新的社会现象。
xiànzài xiàng zhāng āyí zhèyàng de qúntǐ yuè lái yuè duō le zhè shì yí gè xīn de shèhuì xiànxiàng · There are more and more people like Auntie Zhang now. It's a new social trend.

zhao yang 您觉得妇女在社会上的地位有变化吗？
nín juéde fùnǚ zài shèhuì shàng de dìwèi yǒu biànhuà ma · Do you think women's position in society has changed?

ms zhang 变化很大。我母亲那代人小时候，家里都很穷，很多女孩子没有机会上学。现在大家都有受教育的权利。
biànhuà hěn dà wǒ mǔqīn nà dài rén xiǎoshíhou jiā lǐ dōu hěn qióng hěn duō nǚ háizi méiyǒu jīhuì shàngxué xiànzài dàjiā dōu yǒu shòu jiàoyù de quánlì · Very much. When my mother's generation were young, families were poor, and lots of girls never got the chance to go to school. Now everyone has the right to an education.

zhao yang 那您觉得现在的形势怎么样？
nà nín juéde xiànzài de xíngshì zěnmeyàng · And how do you see things now?

ms zhang 机会很多，可是竞争也很激烈。网上的商店对小店是一种威胁。
jīhuì hěn duō kěshì jìngzhēng yě hěn jīliè wǎngshang de shāngdiàn duì xiǎo diàn shì yì zhǒng wēixié · There are lots of opportunities, but the competition is fierce. Online shops are a threat to small ones.

anna 不过张阿姨的茶叶店很有特色，老客人都很支持。
búguò zhāng āyí de cháyè diàn hěn yǒu tèsè lǎo kèrén dōu hěn zhīchí · But Auntie Zhang's tea shop is special, and the regulars really support it.

ms zhang 是啊。开店不只是我个人的事，大家一起帮忙，就像一个集体。
shì a kāi diàn bù zhǐshì wǒ gèrén de shì dàjiā yìqǐ bāngmáng jiù xiàng yí gè jítǐ · Yes. Running a shop isn't just about me; everyone pitches in, like one big team.

zhao yang 谢谢您！台里派我来做这个节目，就是想让大家了解普通人的现状。
xièxie nín tái lǐ pài wǒ lái zuò zhège jiémù jiùshì xiǎng ràng dàjiā liǎojiě pǔtōng rén de xiànzhuàng · Thank you! The station sent me to make this programme so people can see how ordinary people are doing today.

write it trace the grey, then write your own

权
quán
right; power

威
wēi
power, might

good to know · 妇女 is formal (国际妇女节 International Women's Day). In daily speech, say 女性 or 女的. 代 is "generation" in 那一代人 (that generation), and "for, on behalf of" in 代我问好 (say hello for me). 所有 "all" also hides in 所有人 suǒyǒurén, "the owner" (这家店的所有人), and in written Chinese it is a verb, "to own": 这些书归学校所有 these books belong to the school.

Trends, rights, roles: you can now join a real conversation about society, and back it up with 从……来看.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 75 organisations

Talk about organisations, rules and volunteering, and say what something is based on with 依据.

From the news to your office handbook, rules and organisations come with their own formal words.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
政府	zhèngfǔ	government	市政府决定在这里修一个公园。 The city government has decided to build a park here.
政治	zhèngzhì	politics	他在大学学的是政治和经济。 He studied politics and economics at university.
主席	zhǔxí	chairman, chairperson	她被选为{wei2-5b}大会主席。 She was elected chair of the conference.
总统	zǒngtǒng	president (of a country)	新闻里说，两国总统明天见面。 The news says the two presidents will meet tomorrow.
制度	zhìdù	system (of rules)	公司有很完善的请假制度。 The company has a very clear system for taking leave.
措施	cuòshī	measure, step	为了减少污染，城市采取了很多措施。 The city has taken many measures to cut pollution.
实施	shíshī	to implement, put into effect	新规定从下个月开始实施。 The new rules come into effect next month.
实行	shíxíng	to put into practice	我们公司实行每周工作五天。 Our company has a five-day working week.
统一	tǒngyī	to unify; unified	学校要求学生穿统一的衣服。 The school asks students to wear the same uniform.
限制	xiànzhì	to limit, restrict; limit	这条路限制车速，最高六十公里。 There's a speed limit on this road: sixty kilometres an hour.
机构	jīgòu	organisation, institution	她在一家研究机构工作。 She works at a research institute.
组织	zǔzhī	to organise; organisation	公司组织大家周末去爬山。 The company is organising a hike for everyone at the weekend.
成立	chénglì	to set up, found	这家公司是2010年成立的。 This company was founded in 2010.
设立	shèlì	to set up, establish	学校设立了一个奖学金。 The school has set up a scholarship.
成员	chéngyuán	member	我们小组有五个成员。 Our group has five members.

代表	dàibiǎo	representative; to represent	我代表公司欢迎大家。 On behalf of the company, I'd like to welcome you all.
大会	dàhuì	conference, general meeting	明天学校要开运动大会。 The school is holding its big sports day tomorrow.
联合	liánhé	to unite; joint	两家公司联合举办了这次活动。 The two companies jointly organised the event.
发起	fāqǐ	to launch, start (an initiative)	这次活动是几个大学生发起的。 This campaign was started by a few university students.
参与	cānyù	to take part in	欢迎大家积极参与。 Everyone is welcome to get involved.
志愿者	zhìyuànzhě	volunteer	周末我在图书馆当志愿者。 At weekends I volunteer at the library.
捐	juān	to donate	我把旧衣服捐给了需要的人。 I gave my old clothes to people who need them.
贡献	gòngxiàn	to contribute; contribution	他为社区作出了很大的贡献。 He has made a big contribution to the community.
依据	yījù	basis; according to	依据公司的规定，每个人每年有十天假。 Under company rules, everyone gets ten days' holiday a year.
为	wéi	as (written)	大家选他为{wei2-5b}代表。 Everyone chose him as their representative.

pattern 依据: on the basis of, in line with

依据 + a rule / fact / result + , what is done

依据 + a rule, law or fact means "on the basis of, in line with": 依据规定 under the rules, 依据调查的结果 based on the survey results. It's formal, the written cousin of 根据 and 按照. It's also a noun: 有依据 well-founded.

依据调查的结果，我们调整了计划。 **yījù diàochá de jiéguǒ wǒmen tiáozhěng le jìhuà** Based on the survey results, we adjusted the plan.

依据新的制度，公司设立了一个新的机构。 **yījù xīn de zhìdù gōngsī shèlì le yí gè xīn de jīgòu** Under the new system, the company has set up a new department.

你这么说有什么依据？ **nǐ zhème shuō yǒu shénme yījù** What are you basing that on?

dialogue books for the mountains

little sister 安娜，我们学校跟一个组织联合发起了一个活动：给山区的孩子捐书。
Ānnà wǒmen xuéxiào gēn yí gè zǔzhī liánhé fāqǐ le yí gè huódòng gěi shānqū de háizi juān shū · Anna, my school and an organisation have started a campaign together: donating books to children in the mountains.

anna 太好了！我能参与吗？
tài hǎo le wǒ néng cānyù ma · Brilliant! Can I join in?

little sister 当然！我们需要很多志愿者。这个组织由几百个成员组成。
dāngrán wǒmen xūyào hěn duō zhìyuànzhě zhège zǔzhī yóu jǐ bǎi gè chéngyuán zǔchéng · Of course! We need lots of volunteers. The organisation has several hundred members.

anna 它是政府的机构吗？
tā shì zhèngfǔ de jīgòu ma · Is it a government body?

professor sun 不是，是一些老师自己成立的。我也是这里的志愿者。
bú shì shì yìxiē lǎoshī zìjǐ chénglì de wǒ yě shì zhèlǐ de zhìyuànzhě · No, some teachers set it up themselves. I volunteer here too.

anna 孙教授，您也在这儿！那捐书有什么限制吗？
Sūnjiàoshòu nín yě zài zhèr nà juān shū yǒu shénme xiànzhì ma · Professor Sun, you're here too! Are there any rules on what books we can give?

professor sun 有。依据组织的规定，书要干净，适合孩子看。
yǒu yījù zǔzhī de guīdìng shū yào gānjìng shìhé háizi kàn · Yes. Under the organisation's rules, the books must be clean and suitable for children.

little sister 我们还要把书统一放在箱子里，写上书名。
wǒmen hái yào bǎ shū tǒngyī fàng zài xiāngzi lǐ xiě shàng shū míng · And we all have to pack the books in boxes the same way, with the titles written on.

professor sun 这些孩子以后可能会成为科学家、作家。你们的贡献很大。
zhèxiē háizi yǐhòu kěnéng huì chéngwéi kēxué jiā zuòjiā nǐmen de gòngxiàn hěn dà · These children might become scientists or writers one day. You're making a big contribution.

anna 说来说去，教育才是最重要的。
shuō lái shuō qù jiàoyù cái shì zuì zhòngyào de · When all's said and done, education is what matters most.

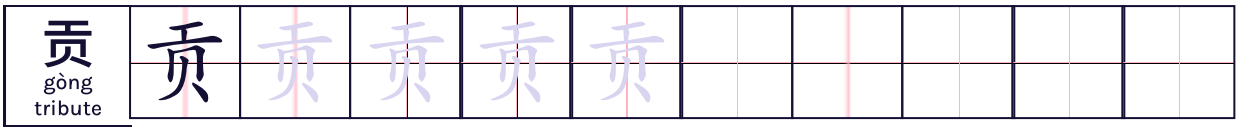
write it trace the grey, then write your own

政
zhèng
politics, government

府
fǔ
office, residence

织
zhī
to weave





good to know · 根据, 按照 and 依据 overlap: 根据 is the everyday “according to”, 按照 is “following (a rule or plan)”, and 依据 is the most formal. News words come in fixed pairs: 实施措施 introduce measures, 成立组织 found an organisation, 参与活动 take part. 主席 is also simply the chair of a meeting or a club.

Rules, measures, members and volunteers: you can now follow the formal side of Chinese, and take part.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 76 festivals & customs

Talk about Chinese festivals and customs, and say “not B unless A” with 不A不B.

Festivals are when you see Chinese family life at its warmest, and when you’re most likely to be invited in.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
传统	chuántǒng	tradition; traditional	过年是中国人最重要的传统节日。 Chinese New Year is the most important traditional festival for Chinese people.
风俗	fēngsú	custom(s)	每个地方过年的风俗都不太一样。 Every region has its own New Year customs.
除夕	chúxī	New Year’s Eve (lunar)	除夕晚上，一家人在一起吃年夜饭。 On New Year’s Eve the whole family has dinner together.
年夜饭	niányèfàn	New Year’s Eve dinner	我们家的年夜饭一定有饺子。 There are always dumplings at our New Year’s Eve dinner.
压岁钱	yāsuìqián	New Year money (for children)	孩子们最喜欢过年，因为可以拿压岁钱。 Children love New Year best, because they get New Year money.
元旦	Yuándàn	New Year’s Day (1 January)	元旦我们放三天假。 We get three days off for New Year’s Day.
国庆	guóqìng	National Day	国庆节的时候，很多人出去旅游。 Lots of people go travelling at National Day.
纪念	jìniàn	to commemorate; souvenir	这张照片很有纪念意义。 This photo means a lot to us.
纪念日	jìniànrì	anniversary, memorial day	今天是爸爸妈妈的结婚纪念日。 Today is Mum and Dad’s wedding anniversary.
周年	zhōunián	anniversary (… years)	明天是我们公司成立十周年。 Tomorrow is our company’s tenth anniversary.
福	fú	good fortune, blessing	过年的时候，很多人家的门上都贴着“福”字。 At New Year, lots of homes have the character 福 (good fortune) on the door.
龙	lóng	dragon	在中国文化里，龙是好运的象征。 In Chinese culture, the dragon is a symbol of good luck.
生肖	shēngxiào	Chinese zodiac animal	中国有十二个生肖，每年一个。 China has twelve zodiac animals, one for each year.
象征	xiàngzhēng	to symbolise; symbol	红色象征着快乐和好运。 Red symbolises happiness and good luck.
甲	jiǎ	A, first (in a list)	合同上写着：甲方是我们公司。 The contract says: Party A is our company.
乙	yǐ	B, second (in a list)	甲队和乙队的比分是2比2。 The score between Team A and Team B is 2–2.

中华	Zhōnghuá	China (formal, cultural)	龙是中华文化的象征。 The dragon is a symbol of Chinese culture.
中华民族	ZhōnghuáMínzú	the Chinese nation	中华民族有很多传统节日。 The Chinese nation has many traditional festivals.
族	zú	group, “-ers” (suffix)	很多上班族中午都吃外卖。 Lots of office workers get takeaway for lunch.
中外	zhōngwài	China and abroad	这次活动有很多中外游客参加。 Lots of Chinese and foreign tourists took part.
式	shì	style, -style (suffix)	他们的婚礼是中式的，新娘穿红色的衣服。 Their wedding was Chinese-style, and the bride wore red.

pattern 不a不b: not b unless a

不+A 不+B

不A不B ties two negatives into one condition: if A doesn’t happen, B won’t either, so “not B unless A”. 不吃饺子不算过年 it’s not New Year without dumplings; 不到十二点不睡觉 we won’t go to bed until midnight. It’s short, strong and spoken.

这么重要的纪念日，不去不行。 **zhème zhòngyào de jìniànrì bú qù bùxíng** Such an important anniversary: we have to go.

我们说好了，不见到你不走。 **wǒmen shuō hǎo le bú jiàn dào nǐ bù zǒu** We agreed: we won’t leave until we’ve seen you.

作业不写完不能看电视。 **zuòyè bù xiě wán bù néng kàn diànshì** No TV until your homework is done.

dialogue new year’s eve

ms zhang 安娜，今天是除夕，欢迎你来我们家吃年夜饭！
Ānnà jīntiān shì chúxī huānyíng nǐ lái wǒmen jiā chī niányèfàn · Anna, it's New Year's Eve. Welcome to our New Year's Eve dinner!

anna 谢谢张阿姨！这是我第一次在中国家庭过年。茶叶店今天也关门了吗?
xièxie zhāng āyí zhè shì wǒ dì yī cì zài Zhōngguó jiātíng guònián cháyè diàn jīntiān yě guān mén le ma · Thank you, Auntie Zhang! It's my first New Year with a Chinese family. Is the tea shop closed today too?

ms zhang 关了。过年是中国人最重要的传统节日，不回家不行。
guān le guònián shì Zhōngguó rén zuì zhòngyào de chuántǒng jiérì bù huí jiā bùxíng · It is. New Year is the most important traditional festival for Chinese people: you have to be home.

dr li 我们北方的风俗是，不吃饺子不算过年。来，尝尝。
wǒmen běifāng de fēngsú shì bù chī jiǎozi bú suàn guònián lái cháng chang · Up here in the north, it's not New Year without dumplings. Here, try some.

little sister 我们学校的新年晚会分甲、乙两组，我在甲组，表演中式舞蹈。
wǒmen xuéxiào de xīnnián wǎnhuì fēn jiǎ yǐ liǎng zǔ wǒ zài jiǎ zǔ biǎoyǎn zhōng shì wǔdǎo · Our school's New Year show is split into groups A and B. I'm in group A, doing a Chinese dance.

dr li 你好好表演，十二点以后给你压岁钱！今年是龙年，我还给你准备了一个小礼物。
nǐ hǎohǎo biǎoyǎn shíèr diǎn yǐhòu gěi nǐ yāsuìqián jīnnián shì lóng nián wǒ hái gěi nǐ zhǔnbèi le yí gè xiǎo lǐwù · Dance well, and you get your New Year money after midnight! And as it's the year of the dragon, I've got you a little present too.

anna 龙在中华文化里象征着什么?
lóng zài Zhōnghuá wénhuà lǐ xiàngzhēng zhe shénme · What does the dragon stand for in Chinese culture?

xiaoming 好运和力量。龙是中华民族的象征之一。
hǎoyùn hé lìliàng lóng shì Zhōnghuá Mínzú de xiàngzhēng zhī yī · Good luck and strength. The dragon is one of the symbols of the Chinese nation.

anna 那我的生肖是什么？我是2000年出生的。
nà wǒ de shēngxiào shì shénme wǒ shì nián chūshēng de · So what's my zodiac animal? I was born in 2000.

little sister 2000年也是龙年，所以你的生肖也是龙！
nián yě shì lóng nián suǒyǐ nǐ de shēngxiào yě shì lóng · 2000 was a dragon year too, so you're a dragon as well!

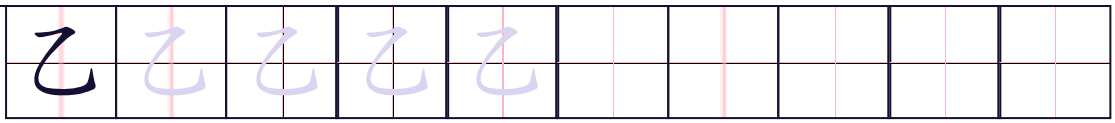
write it trace the grey, then write your own

夕
xī
evening

龙
lóng
dragon

甲
jiǎ
A, first (in a list)

乙

乙 yǐ B, second (in a list)	

good to know · 干 gān is “dry”, and as a noun it’s dried food: 饼干 biscuits, 豆腐干 dried tofu. Chinese New Year is also called the Spring Festival (春节). 元旦 is 1 January, and 国庆 (National Day) is 1 October.

Dumplings, red envelopes, a dragon on the door: you’re ready for your first Chinese New Year.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 77 history & heritage

Talk about history, legends and traditional arts at a museum, with 依据 and X什么X back for review.

History is everywhere in China: in the streets, in sayings, and in the stories everyone grows up with.

words

word	pinyin	meaning	example
古	gǔ	ancient, old	这座古城有两千多年的历史。 This ancient city is over two thousand years old.
古代	gǔdài	ancient times	中国古代有很多伟大的发明。 Ancient China produced many great inventions.
古老	gǔlǎo	ancient, age-old	这是一个古老的传说。 This is an age-old legend.
近代	jìndài	modern times (c. 1840–1919)	这本书讲的是中国近代的历史。 This book is about China's modern history.
时代	shídài	era, times	我们生活在一个网络时代。 We live in the internet age.
时期	shíqī	period (of time)	大学时期是我最快乐的时候。 My university years were the happiest time of my life.
悠久	yōujiǔ	long-standing, age-old	中国有着悠久的历史。 China has a long history.
经典	jīngdiǎn	classic	这部电影是一部经典作品。 This film is a classic.
流传	liúchuán	to spread, be handed down	这个故事已经流传了几千年。 This story has been handed down for thousands of years.
传说	chuánshuō	legend; it is said	传说月亮上住着一位美丽的姑娘。 Legend has it that a beautiful young woman lives on the moon.
神话	shénhuà	myth	孩子们都喜欢听神话故事。 Children all love listening to myths.
奇迹	qíjì	miracle, wonder	长城是人类历史上的一个奇迹。 The Great Wall is one of the wonders of human history.
人物	rénwù	figure, character	他是中国历史上一位重要的人物。 He is an important figure in Chinese history.
敌人	dírén	enemy	古代的人修长城，是为了防止敌人进来。 People in ancient times built the Great Wall to keep enemies out.
博物馆	bówùguǎn	museum	周末我们去博物馆参观吧。 Let's go to the museum at the weekend.
工艺	gōngyì	craft, craftsmanship	这个杯子的工艺非常讲究。 This cup is very finely crafted.

国画	guóhuà	traditional Chinese painting	爷爷退休以后开始学国画。 Grandpa started learning Chinese painting after he retired.
书法	shūfǎ	calligraphy	她的书法写得非常漂亮。 Her calligraphy is beautiful.
治	zhì	to govern; to treat, cure	这种病能治好吗? Can this illness be cured?

pattern review: 依据 and x什么x

依据 | a source | ·X什么X

No new pattern today: two from this unit come back. 依据 + a source says what something is based on: 依据古书的记载 according to ancient records. X什么X tells someone not to fuss: 急什么急 what's the rush?

依据古书的记载，这座桥已经有一千多年了。 **yījù gǔ shū de jìzǎi zhè zuò qiáo yǐjīng yǒu yìqiān duō nián le** According to ancient records, this bridge is over a thousand years old.

急什么急？博物馆五点才关门。 **jí shénme jí bówùguǎn wǔ diǎn cái guān mén** What's the rush? The museum doesn't close until five.

依据这些文字记载，我们可以了解古代人的生活。 **yījù zhèxiē wénzì jìzǎi wǒmen kěyǐ liǎojiě gǔdài rén de shēnghuó** Based on these written records, we can learn how people lived in ancient times.

dialogue a tour of the museum

professor sun 欢迎来博物馆！今天我给大家讲讲中国古代的历史。
huānyíng lái bówùguǎn jīntiān wǒ gěi dàjiā jiǎng jiang Zhōngguó gǔdài de lìshǐ · Welcome to the museum! Today I'll tell you about ancient Chinese history.

anna 孙教授，这幅画好美啊！是国画吗？
Sūnjiàoshòu zhè fú huà hǎo měi a shì guóhuà ma · Professor Sun, this painting is beautiful! Is it a traditional Chinese painting?

professor sun 对，这是一千年前的经典作品。旁边的是书法。
duì zhè shì yìqiān nián qián de jīngdiǎn zuòpǐn pángbiān de shì shūfǎ · Yes, it's a classic from a thousand years ago. Next to it is some calligraphy.

zhao yang 这些字写得真漂亮。上面写的是什么？
zhèxiē zì xiě de zhēn piàoliang shàngmiàn xiě de shì shénme · The characters are beautifully written. What do they say?

professor sun 是一个古老的传说：一位古代的人物带着大家治水，用了十三年才成功。
shì yí gè gǔlǎo de chuánshuō yí wèi gǔdài de rénwù dài zhe dàjiā zhì shuǐ yòng le shísān nián cái chénggōng · It's an ancient legend: a hero of old led the people in taming the floods, and it took him thirteen years.

anna 这是神话，还是真的历史？
zhè shì shénhuà háishi zhēn de lìshǐ · Is that a myth or real history?

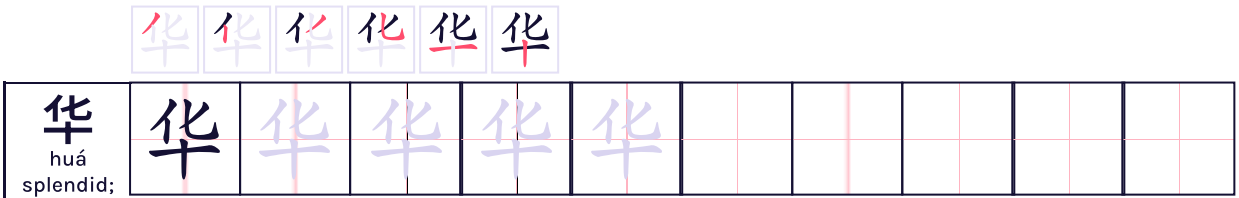
professor sun 很难说。这个故事流传了几千年，不同的时期有不同的说法。
hěn nán shuō zhège gùshi liúchuán le jǐ qiān nián bù tóng de shíqī yǒu bù tóng de shuōfǎ · It's hard to say. The story has been handed down for thousands of years, and each period told it differently.

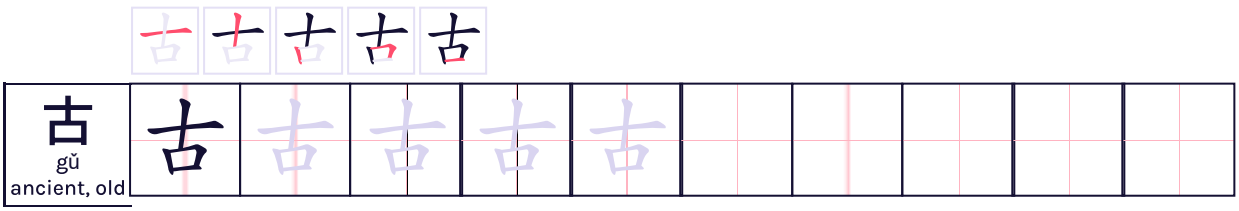
zhao yang 这边是近代的东西吗？这些工艺品真讲究。
zhèbiān shì jìndài de dōngxi ma zhèxiē gōngyì pǐn zhēn jiǎngjiu · Is this section modern history? These crafts are so finely made.

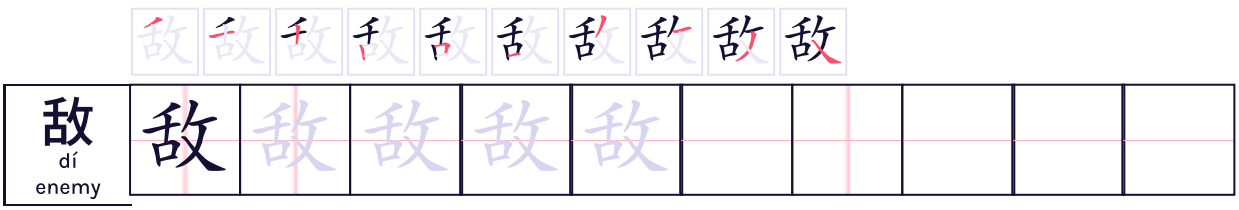
professor sun 对。从古代到近代，每个时代都有自己的特色。
duì cóng gǔdài dào jìndài měi gè shídài dōu yǒu zìjǐ de tèsè · Yes. From ancient to modern times, every era has its own character.

anna 我觉得长城真是人类的奇迹。古代的人为了防止敌人进来，修了这么长的墙。
wǒ juéde Chángchéng zhēn shì rénlèi de qíjì gǔdài de rén wèile fángzhǐ dírén jìnlái xiū le zhème cháng de qiáng · I think the Great Wall really is one of humanity's wonders. People long ago built such a long wall to keep enemies out.

write it trace the grey, then write your own







good to know · 古 vs 老: 古 is ancient (古代, 古书, 古城); 老 is old in everyday life (老房子, 老朋友). 近代 in Chinese history usually means 1840 to 1919; 现代 is after that; 当代 is today. 刻 is a measure word (一刻钟 a quarter of an hour), and also a verb, “to carve, engrave”: 石头上刻着字 characters carved in stone.

Legends, calligraphy, the Great Wall: you can now walk through a museum in Chinese and tell the stories yourself.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**

day 78 mission: a trip through time

Follow a journey through Beijing's past, present and future, and look back on everything you've learnt in this course.

This is the last learning day: city, society, culture and history meet the whole course in one story.

chapter 1 the old city

zhao yang 各位观众，今天我们跟安娜一起来一次“时间旅行”。第一站是一条古老的胡同。
gèwèi guānzhòng jīntiān wǒmen gēn Ānnà yìqǐ lái yí cì shíjiān lǚxíng dì yī zhàn shì yì tiáo gǔlǎo de hútòng · Good evening, viewers. Today we’re taking a “trip through time” with Anna. First stop: an ancient hutong.

professor sun 这条胡同有着六百多年的历史，很多老建筑都保留了下来。
zhè tiáo hútòng yǒuzhe liùbǎi duō nián de lìshǐ hěn duō lǎo jiànzhù dōu bǎoliú le xialai · This hutong has more than six hundred years of history, and many of the old buildings have survived.

professor sun 这几年城市在搞现代化，建设得很快，修建了很多路，也建造了很多新的建筑。
zhè jǐ nián chéngshì zài gǎo xiàndàihuà jiànshè de hěn kuài xiūjiàn le hěn duō lù yě jiànzào le hěn duō xīn de jiànzhù · In recent years the city has been modernising fast: lots of roads have been built, and lots of new buildings too.

zhao yang 不过政府提倡保留老胡同。这条胡同去年还建了一个小博物馆，面向所有市民开放。
búguò zhèngfǔ tíchàng bǎoliú lǎo hútòng zhè tiáo hútòng qùnián hái jiàn le yí gè xiǎo bówùguǎn miànxiàng suǒyǒu shìmín kāifàng · But the government encourages keeping the old hutongs. Last year this one even got a little museum, open to all residents.

anna 我刚来北京的时候，就住在这样的胡同里。没想到这么多年过去了，它几乎没变。
wǒ gāng lái Běijīng de shíhou jiù zhù zài zhèyàng de hútòng lǐ méi xiǎng dào zhème duō nián guòqù le tā jīhū méi biàn · When I first came to Beijing, I lived in a hutong like this. I never thought it would barely change after all these years.

professor sun 从这些墙来看，这里在近代也修过好几次。
cóng zhèxiē qiáng lái kàn zhèlǐ zài jìndài yě xiū guo hǎo jǐ cì · Judging by these walls, it was repaired several times in modern times too.

anna 胡同虽然窄，可是邻居之间特别亲切。
hútòng suīrán zhǎi kěshì línjū zhījiān tèbié qīnqiè · The hutongs may be narrow, but neighbours are especially close.

professor sun 胡同里住着不同的群体，有老人，也有年轻人。改革以后，人民的生活好了很多，以前很多人家里很穷。
hútòng lǐ zhù zhe bù tóng de qúntǐ yǒu lǎorén yě yǒu niánqīng rén gǎigé yǐhòu rénmín de shēnghuó hǎo le hěn duō yǐqián hěn duō rén jiā lǐ hěn qióng · All kinds of people live in the hutongs, old and young. Since the reforms, people’s lives have got much better: many families used to be poor.

anna 我觉得这是一个很好的现象：大家把胡同当成一个集体，一起照顾老人。这里的规则也很有意思：不打招呼不进门。
wǒ juéde zhè shì yí gè hěn hǎo de xiànxiàng dàjiā bǎ hútòng dàngchéng yí gè jítǐ yìqǐ zhàogù lǎorén zhèlǐ de guīzé yě hěn yǒu yìsi bù dǎ zhāohu bú jìn mén · I think it’s a lovely thing: people treat the hutong as one community and look after the old folk together. The rules here are fun too: you don’t go in without saying hello.

professor sun 老房子的结构很特别，跟现代的大楼一起构成了这座城市。可是这里人口很多，设施不够，老百姓也希望有更多休闲的场所。
lǎo fángzi de jiégòu hěn tèbié gēn xiàndài de dà lóu yìqǐ gòuchéng le zhè zuò chéngshì kěshì zhèlǐ rénkǒu hěn duō shèshī búgòu lǎobǎixìng yě xīwàng yǒu gèng duō xiūxián de chǎngsuǒ · The old houses are built in a special way, and together with the modern towers they make up the city. But there are a lot of people here and not enough facilities, and ordinary people want more places to relax too.

zhao yang 从现实来看，新和旧都要有，这样对大家才公平。每个人都有选择自己生活的自由和权利。
cóng xiànshí lái kàn xīn hé jiù dōu yào yǒu zhèyàng duì dàjiā cái gōngpíng měi gè rén dōu yǒu xuǎnzé zìjǐ shēnghuó de zìyóu hé quánlì · Looking at reality, we need both new and old: that’s the only fair way for everyone. Everyone has the freedom and the right to choose how they live.

zhao yang 电视台派我来拍胡同的现状，为的是让大家了解老百姓的生活。
diànshìtái pài wǒ lái pāi hútòng de xiànzhuàng wèi de shì ràng dàjiā liǎojiě lǎobǎixìng de shēnghuó · The station sent me to film how the hutongs are now, so people can see how ordinary folk live.

professor sun 你看那个小店，它的所有人是一位阿姨，在这儿开了三十年店。她说保护胡同是每个人的义务，不只是个人的事。

nǐ kàn nàge xiǎo diàn tā de suǒyǒurén shì yí wèi āyí zài zhèr kāi le sānshí nián diàn tā shuō bǎohù hútòng shì měi gè rén de yìwù bù zhǐshì gèrén de shì · Look at that little shop: its owner is a woman who has run it here for thirty years. She says protecting the hutong is everyone's duty, not just a personal matter.

anna 她不只开店，也是这里的志愿者，在大家心里地位很高。孙教授，请代我向她问好！

tā bù zhǐ kāi diàn yě shì zhèlǐ de zhìyuànzhě zài dàjiā xīnlǐ dìwèi hěn gāo Sūnjiàoshòu qǐng dài wǒ xiàng tā wèn hǎo · She doesn't just run the shop: she volunteers here too, and everyone looks up to her. Professor Sun, please say hello to her for me!

zhao yang 现在的形势不一样了，大商场对小店是一种威胁。不过乱扔垃圾这样的行为，在这里很少见。

xiànzài de xíngshì bù yíyàng le dà shāngchǎng duì xiǎo diàn shì yì zhǒng wēixié búguò luàn rēng lājī zhèyàng de xíngwéi zài zhèlǐ hěn shǎojiàn · Things are different now: big shopping centres are a threat to small shops. But behaviour like dropping litter is rare here.

zhao yang 不管怎样说，这是老北京最宝贵的东西。

bùguǎn zěnyàng shuō zhè shì lǎo Běijīng zuì bǎoguì de dōngxi · Whatever anyone says, this is old Beijing's greatest treasure.

zhao yang 好，我们下午两点在博物馆门口集合。今天是我们节目的一件大事！

hǎo wǒmen xiàwǔ liǎng diǎn zài bówùguǎn ménkǒu jíhé jīntiān shì wǒmen jiémù de yí jiàn dàshì · Right, we meet at the museum entrance at two this afternoon. Today is a big day for our programme!

chapter 2 the museum

professor sun 这个博物馆里有很多古代的国画和工艺品，有的已经有一千年了。你看，这块石头上刻着几个古字。依据古书的记载，它是三千年前的。
zhège bówùguǎn lǐ yǒu hěn duō gǔdài de guóhuà hé gōngyì pǐn yǒude yǐjīng yǒu yìqiān nián le nǐ kàn zhè kuài shítou shàng kè zhe jǐ gè gǔ zì yījù gǔ shū de jìzǎi tā shì sānqiān nián qián de · This museum has lots of ancient Chinese paintings and crafts, some a thousand years old. Look, there are some ancient characters carved on this stone. According to old records, it's three thousand years old.

zhao yang 这幅画上画的是一条龙，是一个神话吗?
zhè fú huà shàng huà de shì yì tiáo lóng shì yí gè shénhuà ma · This painting shows a dragon. Is it a myth?

professor sun 是一个传说，流传了很久。在古代的一个时期，人们相信龙能治水。中国的历史真悠久。
shì yí gè chuánshuō liúchuán le hěn jiǔ zài gǔdài de yí gè shíqī rénmen xiāngxìn lóng néng zhì shuǐ Zhōngguó de lìshǐ zhēn yōujiǔ · It's a legend that has been handed down for a very long time. At one time in ancient history, people believed dragons could tame floods. China's history is so long.

anna 长城也是人类的奇迹。古代的人修长城，是为了防止敌人进来。这些经典作品里的每个人物都画得清清楚楚。
Chángchéng yě shì rénlèi de qíjì gǔdài de rén xiū Chángchéng shì wèile fángzhǐ dírén jìnlái zhèxiē jīngdiǎn zuòpǐn lǐ de měi gè rénwù dōu huà de qīngqīngchuchu · The Great Wall is one of humanity's wonders too. The people of old built it to keep enemies out. And every figure in these classic works is painted so clearly.

professor sun 安娜，你试试写一个“福”字吧。书法急不得，慢慢来。
Ānnà nǐ shì shi xiě yí gè fú zì ba shūfǎ jí bu de màn màn lái · Anna, have a go at writing the character 福. You can't rush calligraphy; take your time.

anna 我写得不太好，像一条弯弯的蛇!
wǒ xiě de bú tài hǎo xiàng yì tiáo wān wān de shé · It's not very good. It looks like a wiggly snake!

zhao yang 怕什么怕？我觉得很有特色。
pà shénme pà wǒ juéde hěn yǒu tèsè · Don't worry! I think it's got real character.

professor sun 写来写去，最重要的还是心里的感觉。
xiě lái xiě qù zuì zhòngyào de háishi xīnlǐ de gǎnjué · However much you practise, what matters most is the feeling behind it.

anna 这个字象征着好运，我要把它送给王老师。
zhège zì xiàngzhēng zhe hǎoyùn wǒ yào bǎ tā sòng gěi Wánglǎoshī · This character stands for good luck. I'm going to give it to Teacher Wang.

professor sun 按照传统，“福”字有时候要倒着贴，意思是“福到了”。
ànzhào chuántǒng fú zì yǒu shíhou yào dǎo zhe tiē yìsi shì fú dào le · By tradition, 福 is sometimes hung upside down: “upside down” sounds like “arrived”, so it means “good fortune has arrived”.

chapter 3 the future

xiaoming 欢迎来到“未来”！这是我们公司研发的机器人。
huānyíng lái dào wèilái zhè shì wǒmen gōngsī yánfā de jīqìrén · Welcome to “the future”! This is a robot our company has developed.

xiaoming 我们公司跟一个志愿者组织联合发起了一个活动：给老人送机器人。这个组织是几个工程师成立的，现在有两百多个成员，我也参与了。
wǒmen gōngsī gēn yí gè zhìyuànzhě zǔzhī liánhé fāqǐ le yí gè huódòng gěi lǎorén sòng jīqìrén zhège zǔzhī shì jǐ gè gōngchéngshī chénglì de xiànzài yǒu liǎngbǎi duō gè chéngyuán wǒ yě cānyù le · Our company and a volunteer organisation have launched a campaign together: robots for older people. The organisation was set up by a few engineers and now has over two hundred members. I’ve joined in too.

anna 这是很大的贡献！我也想捐一点儿钱。你们的机构有什么制度吗？
zhè shì hěn dà de gòngxiàn wǒ yě xiǎng juān yìdiǎnr qián nǐmen de jīgòu yǒu shénme zhìdù ma · That’s a big contribution! I’d like to donate a little money too. Does your organisation have rules?

xiaoming 有。依据规定，每个机器人都要先测试，统一管理。我们还实施了很多安全措施，比如限制它的速度，每个月实行一次检查。
yǒu yījù guīdìng měi gè jīqìrén dōu yào xiān cèshì tǒngyī guǎnlǐ wǒmen hái shíshī le hěn duō ānquán cuòshī bǐrú xiànzhì tā de sùdù měi gè yuè shíxíng yí cì jiǎnchá · Yes. Under the rules, every robot has to be tested first, and they’re all managed the same way. We’ve also brought in lots of safety measures, like limiting its speed and doing a check every month.

zhao yang 下个月的志愿者大会上，你会发言吗？
xià gè yuè de zhìyuànzhě dàhuì shàng nǐ huì fāyán ma · Will you speak at next month’s volunteers’ conference?

xiaoming 会。我被选为代表了，还要把这个活动介绍给大会的主席。
huì wǒ bèi xuǎn wéi dàibiǎo le hái yào bǎ zhège huódòng jièshào gěi dàhuì de zhǔxí · Yes: I’ve been chosen as a representative, and I’ll present the campaign to the chair of the conference.

zhao yang 它能做什么？
tā néng zuò shénme · What can it do?

xiaoming 它能听懂中文，还能帮老人买菜，提醒他们按时吃药。
tā néng tīng dǒng Zhōngwén hái néng bāng lǎorén mǎi cài tíxǐng tāmen ànshí chī yào · It understands Chinese, and it can shop for older people and remind them to take their medicine on time.

anna 从古代的书法到今天的人工智能，这座城市的变化简直让人不敢相信。
cóng gǔdài de shūfǎ dào jīntiān de réngōng zhìnéng zhè zuò chéngshì de biànhuà jiǎnzhí ràng rén bù gǎn xiāngxìn · From ancient calligraphy to today’s AI: the way this city has changed is just unbelievable.

xiaoming 毕竟我们生活在一个变化很快的时代。
bìjìng wǒmen shēnghuó zài yí gè biànhuà hěn kuài de shídài · After all, we live in an age of rapid change.

zhao yang 用不着担心老传统会消失，新的东西和老的东西可以一起存在。
yòngbuzháo dānxīn lǎo chuántǒng huì xiāoshī xīn de dōngxi hé lǎo de dōngxi kěyǐ yìqǐ cúnzài · There’s no need to worry that old traditions will disappear. The new and the old can exist side by side.

chapter 4 the last class

teacher wang 安娜，今天是我们这个学期的最后一节课。
Ānnà jīntiān shì wǒmen zhège xuéqī de zuìhòu yì jié kè · Anna, today is the last lesson of our term.

anna 时间过得真快！刚开始我连新闻都看不懂，现在居然能聊书法、聊历史了。
shíjiān guò de zhēn kuài gāng kāishǐ wǒ lián xīnwén dōu kàn bu dǒng xiànzài jūrán néng liáo shūfǎ liáo lìshǐ le · Time has flown! At the start I couldn't even understand the news, and now I can actually talk about calligraphy and history.

teacher wang 凭你的努力，考试一定没问题。
píng nǐ de nǔlì kǎoshì yídìng méi wèntí · With all the work you've put in, the exam will be no problem.

ms zhang 来，大家喝茶！这是我店里最好的茶。
lái dàjiā hē chá zhè shì wǒ diàn lǐ zuìhǎo de chá · Come on, everyone, have some tea! It's the best in my shop.

ms zhang 今天我做了中式点心，也有西式的蛋糕，还有我自己做的豆腐干。
jīntiān wǒ zuò le zhōng shì diǎnxin yě yǒu xī shì de dàngāo hái yǒu wǒ zìjǐ zuò de dòufu gān · Today I've made Chinese pastries, a Western-style cake too, and some dried tofu of my own.

ms zhang 安娜，还记得你第一次在我们家吃年夜饭吗？除夕那天你拿到了压岁钱，高兴得不得了。
Ānnà hái jìde nǐ dì yī cì zài wǒmen jiā chī niányèfàn ma chúxī nà tiān nǐ ná dào le yāsuìqián gāoxìng de bùdéliǎo · Anna, do you remember your first New Year's Eve dinner with us? You got New Year money that night and were over the moon.

anna 当然记得！我的生肖是龙，李医生说龙是中华民族的象征之一。明年元旦是我来北京十周年的纪念日！
dāngrán jìde wǒ de shēngxiào shì lóng Lǐyīshēng shuō lóng shì Zhōnghuá Mínzú de xiàngzhēng zhī yī míngnián Yuándàn shì wǒ lái Běijīng shí zhōunián de jìniànrì · Of course! My zodiac animal is the dragon, and Dr Li said the dragon is one of the symbols of the Chinese nation. Next New Year's Day is the tenth anniversary of my coming to Beijing!

teacher wang 我们这个班也是中外学生在一起，甲班、乙班的同学今天都来了。下个月国庆，我们还要开一个纪念晚会。
wǒmen zhège bān yě shì zhōngwài xuéshēng zài yìqǐ jiǎ bān yǐ bān de tóngxué jīntiān dōu lái le xià gè yuè guóqìng wǒmen hái yào kāi yí gè jìniàn wǎnhuì · Our class mixes Chinese and foreign students too: people from class A and class B are all here today. Next month, for National Day, we're having a party to celebrate.

xiaoming 我们这些上班族也要参加！
wǒmen zhèxiē shàngbān zú yě yào cānjiā · We office workers are coming too!

xiaoming 闲着也是闲着，我们来说说下一个计划吧！
xián zhe yě shì xián zhe wǒmen lái shuō shuo xià yí gè jìhuà ba · Well, since we're all here, let's talk about what's next!

anna 我的计划是继续学下去！不学不行啊。
wǒ de jìhuà shì jìxù xué xiaqu bù xué bùxíng a · My plan is to keep on learning! I can't stop now.

teacher wang 说得好！学习就是这样：没有坚持，就没有进步。
shuō de hǎo xuéxí jiùshì zhèyàng méiyǒu jiānchí jiù méiyǒu jìnbù · Well said! That's what learning is: without perseverance, there's no progress.

chapter 5 looking back

anna 王老师，我写了一篇小作文，我读给大家听：

Wánglǎoshī wǒ xiě le yì piān xiǎo zuòwén wǒ dú gěi dàjiā tīng · Teacher Wang, I've written a little essay. Let me read it to everyone:

anna “我来中国已经很多年了。刚开始，我连银行的手续都办不好，闹钟一响便关了，还常常迷路。后来，我有了邻居、朋友和同事，在夜市吃过臭豆腐，在山区躲过暴雨，还看着小明的妹妹一天天成长。不管怎样说，学汉语改变了我的生活。从我的经历来看，学语言不是学会了词汇就完了，还要学一种新的思维。没有大家的帮助，就没有今天的我。”

wǒ lái Zhōngguó yǐjīng hěn duō nián le gāng kāishǐ wǒ lián yínháng de shǒuxù dōu bàn bu hǎo nàozhōng yì xiǎng biàn guān le hái chángcháng mílù hòulái wǒ yǒu le línjū péngyou hé tóngshì zài yèshì chī guo chòu dòufu zài shānqū duǒ guo bàoyǔ hái kàn zhe Xiǎomíng de mèimei yì tiān tiān chéngzhǎng bùguǎn zěnyàng shuō xué Hànyǔ gǎibiàn le wǒ de shēnghuó cóng wǒ de jīnglì lái kàn xué yǔyán bú shì xuéhuì le cíhuì jiù wán le hái yào xué yì zhǒng xīn de sīwéi méiyǒu dàjiā de bāngzhù jiù méiyǒu jīntiān de wǒ · “I've been in China for many years now. At first I couldn't even manage the paperwork at the bank, I switched my alarm off the moment it rang, and I was always getting lost. Then I found neighbours, friends and colleagues; I ate stinky tofu at the night market, sheltered from a storm in the mountains, and watched Xiaoming's sister grow up day by day. Whatever anyone says, learning Chinese has changed my life. From my experience, learning a language isn't over once you've learnt the words: you also learn a new way of thinking. Without all of you, I wouldn't be who I am today.”

teacher wang 写得真好！你把这么多年的事讲得清清楚楚。

xiě de zhēn hǎo nǐ bǎ zhème duō nián de shì jiǎng de qīngqīngchuchu · Beautifully written! You've told the story of all these years crystal-clear.

professor sun 你曾经说过，汉语极其难学。现在呢？

nǐ céngjīng shuō guo Hànyǔ jíqí nán xué xiànzài ne · You once said Chinese was extremely hard to learn. And now?

anna 毕竟学了这么多年，现在我觉得它很有意思！

bìjìng xué le zhème duō nián xiànzài wǒ juéde tā hěn yǒu yìsi · After all these years of learning, now I find it really interesting!

zhao yang 我要把这篇作文放进我的节目，标题就叫《一个外国人的中国生活》。

wǒ yào bǎ zhè piān zuòwén fàng jìn wǒ de jiémù biāotí jiù jiào yí gè wàiguó rén de Zhōngguó shēnghuó · I'm putting this essay in my programme, with the title “A foreigner's life in China”.

xiaoming 安娜，你还记得我们的第一个周一吗？你的闹钟居然没响！那天我们还捡到了一个钱包。

Ānnà nǐ hái jìde wǒmen de dì yī gè zhōu yī ma nǐ de nàozhōng jūrán méi xiǎng nà tiān wǒmen hái jiǎn dào le yí gè qián bāo · Anna, do you remember our first Monday? Your alarm didn't go off! And we found a wallet that day.

little sister 你第一次来我们小区的晚会，还给大家做了英国菜！

nǐ dì yī cì lái wǒmen xiǎoqū de wǎnhuì hái gěi dàjiā zuò le Yīngguó cài · And at your first party on the estate, you made everyone a British dish!

teacher wang 学习就是这样：再难也要坚持。哪怕只有一点儿进步，也值得高兴。

xuéxí jiùshì zhèyàng zài nán yě yào jiānchí nǎpà zhǐyǒu yìdiǎnr jìnbù yě zhídé gāoxìng · That's what learning is: however hard it gets, keep going. Even a little progress is worth celebrating.

anna 谢谢大家！我们约定好：明年还在这儿喝茶，不来不行！

xièxie dàjiā wǒmen yuēdìng hǎo míngnián hái zài zhèr hē chá bù lái bùxíng · Thank you, everyone! It's a deal: next year we drink tea here again, and nobody gets out of it!

Eighty days, thirteen units, a whole city of words: you made it. The practice exams are waiting whenever you're ready.
Do this day interactively, with audio and games, free at **wishyou.today/learning**